Mexander



Mexander



THE

HISTORY

OFTHE

Life and Death

OF

ALEXANDER The GREAT.

By Quintus Curtius Rufus.

Render'd into English by several Gentlemen of the University of QXFORD.

LICENSED,

June 2d. 1687.

Roger L'Estrange.

LONDON.

Printed for E.C. at the Sign of the Golden Patter over against the King's-Bench in Southwark.

6 8 7

The CREAT. By Quinnis Cherins Rufus Cherry into Mundingly Portal an of the University of Man CKFOKE. LHENERL, LOMBON intection I. Clar the Sign of the College Peren operated the light per

TO THE

RIGHT HONOURABLE

RICHARD

Lord Viscount PRESTON,

Lord Lieutenant of the Counties of Cumberland, and Westmorland, &c. And one of His Majesties Most Honourable Privy-Council.

My LORD,

HERE the Temple
Door stands open,
the Poorest Votary
claims the Priviledge of entring
and kneeling amongst the Crowd.

A 2 The

The Epiftle

The Virtues that shine in Your Lordship have so pomerful an influence, that the Presumption of paying my Veneration to Your Lordship, is so much the more Venial, where the Attraction is so Universal. 'I's under this Pride that I presume to prefix Your Lordships Name to this Translation: And as the Treatise it self contems the History of the Greatest of Men, and the most Famous of Heroes; it carries with it some piece of a Recommendation, and shelters under Your Lordships Roof, with some part

Dedicatory

part of a Rass-port for its Admission. The Victorious Alexander that never knem a stop in the Progress of bis Arms, is resolved to find none in the Publication of his Glories; with an Assurance, therefore, peculiar to bimself, he Approaches and Addresses to Your Lordship. Nor could I introduce him into better Company than Your Lordships; the Visit he pays You being no more than that piece of Respect which You may rightfully challenge Your Due: For in Lodging bimself in Your Lordsbips Arms,

A 4

be

The Epiftle

be bas only chosen bim a second, l and Worthier Hephestion. For I if Honour and Gallantry deserve in the Smiles of the Great, the same t Inflice that has made you a Fa-F vourite of Cæsar, intitles you to u a Darling of Alexander: He L visits Your Lordship therefore as it a Friend, and as a yet nearer P Allyance between you, I may to justly say, You so far resemble bim, that like bim too, You have the World before you. For to all the Accomplishments and Perfections of a Person of the Highest Honour, that Worth and Virtue that

Dedicatory.

Is bat bloom so early with you, and it the promis'd Harvest from so regrant a Field, You have all the be Advantages and Supports of Fortune on Your side. Under such happy Planets born, Your Lordship stands fair for a Daries ing of Providence, in which is Prophetick Assurance, I begleave to write my self,

My LORD,

e

t

Your Lordships Most Obedient,

and Most Devoted Servant.

J. Bowes.

recidence from beith your and Uses promised believed from for regresse a Micht, 200 bace all 0 be Astronousees and Supports of Tornine on Your side. Onder Simplifying fair for a Darnd us of Providence, in robich of replecies, Assured I beg leave of the replication of the series of la Vo My LOH.D. Vii 4. Bones.

TRANSLATORS

OF

QUINTUS CURTIUS.

WEll, kind Translators, for this Ages sake, From his long Sleep the Mighty Heroe wake:

Call Alexander up with Laurels Crown'd, and to the Skie, his Rapid Conquests sound. Immortal Chief, assume thy Brightest Ray, Thou canst not to the World a Visit pay, Nor enter Light in a more Glorious Day. Thou comest to see thy own Great Prize of

Fame

lay'd o're, by Younger Brothers of the Game; Worthies, whom e'en thy own swift Planets bless

Vith all thy Laurels Crown'd, amidst no less han thy Impetuous Torrents of Success. he German and Venetian Shores rebound ith that Miraculous Triumphant sound, o swift their Arms, so bright their Glories shine, hat the Imperial Eagles Rival Thine.

T. B.

a 11.9 10 ft -

TRANSLATORS!

GITAGO AU

smc? sdr o es la company de la

C

ST IN CHARLE

of long part is Commit, amidit no letter of the second.

I the second of the committee of t

T. B.

THE

STHOME OF

aternal firsts the Marker been on an exof I the Dangher. Alterthe down of a first to Pittell So, each state From a test to the California of this at one are set to the

OF.

ALEXANDER

THE

GREAT.

The FIRST BOOK,

Concerning his Birth and Education: The Murther of his Father Philip, The Dream of his Mother Olympias, in Relation to the admirable Victories which throughout the whole Course of his Wars, he afterwards Acheived.

the first of their Kings that advanced that Kingdom to that height of power, was the Son of Amintas, a man endued with Wisdom, Courage, and all other vertues of a great and expert Commander This Amintas had by Euridices his Wife, three Sons, Alexander, Rerdicas, and Philip, afterwards the Father of great Alexander, and a Daughter called Eurione. The

BOOK

1

1

i

1

CE

1

T

i

1

C

f

n

V

n

100

W

Is

no bi

م بالاتاناه

Queen Euridice being enamoured with the husband of her Daughter, with a delign of Marrying even her own Son in law, and no less than searing him in the Throne, had conspired the death of the King her Lord, which execrable attempt, the had effected, had not the Treason and Lasciviousness of the Mother, been opportunely dif covered by the Daughter. After the death of Amintas, Alexander the Eldest Son, enjoyed his Fathers Kingdom who in the beginning of his Reign was so affilled on all fides, that compelled by the severest of extremities, he was driven by force to purchase Peace of the Illirians with mony, and by giving his Brother Philip in Hoftage: And afterwards by the same pledge, he made a like Peace with the Thebans, which was the occasion that Philip arrained to fuch excellency of knowledge and wife dom; for by reason he was committed to the custody of Empainendas, who was a valiant Captain, and no less eminent Philosopher, he was Trained up in the Exercise of honest Disciplines and Princely Manners, greatly profiting under a Scholar of Pythagoras School, Empainendas kept in his house for the instruction of his In the mean feason Alexander was flain by the command of Euridice his Mother, whose former Treason King Amintas her husband had pardoned in respect of the Children had between them, little thinking that the should afterwards have been their destruction; for, no Sooner was Alexander dead, but by the same Train of Mischief was her other Son Perdicas enfnared and Murdered, leaving behind him one only Son, then but a young In-About that time the younger Brother having by good hap flipt away from his Guardian Empainendas returned into Macedon, and not taking upon him the Name of King, remained a great while no otherwise but as a Prosector to his young Nephew .. Neverthelels af serwards by occasion of fundry mischiefs growing in the State and fuch whose Redress and Suppression might not well attend the Minority of the young King, Philip appearing to be a Man of fingular activity, and of no lets skill

d

15,

n,

n

s,

MS

ł.

1

at

if-of

ſ

ife

ly

m

his

he

Of

he

he

no

ifed, In-

ng

las,

kill

skill in the Art of War than in knowledge of Philolophy, was compelled by the People to take upon him the Kingdom of Macedon, which as then stood in great difficulties and danger of Ruin. This was done four hundred years after the Building of Rome, and in the hundred and fifth Olympiad. In the beginning of his Reign he was invisoned with infinite Troubles; for all the Neighbouring Countrys as it were by a general Confpiracy, moved War against him, and at one time fundry Nations United in one Combination to invade and affail his Kingdom: Wherefore confidering that it behoved him to move discreerly (and not being able to match them all at once) he pacified some with fair promises, others with mony, and the Weakest withthood by Force. By this means he became Terrible to his Enemies, and confirmed the hearts of his own Souldiers, whom he found discouraged. These things he wrought with the greateft of Artifice and subtleft of Stratagems, in such fort, that he deminished not any part of his Honour, Estate. ar Reputation, determining nevertheless as time should ferve to deal with every one a part. His first War was with the Athenians, whom he overcame by Wit and Policy; and whereas it lay in his power to have put them all to the Sword, he fer them all at Liberty without Ranfom; by which Act of Clemency, though it was but a counterfeir Mercy, being indeed done for fear of a more formidable War at hand, yet procured him high Esti-mation and Authority. After that, he subdued the Peons, and from thence turned his power against the Illyrians' of whom he flew many thousands, and conquered the famous City Larifa: That done he commenced War against the Thefalians, not for any defire of Prey, or the spoil of their Country, but out of a Policy to add to his but affrength the force of their Cavalry, which in that Age, was accounted the cheif in the World. This he happithe ly effected, for being suddenly affailed, and suspecting not nothing less than such an Invasion, they were soon ap. brought to Subjection; and Philp joyning the force of B 2 their

h

if

th

aı

P

W

fr

10 fa

W

A

b

p

g

to

W

B

V

a

7

hi

L

pl

by

R

be

m V

V

ne P

th

of

K

gl Ci.

a

their Horsemen to his own Footmen, he made his power Invincible. All these Atcheivements being to success. fully performed, he took to Wife Olympias one of the Daughters of Neoptolemus, King of the Moloffi. This Marriage was concluded by the means of Arisba, who had the Government of olympias, and not long before had himself Married her other Sifter Troas. This Marriage intended for his fecurity, proved afterwards the fatal cause of all his miseries and utter destruction; for thinking to have made himfelf strong by the affinity of Philip. he was at last by him deprived of the whole Kingdom, and thereby compelled to lengthen out a recious Life in a most miserable Exile. Nor long after this Marriage King Philip dreamed that he law an excellent Medal fatt. hed to the Womb of his Wife, and to his feeming the lively Image of a Lyon thereupon: By which dream the Diviners interpreted that his Wife was conceived of a Child that should be of a Lyons heart and courage. which Interpretation pleafed him highly. Afterwards at the Affault of a City called Metbron, by the fhor of an Arrow he loft his right Eye, whereby though incenfed to no mean displeasure and indignation, nevertheless fo great was his condecention and committeration to the V.nquish'd, as upon their submission, to take them all into mercy. He won also the City of Pagus and annexed the fame to his Kingdom . He invaded the Land of the Triballs, and which he not only intirely Con. quered, but at the same instant as it were with one Univerfal inundation he broke in and over-run all the adincent Countrys. Having thus Established the Kingdom of Macedon by the Overthrow and Subjection of his Neighbours; at his return home his Wife Olympias was deliveted of his Son Alexander, on the eight of the Ides of April. At all these good fortunes the Kings Joy was no less than their Occasion was great; having indeed established his Country at home, subdued his Enemies abroad, and gorten him an Heir to Succeed him in his Kingdom. In these Accumulations of happiness

1

is

0

d

e

.

ı,

e !-

e

n

1

a

d

c

1.

1.

.

n

1.

25

d

.

d

f

happiness, he could have desired no more of the Gods if ever the mind of Man could be ever satisfied, which

the more it post ses the more it covers.

As Dominion increases, so do's also the defire to reach and grasp ar more, which was too apparently feen in Philip, whose roving and towering thoughts were filled with nothing more than how to grow great by taking from his Neighbours, and who lay always like a fov waiting how to catch from every man; to which he had fair Opportunity offered by the Cities of Grecce. for whiles one covered to incroach upon another and through Ambirion were all bufily ar strife who should be Chief by one and one he brought them all into Subjection. perswading the smaller States to move War against the greater, and to ferve his purpose contrived the ways to fement lealoufies and feuds berween them, and to to widen the breaches, as to put all Greece into Confusion: But at length when his Practifes were perceived, divers Ciries fearing his increasing power, Confederated against him as their common Enemy; but chiefly the Thebans: Nevertheless Necessity compelling, they Chose him afterwards to be their Captain General against the Lacedemonians and the Phoceans, who had spoiled the Temple of Apollo. This War he honourably Atchieved, fo that by punishing of their Sacriledge, he got himself le great Renown among t all the Nations round, that at laft he became invirely Lord of all; fo totally fubdued and master'd, that he compell'd as well the Vanquishers as the Vanquished to become his Tributarys. Then he made a Voyage into Cappadeeia, where Killing and taking Prisoners all the Princes thereabour, he reduced the whole Province to the subjection of Macedon. He Conquered olin. thus and after invaded Thrace : For, whereas the two Kings of that Country were at Variance about the limits of their Kingdom, and chose Him to be their Arbitrater, he gladly accepted the Commission; But at the day of Decision he advanced to the Tribunial with the aspect of a Warriour and not a Judge : And thus by the Admiffi. on

to

fo

ce

0

W

to

an

W

bi

M

te

ſe

of

ce

th

â

(u

H

bo

of

Ir

th

K

0

W

15

m

ir

g

th

d

a

ki

on of his whole Army into their Teritorys, with an unexpected for prize upon both the Brothers, he ended their strife, by Expelling them both from their Dominions, reaching by their Examples all other Princes, that Amity and Concord are the Cement and Sinews of Principalities and Empires. By this time young Alexander was twelve years of Age, and began to take great delight in the feats of War, shewing most manifestly the figns of a Noble Heart and an excellent Apprehention : He was very swift of Foot, and one day at a soleinn Game of Running, called the Olympick Race, being demanded by some of his Companions, if he would run with them, gladly (faid he) if there were Kings to run with me. At another time when certain Embaffadors of the Per fians came into Macedon; Alexander, who in his Fathers Absence, took upon him to entertain them, and discoursing with them of divers Things, in all his Communication there paffed not one Childish or Vain Word , but he enquired of them the state of their Country, the manners of the People, the distances of the Ways, the power of the King, the Progress of his Arms, and the order of his Wars: So that the Embassadors aftonished thereat, esteemed the Greatness of the Father, to be much less than the expediation of his Son; so early a Magnanimity, and fo forward a Courage were little less than a Prodigy at the Age of young Alexander. As often as Tidings came that the King his Father had Con. quered any ftrong or rich Town, or obtained any notable Victory, he never feemed greatly joyful, bur would fay to his Play-fellows, my Father does so many great Acts that he will leave no occasion of any remarkable thing for us to do. His delight and happiness seemed not at all fixed in Pleasures or Profit, but in the only exercise The more Authority he receiof Verrue and Honour. ved from his Father the less he would feem to bear; and although by the great increase of his Fathers Domi. nion it seemed that he should have the less occasion of Wars, yet he did not fix his Thoughts on the dalliances

n-

ed

i.

15

n.

10

1

n .

n

0

rs is

1

5

n

-

C

, 3

r,

y

e

S .

e 4

3

t e

.

8

inces or gallantrys of a Court, or the more effeminate ale of Riches; but wholly elevated his sublimer desires to Battels, Arms, and Enlargement of Empire; and to all that Ambition which attended by Vertue is the fureft foundation of Fame and Immortality, which never deceived Alexander, nor any other that had either Will or

er Occasion to put the same in practife. e-

The Charge and Government of this young Prince was committed to fundry excellent Mafters, but chiefly to the Philosopher Arifotle, whose Vertues, Learning. and Knowledge, King Philip fo much esteemed, that he would often fay, that he took no greater comfort in the birth of his Son, than that he was provided with fuch a Mafter as Ariftotle: under whose Tuition he remained ten Years. Many things there happened befides, which feemed no common Prognoflicks of the enfuing Glorys of Alexander : For when his Father fent to Delphos to receive answer of the Gods who should be his Successor: the Oracle delivered, That, fuch a one fould not succeed bim enty, but alfo be Lord of the World, whom Bucephalus would Suffer to Ride bim : This Bucephalus was an exceeding fair Horse, Fiery and full of Courage, whom Philip had bought of a Theffalian for thirteen Talents; and because of his fierceness he kept him in a Stable impaled with Iron Bars; yet for all that he remained fo full of Spirit that none could approach to Drefs him; whereby the King grown weary of him, fought the means to be rid of the Horse. It fortuned that Alexander came one day with his Father into the Stable; Whata Horle (faid he) is spoiled here, which through want of Skill and Horsemanship they know not how to Manage; and so coming more near, and gently clapping him, without any great difficulty got upon his Back, and then uling both. the Spur and the Rod, he managed him with that Port and Gallantry, that the Horse seemed proud of his Rider: and having rid his fill he brought the Horse back again. As he alighted the King for joy embraced and kiffed him, and with Tears in his Eyes, faid, o Son feek B 4

he

mu

tha

fu

we

the

WE

on

for

to Pe

ob fin

th

w

de in

m

W

F

B

ni

CC

th

CC fo

h 41

ť

0

out for some other Kingdom sureable to the greatness of the heart Wi for Macedom cannot fuffice thee. So that even then the Pru dent Father did prelage that all his paternal Inheritant det were not furficient to lavisfie his Sons Ambition. After his this King Philly determined to make War against at Greece, for the maintenance whereof, he thought it great was advantage if he could first win Byzantium, a famous Ciry on the Sea Coaff, and founded by Paufanias King of the fen Spartans; wherefore committing the Charge and Govern ment of his Realm to his Son, being then fixteen years of of Age, he laid Seige to the Town, which made him great reliftance. When he had exhaulted all his Riches and Treasure about the Seige; he was driven to to sarrow frift, that to furnish himfelf with mony he became a Pyras and roved on the Sea, where he took a hundred and feventy Ships; the Spoil wherof he devided amongst his Souldiers; and left the whole frength of fo great an Army thould be detained about the Seige of one City, he fertled the choicest Band of all his Soul. diers, and marched into Cherfonefus, where he took and put to fack many Towns; and because his Son Alexander was then about eighteen years of Age, and had shewed soch evident proofs of so much forward and promiting Vertue and Manhood, his Father fent for him this ther, withe intent that under him he might learn and fiddy the Art of War, and make his first proficiency in the Rudiments of a Souldier, and with him made a Voyage into Scythia, upon no other Quarrel but to spoil the Country, ; deligning thus to play the Merchant in his progress of Arms, with the gain of one War, he bore out the charges of another. But after he had brought the Country into Subjection, because no Riches of Gold and Silver was to be gotten there, he brought from thence twenty thousand Men, Women, and Children, befides a great multitude of Cattle, with twenty thouand choice Mares, to raile a Race in Macedon. In his refurn he was encountered by the Tribals, who denyed him paffage unless he would give them a share of his Booty : Whereupon

OOK I

whereupon debateing of the Matter, from Words hey fell to Fighting, in which King Philip was so Wounded in the Thigh, that even by the very same Wound, fire his Horse was run through and killed under him, insomuch that his whole Party thinking him flain the Booty was lost.

Ity As soon as he was recovered of his Wound, his different hand a manage of the Matter.

I

a

d

14

į,

n

the fembled grudge against the Athenians, burst out so far that he made open Waragainst them; by reason wherears of the Thebans seeing the danger so near at hand, gave im succour to their Neighbours, searing if the Athenians. were overcome, the first fury of the War would fall to were mortal Enemies one to another, united together in one League, and fent their Ambaffadors through all Greece for their own guard and preservation, with common Aid 77. to withfrand a common Enemy : Some confidering the th Peril to be Universal fluck to the Athenians, and some 26 observing Philips power increasing and the other decreafing, took pare with Philip. In this War Alexander had the charge of one of the Wings committed to him, in which trust his noble Courage did so well appear, and he deported himself so valiantly, that he seemed nothing inferiour to his Father, nor fecond to any Man, but by most just defert, gained the honour of the Victory, ver was he defrauded thereof by the Envy and Sleight of his Father, as he himself complained afterwards. This Battle was fought at Cheronea, wherein though the Athenians were the far greater number, yet were they overcome by the Macedonians, who though the fewer were the more expert Souldiers, by reason of their long and continual Practife in Wars : Neverthelefs the Athenians fo fought and fo fell, as men not unmindful of their tormer honour. That day at once made an end of all the Greciaus Glory, being indeed the faral Period, nor only of their long flourithing and no less extended Rule and Government, but even of all their Ancient freedom and liberty : For thele and many other Tellimonys of Valout B

t 7

C

1

1

ŀ

and Prowefs of our young Alexander, although the Kin Be his Father bore him fingular affection and favour; ye in nevertheless by certain occasions ensuing, that love we in nevertheless by certain occasions ensuing, that love we unhappily broken; for Philip though married to Olya Bo pias, Mother of Alexander, took to Wife besides her, and Lady called Cleopatra, where upon fell great discord an incumulation of the property of the Father and the Son: The occasion was given by one Attalus, Uncle to Cleopatra, who have a single the new Marriage, exhorted the Macedons to the Gods, to send the King and new the Queen, a lawful Heir to succeed in the Kingdom of Mala. cedon: Whereat Alexander being moved; Vile Man a m thou art (faid he) dost thou count me a Sastard; and with I that word fling the Cup at his Head. The King heaving this rose up, and with his Sword drawn ran at his Son, who by the nimbleness of his Body avoided the stroak, so that it did him no harm. Hereupon Alexan. der enveighing against so unnatural and barbarous an al left both his Court and Kingdom, and went with his Mother into Epirus, Nevertheless, soon after by the means of one Demoratus a Corinthian, who perswaded the King that this difford was nothing forthis Honour Alex the ander was fent for again, and much folieitation was used before they could be reconciled! Wherefore to confirm this Aronement, there was a Marriage made between Alexander the Brother of Olympias, whom Philip by the expulsion of Arisha had made King of Epirus, and Cleopatre the new Queens Daughter. The Triumph of the day was remarkable, according to the State and Magnificence of two fuch ! rinces, the one befrowing his Daugh. ter, and the other marrying a Wife : To which, as an additional Entertainment, were several Interludes presen. ted: To the Celebration of which, as King Philip between the two Alexanders, the one his natural Son, the other his Son in Law was passing through the press with. out any Guard, one Paulanias, a young man of the Nobiliey of Macedan, when no man suspected any such thing, Cuddenly

K BOOK L

an

Lis

· XV

Ced

rm

CD

x.

ay fi-

h.

d.

n.

c.

10 h.

30

Kin addenly flew him, making the day dedicated to Joy and ye Triumph, to be ended in universal Horrous and Detestawe ion of so bloody a Regicide. This Pausianas being a
Boy one Attalus enforced to the unlawful use of his Body,
and not content to commit the impious Fact himself, at
an inother Feast he caused divers of his Familiars to abuse
of him likewise. Touched and confounded with the sufferwho ince of so much shame and villary, the injured Youth
so to complained to the King, whom although the foulness of
the Fact moved much, yer for the love he bore to Atta-Ma lus and for the respect of his Service, he could by no means be prevailed with to punish so notorious an Injury. This Attalus was very near to the King, and in special fachis whom Philip had lately married: He was Elected Capthe rain General of the Kings Army, prepared to pale and into Afia, being one that was both valiant in his person. and no less politick in the Dicipline of War: Upon thele ion respects the King endeavoured by all the means he could to pacifie Paufanias, (incenfed with Indignation and Revenge) as well by giving him great Gifts, as by pla-

rhe cing him honourably among the Gentlemen that were for he the Guard of his own person: But all this could not appeafe the rage of his implacable Anger, which wrought fo in him, that he determined to be revenged not only upon Attalusthat did the Villany, but also upon the King that would not administer Justice, which determination. he thus boldly and bloodily put in Execution.

King Philip lived forry two years, and reigned twenty; five, being the three and twentieth King of the Mace. dons: His greatest Wealth were his Instruments and Engines of War, being indeed more successful in the acquisition than the preservation of Riches; infomuch, that even amongst at his daily spoils and rapines, he was fill but poor: Though Infidelity was his Darling, yet at the same time Mercy was no less his Delight : He thought no pathes that lead to Victory infamous: His Conversarion no less flatering than treacherous, always promiling:

f

1

d

I

1

1

h

F

6

0

1

c

f

t

promising more than he performed; and using artifice no less when in Jest as when in Earnest; he kept League and Frindship not by the strength of the Faith and Oathes that bound them, but according to the profit he got by them: To seign kindness in the height of hatred; to soment discords between sirmest Friends, and at the same time to ingratiate savour with both Parties was his constant practice. Nevertheless he was a prosound Orator, of most singular Eloquence; to whom an extraordinary quickness of Invention, sharpness of Wit, and presence of Mind, and an indefarigable Industry, were no common nor Unprincely Ornaments.

is, bein dockerwas both velous to be

and some very or unit

a Geldent of the Kings Amy.

water he was kinfing to it e Ocean We carrie

SECOND BOOK

Of the Acts of Alexander the Great, KING of Macedon.

Hen Philip was Dead, his Son, who for the greatness of his Acts, was afterwards cailed Alexander the Great, took upon him the Kingdom; the four hundred twenty fixth Year after the Building of Rome, being of the Age of twenty Years. His state shood at that time, subject to much Enry Hatred and Hazard from all pairs; for the Nations and Provinces Bordering upon him, could not well endure their present Bondage, and every one sought how to recover again their Ancient Dominions and Principalities. The first thing he undertook after he came to the Crown, was the Revenge of his Father's Murther, by the severe Punishment of as many as had Confpired his Death; which

fice

ue

ind

be

ha.

nd

ar.

5 2

on

In.

the

led

124

iil.

118

*

ind

re.

es,

vn, ere h Which performed, he Celebrated his Funerals with great Solemnity. As for his Eftate he foon Eftablished it and that much better than any Man could have imagined, in one of so young and tender years : For being of fome had in contempt, and by others suspected to be Cruel; towards the one, he deported himfelf fo Gallandly, that he took from them all contempt, and to the other fo gently, that their imagined fear of his cruel Disposition was wholy taken away. He granted to the Macedons, Freedom and Priviledge from all Exaction and Bondage, except from the fervice of War : By which A& he got fo great Favour and Love among the People, that affaffirmed by one Consent, how the Person of their King was changed, and not his Virtue; and fome that only his Name was altered, but not his Government. In the Beginning of his Reign, Rebellion was made against him orfall fides, but immediately with an incredible Courage and Constancy of mind, he appealed all Commorions whatfoever. That matter fet in order, he went to Cowinth in Peloponesus, when calling a General Council of all the States of Greece, he was Elected Captain General against the Terfians, who had afflicted Greece with many overthrows, and at that prefent, did possels the greatest Empfre in the World. His Father had designed this War besore, but by the prevention of Death he brought nor his intention to effect. Whilest he was in preparation for this Enterprise, he was informed how the Athenians, the Thebans, and the Lacedemonians were revolted from him, and were Confederares with the Perfians by the pervations of Demoliticals, who was Corrupted by them with a great Sum of Money; for the reformation thereof, Alexander advanced with his Army with that incredible speed, that when he came upon them, they could fearcely believe they law him prefent, having nor to much as heard he was coming. In his way, he Treated with the Thefalians, and uling to them fuch gentle words and moving perlayations, by putting them in remembrance of his Father's Benefit, and of the Ancient Kindred

6

ir

de

te

M

in

fti

op

th

by

da

the

an

as

Kindred berween them, by their descent from Herenles; that by a universal decree of the whole Country, he was created their Governour, and they delivered up to him all his Treasure and Revenues: So great was the Celerity that this young Manused, and his Diligence so effe-Etual, that the very fear of him had now reduced to Obedience, all whom the contempt of him had before enconraged to Revolt. As the Athenians were the first that failed, so they first of all repented, extolling with Praifes Alexanders young years (which before they had dilpised) above the Vertue of the Ancient Conquerors, They also sent Embaffadours to require of him Peace, whom he very much rebuked when they came to his prefence, but yet was content at length to remit their Offence ; and although Demoftbenes was chosen one of the M. Embassadours, yet came not in his sight; but being in the his way as far as Cytheron, he returned again to Athens . which either was for fear that he had to often inveighed La against Philip, and stirred the Athenians against him, or Wielse to take away the suspicion of himself from the King not Persia, of whom (it was said) he received a great with Sum of Gold to oppose the Macedons. The same thing cities was objected against him by Eschines in an Oration, where not he satth. For the present, the King's Gold do's bear his can suffice his prodigal Life. When Alexander had pacified the Tumults that were begun in Greece before he past his Army into Asia, he made a Journey against the reons, the Tribals, and the Illyrians, because he understood No. they were conspiring together; and as they were Borderen tha opon his own Territorys, and a People naturally faithless and perfidious, to prevent all invasions that might subjection ne-be made in his absence, he thought their subjection ne-cessary, before his removal from the City of Amphipolis: him He therefore march'd against the Thracians, a People not Ale subjected to any Government or Law.

In Ten Days he came to the Mount Hemus in the Top hot whereof he found them incamped with a power to refin hip

h

Ban

,

his passage; instead of Trenches, they had impaled them-Clives with their Carriages cross the Streights, purpoing there to withftand him, and if they should be invaded any other way than by the Streights, they did determine to roul their Carriages down the Hill upon the Macedons, to break their Array. That Device was put in Execution, but the Souldiers had received before infultions by Alexander as occasion should serve, either to come their Array, to let the Chariots and Wheels pass open their Array, to let the Chariots and Wheels pass th ough them, or elfe to fall fir upon the Standard the by covering their Bodys by their Targets to avoid the by covering their Bodys by their Instructions; and when the Chariots were passed by, they with great Courage and Shout, mounted up against their Enemies, and in a Moment put them to flight. When Alexander was passed the Mountain, he entered into the Country of the Tribals the Mountain, he entered into the Country of the Tribals as far as the River of Ligeus; when Syrmus, King of that Land understood of his approach, in great hast he sent his Wise and his Children, with such of his People as were not fit for the Wars, into an Island called Peuca, scienate within the River of Danubius: into which Island the Thracians Bordering with the Tribals, were fled also. It was not long after that Syrmus himself fled theirher in like manner. The rest of the Tribals that were not with the King withdrawing themselves into another Island, where they kept themselves against Alexander: But he by Policy, fought the means to draw them out of the Woods, and the coverts into the Plain, whereby he slew of them to the Number of Three Thousand, and the rest fled away, so that of Prisoners but sew were taken.

that of Prisoners but few were taken.

After this Barrie he marched towards the River of Damubins, to the Island, whether the Thracians and the other Tribals were fled: They made a stout relistance against him, which the Barbarians might the better do, by reason of Alexander wanted Boats to pass into the Island; the Banks whereof were to high and steep that they could P not be mounted, but with great difficulty, the River run-th ning violently fwift, by reason that the Stream was dri-

-BOOK I

re.

y

h

7

ing

of

inc

abi

y

he

to t

wh

Ca

ven into the Streight. When Alexander perceived the impossibility to assault them, he withdrew to another place, where geting a sew Boats in the Night, he passed over one Thousand five Hundred Horse-men, and four Thousand Foot-men, with that Company he ser upon a People called Getes, who stood in order of Bartle on the further side of the River, with four Thousand Horsemen and ren Thousand Foot-men, on purpose to stop the Macedons passage, but by their sudden coming over, the Getes were so assault, that they durst not stand the first Assault.

It seemed to them a wonderful Adventure for Alexan. der in one Night without a Bridge, to pass his Army over the Danube, the broadest and deepest River in all

Europe.

This struck such a Fear and Terror in their Hearts, that they fled into the Woods, Mountains, and Desert Places, leaving their City desolate, which was taken by

Alexander, and razed to the Ground.

Syrmus King of the Tribals, with the Germans and other Inhabitants upon the River of Danubius, fent their Embas. fadours thither to Alexander, to enter with him into friendship, and he condesending to their Requests, inquired of the Germans, what thing it was which in the world they feared most? thinking indeed, that the Terrour of his Name had been their most dreadful Apprehension; But when they understood his meaning, they answered, that they doubted greatly the falling of the Skie, with whose presumptions answer Alexander was nothing moved nor further reply'd, only he faid the Germans were a proud People, and thereupon difmiffed them. As he was going from thence against the Agreons and the Peons, he was Advertised that Clieus Bardelius had Rebelled, and Confe. derated with Glaucius the King of the Thaulantes: He had also Intelligence that the People of Anteri would obstruct his passage, by giving him Battel, wherefore he Committed to Lagrius King of the Agrians (who was well beloved of King Philip, and no less in the favour of Alexander

ne

er

d

a

n

ne

A

7.

all

3,

rt

er L

Alexander) the Charge to go against the Anterians, and pro hifed him upon his return, to give him his Sifter Crdin Marriage; and Alexander him felf with great Celeriw. marched against clitus and Glaucius, whom in fundry dattels he overcame. In the midd of this Progress of Alexander, he received Intelligence, that divers Citys in Greece and specially the Thebans had Rebelled, which thing moved him much, and was the cause that he rerumed with speed to suppress their Commotions. Thebans in the moan Season, beseiged the City of Thehes, called the Cadmean Tower, wherein was a Garrison of Mabeing strongly incrench'd about it; Alexander by great Tourneys advanced to their Releif, and Encamped with his whole Army near to the City. The Theban Com. manders, when they law him come contrary to their expedation, and doubting whether fuch Aid should come to them from other Citys, as was promiled, began to Confult how to proceed: At length, by a General Confent, they determined to abide the hazard aud extremi-

y of the War.

The King in the mean Season stood at a stay, giving to them space to be beened and after their Resolu-11. ld ut mide reliftance against so great a Power as he had, beon: ing Thirty Thousand Foot men, and Three Thousard d, Horse-men, all Old Souldiers, and expert in the Travels ich of War. The Trust of their Experience and Valour, had ed caused him to undertake the War against the Persians: ud Truly if the Thebans had given place to Fortune and Time, 30. and would have required Peace, they might eafily have as obtained it, Alexander's present Ambition, being whofe. ly taken up with his intended Persian expedition. But the Thebans being determined to try their Force, and not es: ild to make any Suit, Fought against the Macedons, far exhe ceeding them in Number, with great Resolution, but vell whilest the battels were joyning, the Garrison of the Caltle iffued out upon the Thebans Backs, whereby being der

15

n

nif

in

0

111

m

an

Je

eh

L

tr

aı

H

1

al

to

20

W

he

th

fo

ar

inclosed they were vauquished, their City taken, spoiled, and utterly razed, which extremity Alexander plet of purpose, because he thought the rest of the Grecia being terrified by their Example, would be the mor quiet during his absence in his Asiatick Wars. To gratise the Photeans and Plateons, his Confederates, which brought many accusarions against the Thebans he seem more than Six Thousand of them, and fold Thirty Thousand as Slaves; the money thereof amounted to the Sun of four Hundred and Forty Tallents, yet he spared at the Linage of Pindarus the Poet, whereby he would with ness to the World the favour he bore to Learned Men

In this City of Thebes, was a Norable Woman called Timeclea, whom, when a Captain of Thrace had ravish'd and would have forced her to confess her Money; she brought him to a Well where (she said) all her precious Treasure was hidden, and whilest he stooped down to look into the Well, she thrust him in, and threw many great Stones after him, whereby he was slain. For this Fast she being Committed to Prison, and asterwards brought before Alexander; he asked her what she was; she undauntedly answered that she was the Sister to The agines, who being Elested Captain General against King Philip his Father, manfully Died for the liberty of Green, at whose stoutness and constancy the King marvelled, so much, that he caused her with her Children to be set at Liberty.

The Athenians had so great Piry and Compassion of the Estate of the Thebans, that contrary to the Commandment of Alexander, they received into their City such of them as escaped, which thing Alexander took in such displeasure, that when they sent Fmbassadours the second time to demand Peace, he would not be appealed upon any other Conditions, but that such Orators and Captains which had stirred them to Rebellion, should be delivered into his hands, but at length it was so carried, that the Orators were reserved, and the Captains Banished, who

ftreight fled to Darius, King of Perfia.

the out in y

ds

5

be-

ng ett, fo at

of de of of no

ed

he

0

At fach time as Alexarder affembled the Germans in Abmustor the determination of his Journey into Perka. many Orators and Philosophers came to visit him. Dioenes only that remained about Cornith kept himself away. as one that effeemed Alexander nothing at all, whereat he marvelled much and went to vifit kim, as he was warmirg himfelf in the Sun. He asked Diogenes if he had need of any thing that he might do for him? To whom, Diegenes gave neither Reverence nor Thanks, but wished him to fland out of his Sun-shine, in whose behaviour and words, Alexander took to great delight, that turning to those that were with him, he said if he were not Alexinder he should wish to be Diogenes. When he had put in Order the affairs of Greece, committing the Rule thereof, together with the Rea'm of Macedon, to the Government of an Antipater (in whose Fidelity he much confided) in the begining of the Spring he marched to Hellespont with his whole Army, which he Transported into Afa, with incredible speed and diligence. -

When they were come to the further Shore, Alexander with great force, threw a Dart into the Enemies Land, and as he was Armed leaped out of the Ship with great Joy, and there Sacrificed, making Perition to the Gods, that those Country's might willingly receive him for their . Lord. From thence he marched towards his Enemies . and forbad his Souldiers to make any spoil of the Country, perswading them to spare that which was their own, and not to destroy that Land which they came to posseis. He had not in his Army above the Number of Thirty. Two Thousand Fcomen, and Five Thousand Horsemen and about Eighteen Hundred Ships, wherefore it is hard to judge whether it be more wonderful that he Conquered the World, or that he durst attemp the Conquest of it with fofmall a Power. To fuch a dangerous Enterprize he chose not out the Young Men in the first Flower of their Age, but the Old Sonldiers, of whom the most part

for their long continuance in Wars, both under his Father and Uncles, should according to the Custom be fer at Li-

berty

BOOK

p

ni

Ae

n

41

h

h

n

dr

n

H

þp

berry, and excused from the Service of the Wars, unles at their own pleasure, and there was no Captain nor an other that did bear Office in his Army, under the Age Sixty Years, forhat the Souldiers feemed to be School Mafters of the War, and the Captains for their Gravit appeared to be Senators in some Ancient Common Wealth which was the occasion that in the Fight none them minded flying, but every one confident of the Vi ctory, did not repose his fafery in his Feet, but in hi Hands.

Alexander, who every where made Sacrifice, use most Solemnity at Troy upon Achilles Tomb, of whom he was Descended by the Mothers side, he judge him most happy of all men before him, because in fud Glory he died young, and had his Ads transmitted to Posterity by such a Pen as Homers From thence he pal fed forward into the Dominions of Darius King of Perfu who being the Son of Asfanes, and the fourteenth Kin after Cyrus had the possession of the whole Eastern part the World. The chiefest cause that moved Alexander to invade him, was to be revenged of the Pride of Darius for formerly demanding Tribute of Failig his Father Darius also had fenera proud and presumprious Embal fage, calling himfelf the King of Kings and Kinfman of the Gods, and Alexander his Vastail, and gave Comissi on to his Lieurenants that they should beat that mad Boy the Son of Philip with Rods, and afterwards bring him bound in Fetters and in Kingly Apparrel to his prefence 23 and furthermore that they should fink both Ships and Ma riners, and convey all the Souldiers that should be left wallive beyond the red Seas. They therefore purposing to execute the Kings Commandment a Complete the to execute the Kings Commandment affembled their 4 power at the River of Granick, which devided the County try of Trey from Propontides, having to the number of twenty thousand Footmen, and as many Horsemen, and with whom they had taken the Ground on the other side the River where Alexander must needs pass over: Where by of when he was advertised, though he saw apparant ty danger

an ool vir

e o Vi

fer on ger uc

in

in to in the

oal.

ffi.

eu

unof

-Mi ide

er

anger in the Enterprise, to fight in the Water and the are against his Enemies, who had the advantage of the igher Bank; yet upon a fing plar truft to his own good orune and the courage of his Souldiers, he Charged

pon the Enemy.

At the first he was resolutely Encountered and pur in. o great danger of repulse, but ar length he vanquished nd overthrew them, in doing whereof, there neither vanted Policy in Himfelf, nor fingular manhood in his den. There was flain in that Battle of the Persians. wenty thousand Foot, and two hundred and forty Horse. nd of the Macedons but thirty four. This Victory was o little foundation to the prosperity of the affaires of alexander, for thereby he won the City of Sardis, being he chief strength the Perlians had for the mastering of he Seas; to which City and to all the rest of the Counry of Lydia, he gave liberty to live under their own Laws. He gor also under his possession the City of Ephefus, which the fourth day after the Barrle, was abanloned by the Garrison which Darius set there. nean featon there came Embassadors from Magnetic and from the Triallians, proffering the delivery of their Citys: l'armenio was fent to them with two thousand five hunfred hired Souldiers, with the like number of Macedoniins, and about two hundred of his trufty and faithfulleft Horsemen: After this he won Miletum, that made strong ce hasus, he got all the Towns lying in his march at the first approach, and afterwards beseiged Halicarnass it self, which with great Travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed it to the Great travel he overcame at large razed razed travel he overcame at large razed razed razed razed travel he overcame at large razed r razed it to the Ground. As Alexander entered into Caria, Ada the Queen of that Country, who had been spoiled of all her Dominions by Orontobates Darius Lieutenant, laving of one itrong City called Olinda) met with Alex. under, and adopted him for her Son and Heir, he would not refuse the Name and the Proffer of her liberality, re-butdid restore to her again the command of her own Ci-ant ty, and besides for the memorial of her benevalence

BOOK having Conquered the whole Country of Caria, he it under her Rule and Subjection : From thence he m ched into Lycia and Pamphylia, to the intent that by ing the advantage of the Sea Coast of those Countrys might weaken the strength of Darius ar Sea. and ren he the Enemies Naval Forces useless. When he had he dued the People of Pifidia, with a most Ardent del it and no less Alcrity, he bent his course through I bri ne

he

ve he n he

Co vii

vh

THE

to encounter Darius, whom he was advertised was

proaching at the head of a formidable Army.

THIRD BOOK

Of the Acts of Alexander the Great KIN of Macedon.

Lexander in the mean feafon, having dispatch # Cleander into Peloponnesus with sums of mony levey Recruits, Established the Country of cia and Pamphylia, and removed his Army to the City celane: Through this City there ran the River of M he tia, made famous by the Poetry of Greece; whose he foringing out of the Top of a high Mountain and falli down upon a Rock beneath, makes almost death Murmers, flowing from thence and watering the Fiel of round about, without any increase of any Stream savia his own, the colour whereof being like to the calm St water to feigh how the Nymply in the Poers to feigh how the Nymply in the Nymply in the Poers to feigh how the Nymply in the Nymply down upon a Rock beneath, makes almost deafni gave occasion to the Poets to feign how the Nympl Vistor the delight they took in that River, did choose the indexelling under that Rock, so long as it runneth with compass of the Walls; it keeps his own Name, but where the Stream is more swift and the hement, it is then called Lycus. Alexander entered he n

35

nto this Town, being forfaken of the Inhabiants, perceiveing they were fled into the Castle which e determined to Win before he departed, he first fent fummon them by an Herauld, who declared unless hey would yield themselves, they should suffer the ex-directive of the Law of Arms. They brought the Herauld del to an high Tower, which was strong both by Nature bright Art, withing him to consider the law of the high to consider the law. nd Art, willing him to confider the height and Arength hereof, and to declare to Alexander, that he was not fo vell informed of the strength of the Place as themselves he Inhabitants, for they knew it to be Impregnable; nd if the worst should fall they were resolved to die in heir Allegiance: Notwithstanding when it came to the Point that they law themselves belieged, and all things vere scarce, they took Truce for forty days, with this Composition, That if they were not rescued by Darius within that time, they would render it up into his hands, which they did afterwards at the day appointed, when hey faw no fuccour coming.

To that Place there came Embaffadours to him from tel thens, Peritioning that fuch of their City as were taken prisoners at the Battel fought at the River Granicke, might be restored to them; to whom Answer was made, that when once the Wars of Persia was brought to an end, both M heirs and all other that were Greeks, should be restored he their Liberty.

Alexander had his care and resolution always upon fine Parius, who he knew had not yet passed the River Euphratiel is: He assembled therefore all his Powers together, purvisioning to venture the hazard of the Battel: The Country
Se was called Fórygia that he passed through, plentiful of plus villages, but scarce of Citys; yet there was one of great the intiquity, called Gordium, the Royal Seat sometime of th ling Mydas: The River of Sangary runs through it, and thands in the midway between the Seas of Pontus and eason of the Seas which ly on both fides, representing he form of an Island; and were it not for a small Point

0

bl

Da

ne

et

ve

b

Fh

f

W

he

of Land that lyes betwirt those Seas, they would joy both rogether. Alexander having reduced this City is his obedience, enterd into the Temple of Jupiter, when he law the Charlot wherin Mydus th Founder of this Cin was accustomed to ride, which in the furniture and our ward Appearance, differed little from other Chariot but there was in it a thing remarkable, which was Cord folded and knir with many Knots, fo intricate of within another, that no man could perceive the manne ofir, neither where the Knors began nor where they en ded . Hereupon the Countrymen had a Prophefy, the he should be Lord of all, Afia that could undo that endle Knot. This poffets'd the King with a marvellous defin to become the fullfiller of the Prophety. There for about him a great number both of Phrygians and Maced nians, the one part of them expeding the event, and it other fearing the prefumption of the King, forafmuch they could perceive by no reason how the Knot shoul be undone: the King himfelf also donbring that the fai ling of the matter; might be as a Token of his evil For tune to come, after he had confidered the Thing, an having in vain arrempted the untying, what matters (quoth he) which way it be undone, and fo ftriving a longer about to fruitless a Labour, he with his Sword of the Cords afunder, thereby illuding or elfe fullfilling the effects of the Prophely.

This being done, Alexander purposed to find out Dans wheresoever he went, and to the intent to leave all thing clear behind his back, he made Amphitorus Admiral of he Navy upon the Coast of Hellespont, committing the chargof the Field Army to Egilochus. They were Commissoned deliver the Island of Lesbes, Scios, and Coas, from the han of the Persians, and for the provision of their Charges, he Assigned them fifty Talents, and fent to Antipater as such others who had the Governance of the Citys of Green sixty Talents: He gave Order that such as were his Co federates, should with their Naval Forces defend the Se of Hellespont, according to the League betwixt them.

or and si

was not yet come to his knowledge that Memnen was pead, whom he most suspected, well knowing that if he noved not against him, no Manshould be his stop be-

ore he came to Darins.

Alexander came to the City of Ancira, where he made is Musters, and fo entred into Paphlagonia, adjoyning owhich, lies the Country of the Vetians, of whom it s faid the Veneti in Germany are descended. All this Country Submitted to him, and gave him Pledge, beog excused from Tribute, seeing they never paid any othe Terfians. Calas was Captain there; who taking with him the Band of Souldiers that were lately come of Maredon, marched into Capadocia: But Darius heaing if the Death of Memnon, was no less moved therewith than the Case required, for then all other hope set part he determined to decide the Matter in Person. for he Condemned all things that had been done by his Deputies, believing Courage and Conduct to be wantng in many of them, and that Fortune had failed in hem all. He came therefore to Babylon, where he Enamped and Assembled all his Forces rogether in fight the Ciry, because he would shew the greater Couage and using the Example of Xerxes, in taking of his Inters, he Entrenched fo much Ground about, as was ble to receive 10000 Men; within which, he odged in the Night such as had been Mustered in the day, and at the Sun rifing they were bestowed abroad on ing f h the Plain of Mesopotamia. The Number of his Horsehen and Foormen were almost innumerable, and they et feemed in fight to be more than they were. There vere of the Perfians an Hundred Thousand, of whom ed Thirty Thousand were Hersemen; of the Macedons Ten housand Horse men, and Fifty Thousand Footmen; at ree f the Billian, Two Thousand Horsemen with broad words and light Bucklers, and 10000 Footmen with he like Weapons: There were of the Armenian, forcy houland Footmen and seven thousand Horsemen: The e Se ircanians of great Estimation amongst these Nations, had 1.

to

to

C

tl

ir

21

N

T

21

N

61

G

tl

S

fa

il

0

1

Ħ

t

ſ

n

1

2

tl

e

P

f

f

C

h

BOOK III fix thousand Horse-men. The Dervicens were for thousand Footmen Armed with Pikes, whereof a par had no Heads of Iron, but the Points of them dryed the Fire. There were also of the same Nation two thou fand Horsemen: There came from the Caspian Sea eigh thousand Footmen and two bundred Horsemen, and win there of the rude Nations of Alia, two thousand Footme and four thousand Horsemen. To the increase of the Numbers, there were thirty thousand Mercinary Sould ers that were Greeks. His hafte permitted him not i call for the Archofians, Sogdians and Indians, with other the Inhabitants of the Red Sea, Nations which had name fcarcely known to their own King. Thus Davius want ing nothing less than the multitude of Men, greatly re joyced to behold them, and puffed up with the vanin and flattery of the great Men which were about him turned to Charidemus of Athens, an expert Man of War and Morral Enemie of Alexander, as having by him bee banishe his Country, and asked him if he thought no these Forces sufficient to overthrow the Macedons, where at Charidemus, without respect of the Kings Pride, or his own Estate, answered, Peradventure Sir, you will not be content to hear the Truth, and except I tell i now, it may everafter be too late. This great Prepare tion and mighty Army of yours, gathered of the multi tudes of so many Nations, raised up from all parts of the orient, is more fearful'to the Inhabitants hereabout the terrible to your Enemies. Your Men thine in Colours and glyfter in Armour of Gold; exceeding to much Riches, that they which have not feen it with their Eye cannot conceive it in their Minds; but contrariwife, the Macedons bring rough Souldiers, without any fuch excess and terrible to behold: The Fronts of their Battel stand close together, always in strength, furnished with Pikes and Targers for defence. That which they cal the Phalanx is an immovable square of Foot, wherein e wery Band stand close to each other, joyning Weapon to Weapon : Every Souldier is ready to that which hei Commanded

same hardiness.

paring pa

ar ce no

vi!

C S.H Charles the Co. H

Commanded, ready at his Captains call, whether it be to follow his Enlign, to keep his Array, to fland fill, to un, to fetch a Compais, to change the Order of the Battel, to fight on this fide or that fide, which every common Souldier is as expert in as his very Captain and that you may not think them either guided or intructed in this Martial discipline, by the love or reward of Gold and Silver; War was their Study when Poverty was their Miftress. When they are weary the Ground is their Bed: They are farisfied with fuch Meat as they find by chance, and they measure not their Sleep by the length of the Night. Think you the Horsemen of Thefaly, the Achaians, Atolians, those invincible Men of War, will be expulsed with Slings, or Staves burned in the Pire. It behooves you to have like Force, to oppose, and to be ferred by the same condition of Men. My Countel is therefore, that you fend this Gold and Silver to levy Souldiers Born in the fame Countrys, and Bred to the

Darius was a Man of a mild aud tractable Disposition . if the height of his Estate had not altered the goodness of his Nature, which made him so impatient to hear the Truth, that he Commanded Charidemus to be put ftreight way to Death, being a Manthat was fled to his Pro. tedion, and that had given him right profitable Counfel. When he was going towards his Death, he continued his liberty and boldness of Speech in this manner. There is one at hand that shall revenge my Death, for he against whom I have given the Counsel, shall punish thee for not following it; and thou that art thus changed even from thy felf, and Elevated by the Vanity and Pride of Empire, shall be an Example to such as shall come after, that those who are puffed up with Fortune, forget even their own Nature. Whilest Charidemus was speaking of these words, they which had the Charge committed to them, put him to Death, whereof the King afterwards took over lare Repentance, confessing him to have spoken the Truth, and caused him to be Buried.

There was one Thymnes the Son of Mentor, a young Ma of great Activity to whom Daius gave the Charge of a in the foreign Souldiers, in whom he had great Confidence willing him to receive them at Pharrabafus's hands, and gave to Pharnabafus the Rule that Memnon had before

Thus Darius being careful of the great Business he had of in hand, whether it were through pensiveness of mind the or that his funcy did divine things to come, was contained that the Macedons Camp was on fire, and shortly after, feemed to him that Alexander was brought to his present in such a function of the him of Habir as himself wore before his accept the on to the Crown, and carried thence through Babylons we Horseback, he streight vanisht from his sight. Hereu the on the Interpreters of Dreams betokened good Forting to himself, because of the Fire that seemed to be in the Enemies Camp, and that Alexander had laid aside here wown Royal Vestment, to assume the vulgar Apparel to the Persians. Others did interpret it otherwise, that the Lightning in the Macedons Camp, signified Glory at Wistory to Alexander, and also the Enjoyment of the Engire of Asia, which they made more clear, for as much as Alexander appeared in the same Vestures that Dan some when he was chosen King. Care betide an Anxiet of minds (as often Chances) brought things past, again to Remembrance. It was rehearsed how Darius in the beginning of his Reign, changed the Scabbard of his beginning of his Reign, changed the Scabbard of his Sword, from the Persian manner, into the fashion that die Greeks used; whereupon the Caldees did prognostica C that the Kingdom of the Perfians thall be translated to the g whose fathion he had Counterfeired, norwithstanding be for ing glad of the more fivourable Interpretation of the in ther more pleasing Diviners, which he crused ever w where to be publish'd as an Omen of his Success, and G the Vision that he seemed to have in his Sleep. I si Commanded his Army to March forward towards to River of Exphrates. It was the Antient cuftome among e the Persians at Sun-riling to raile their Camp, and a will m of a ing of their setting forward to be by the sound of a rumper at the King's Pavilion, upon which their stood at the Image of the Sun inclosed in Christel, shining so bright that it might be seen throughout the Camp. The Order of their marching was in this manner. The Fire which ind they call Holy and Eternal, was carried before on Silver on Alears. Next to them went the Divines singing after their time Country manners. Therefollowed three hundred fixty sive er, young Men in Scarlet Robes, like in Number to the days. Ten of the Year, (being ever the Perfin Division of the Year) cell then come the Chariot Confectated to Jupiter, drawn one with White Horses, and a great Horse following, which they call the Horse of the Sun. Rods of Gold in their wore white Garments, bearing Rods of Gold in their thands: Next in order teme ten Charlots, garnished and harought with Silver and Gold. The Hertemen of twelve electrons followed in fundry for s of Armour. Then came the Company that the Ferfans called Immortal, in Number at ten thousand, the Riches of whose Apparrel exceeded. Et far the reft, they had all chais of Gold, Coats Embroinue derid with Gold, and Sheves with Pearl. These weie Dan followed within a small Distance by a Land of fifteen kit thousand Souldiers, called Dorepheris, reported for the ign Kings Kinsmen, and Appareled a most like Women; at more notable for the variety of the R ches of their Garfi ments than the Armour they wore: Such as were wont to receive the Kings Rebes, did ride next before the ica Chariot, upon the which Darius did fit on high, with he great Pomp and Magnificence; his Chariot being garniz b fred on both fides with carved Images of their Gods . re made of Silver and Gold, the Beanis whereof were let ver with Pearls and prictions Stones, with two Images of d Gold flanding thereupon, of a Cubit length, and oppo-Hafite to the other; the one the Image of Peace, the o her of War, and over their Heads an Eagle of Gold displayed. But amongst the rest, the Kings Apparrel seemed with marvellous sumpruous, which was of Purple impaled white, with a Border Embroidered with Gold, and Gol-

C 3

den

den Faulcons fo wrought as if they were fighting toge ther. He was girt Effeminately with a Girdle of Gold. and the Sword that hung thereupon had a Scabbard of Pearl: The Diadem which he did wear upon his Head. called by the Perfians Cydaris, had a Roll about it of white and Green. Next behind the King, came ten Thousand Horsemen who had all their Spears plated with Silver, and their Spear heads guilded. He was inclosed on both fides with near two hundred of the Blood Royal, at whose Back there followed thirty thousand Footmen, and after them four hundred of the Kings Couriers, within the distance of one Furlong, Sifygambis the Mother of Darius was carried in one Chariot, and his Wife in another, the Train of their Women riding on Horseback. Next to them went fifteen Chariots, where. in the Kings Children were carried and their Nurles and Eunuchs, which are greatly esteemed in that Country, After them followed three hundred of the Kings Concu. bines, all Apparelled like Queens, Then came fix hundred Mules, and three hundred Camels that carried the Kings Treasure, Guarded with a Band of Archers, the Wives of the Kings Kinfinen, and the others that were a. boat the King. Then came riding next after them a great Company of Slaves and Varlets, lasely came the Reward lightly Armed, whereof every Captain Severally with his own Company closed the Army; fuch was the Order of Darius Hoaft: But on the other fide beholding Alexanders Army, there was to be feen a great difference; neither the Mennor the Horse, glistered so with Gold and pretious furnatures, but only with the brightness of their Harness. They were so much at their Leaders Command, that even his look without his word was a fufficient Signal to stay, or to advance, neither oppref. fed with Multitude, nor peftred with too much Baggage. They wanted not in any place, either Ground in their encamping or Victuals for their feeding, whereby their small Number was always sufficient when they came to fighe. Whereas Darius the Lord of so huge a Multitude through

III.

ge.

ld.

l of

id,

lite

and

er,

ON

at.

ind

5

he

his

on

re.

ba

y.

u.

n-

10

10

2.

e

e

through the fireightness of the Ground wherein he was forced to give Battel, was compelled to use the fewnels of Men, which before he had despised in the Enemie. Alexander appointed to Abistamines the Rule of Cappadecia, and marching with his Army towards cilicia, came to the place called Cyrus Camp, because Cyrus Lodged there when he passed into Cilicia against King Crefus. This place was distant about fifty Furlongs from the Streights entring into Cilicia; the Country men use to call the Streights Pyla, where thenatural Scituation of the place had made a Fortification as it were with mens Hands. When Arfenes Governour of Cilicia understood of Alexanders coming, remembering what Memnon perswaded in the beginning of the Wars, he put it in Execution when it was too late, wasting and deftroying throughout Cilicia, all fuch things as he thought might fland his Enemy, inflead leaving the Country wafte, which he was not able to defend: Whereas it had been much better to have taken the Streights before his Enemies, where from the Hill lying over the way, he might wirkout hazard have hindred his entry, or have diffressed his passage; but he having a small Number for the defence of the Streight retired himfelf back to wast the Country, which it had been his more prudent part to have defended from that Deftruction by his departure it came to pass that such as he left be-, hind thinking themselves betrayed, would not so much as abide the fight of their Enemies, when much lefs Number had been sufficient to have kept the passage; for the Scienation of cilicia is fuch, that it is environed about with a continual rough and freep Mountain, which rifing from the Sea on the one fide, and fetching a compass about joyns again with the Sea on the other fide. Through this large Mountainous Tract of Ground, which lies like a Promontory fo far into the Sea: There are three very narrow and difficult paffes, one only of which leads into Cilicia, opening into a Plain near the See full of Rivers, amongst the which are two most fa-

G 4

mous

thi ing wh Ri

lis

an

in

2

hi

F

al

ri

Y

al

B

C

1

1

ſ

F

h

n

(

t

t

i

1

1

BOOK III

EC

mous, Pyramus and Cydnus, but Cydnus most especially not so much for its greatness as the clearness of the Water, which from his first Spring runnerh clearly through all the Country, and hath no other River running into him to disturb the puren is of the Stream, for which cause it remained always clear and cold, by reason of the Woods that shadow all the Banks. Time hath consumed many Antiquities within that Country which are remembred of the Poets. There may yet be feen the Foundations of the Ciries of Lernessus Cebessus with the Cave of Typhon, and Grove Corycian, where Saffron groweth, with many other things, whereof now

remain but only their Name.

When Alexander entred the Streights beforemention. ed, and beheld the Sciruation of them, he never in all his Life marvelled more at his own Felicity, cenfeffing that it had not been possible for him to have paffed , if any had stood at defence against him, for that with Stones only he might have been over-whelmed, the Streight befides being fo narrow that there could not pass above four in Front, to the increase of which difficulty the Tops of the Mountains hung over the way, which in many places was broken and hollow with the Streams that run down from the Hills. Alexander fent Thracians that were light Armed, to Scour and discover the ways, for fear the Enemies should lierhere in Ambush, and suddenly break forth upon him .He appointed also a Band of Archers to take the Top of the Hill, which were fo order. ed to march that they might be in a readiness to fi ht. After this manner he came to the City of Tarfas, which was fer on Fire by the Persians, because Alexander should find no har bour there, nor enrich himself by the spoil of fo wealthy a Town; but Parme no was fent thither with a choice number of Horsemen to quench the Fire, who understanding that the Enemies were fled away at the News of their coming, entred into the City, and by thar means preferved from burning.

The River Cydnus spoken of before did run through

10.

א מין מין

f.

W

n.

g

if

.

e

t

t

r

this City where the King arrived at our mid-day, ir being in the Summer Seiton, as what time the Heat is no where mor vio enrib'n in Cilica. The Water of this River appeared to pleasant as invited Alexander to bath his Body in it, to will away the Swear and Duft thereif, and being very hot, he entied naked into the Water in the fight of a his Souldiers, thinking it should be a contentation to them, to fee that the Garments about his Body, w reno other but fach as they commonly

used them elves to wear.

He wis no fooner entred, but all his trembling Limbs began to be fiff with the extremity of cold, his Fac: waxed pale, and the lively Hear was mornified in all parts of his Body. His Servants took him up and carrichim to his Tenras one beside himself, and at the very point of Death; then there was a great defolation and heaviness in the Camp; they Wept, Lamented, and Bewailed, that the brav. It of Pri ces and nobleft of Captains, that Time or Memory should ever Record, Mould by to fudden a stroke of Fare be fnatcht from them in the very height of his creat Enter rz:, and after fuch a manner, not in Battel flein Honourably by his Foes, but poorly Bathing in a River, and that Darus bimfe't was now fon ar at land, should approach no less than a Conquerour, even b. fore the very seeing of his Enemy, and that they should be enforced to return back again, as Men vanquisht by those Countrys, through which they had paffed before as Conquerours: in which Countrys all things being destroyed by themfelves or by their Friend's, they must of nec ffity dge for hunger though no Man should pursue them. It became a Question among themselves who should be their Captain in flying away, or what he were that dorft succeed Alexander: And though they might safely arrive at the Sea of Hellespont, yet, what Veffels, or what Preparation for their passage? When they had disputed these Q1 stions, their Arguments by and by, where turned into Compassion towards their Prince, lamen-CS ting

1

1

(

1

1

1 (

t

t

t

I

h

i

1

34

ring as Men out of their Wits, that fuch a Flower of Youth, such Force of Courage as was in him, that their King and Companion in Arms should so fatally be

torn from them.

In the mean Season, Alexander began to draw his Wind somewhar better, and when he came to himlelf, he lifted up his Eyes and began to know his Friends that were about him. That the vehemency of his Sickness somewhat asswaged, was perceived in that he beganto understand the Peril he was in, but the solicitousness of his mind was a great hindrance to his Health; for tidings came, that Durius in five days would be in Citicia, he could not but take it grievoufly, that fuch a Victory hould be plucked out of his hands through his Infirmity, and that he should be taken as one ryed in Fetters, and be put to some shamefol and vile Death: He called therefore to him both his Friends and Phylicians, and faid unto them ye fee in what an Extremity of Condition Fortune hath surprized me. Methinks already the ratling of my Enemies Arms rings in my Ears, & I who first moved the War,am now my felf provoked, and challenged to the Fight. When Darius writ to me such proud Letters, he was not ignorant of my present State and Fortune; yet peradventure he may be dec ived, if I may follow my own inclinations in recovery of my own Health: my Case requires no flack Medicines, nor flow Phy. licians. I had rather dye floutly once, than to con-Sume long time in my recovery: Wherefore, if there be any hope or cunning in Physick, let it be now feen, and think that I feek not Remedy so much for my own Life, as I do for the deire I have to encounter with mine En-mies.

When they heard him ip ak thefe words, they were in great doubt of his sudden riffinels, and therefore every one parricularly did defire him that he would not increase eis peril through any passion, but fuffer himfelf to be ordered by the advice of his Phylicians; for they alledged that unapproved Remedies were not

ful petted

BOOK III. Alexander the Great. 35 infeeded of them without cause, feeing his Enemies had endeavoured to corrupt fuch as were about him, by promiling a thousand Talents to his Murderer , they thought no man would be so bold to make any experiment of Phylick upon him which for the want of Tryal thereof, might in any wife give cause of fulpicion. There was among & the Nobility an excellent Phylician that came with Alexander out of Macedon, one Philip of Asarnam, who was preferred to him for prefervation of his Health, and had faithfully ferved him from his Childhood, and therefore loved him with intire af. fection, he promised to provide for the King an approved Remedy, but fuch a one as would work vehe mently, but by the drinking thereof he doubted nor (he faid) but to expel the force of his Difeafe. promise pleased no man, but only him who in the proof thereof thould fland the peril of it, for he could abide all things better than delay : Darius and his power were always in his Eye, and he had an affured Confidence that the Victory mould fall on his fide, if he might be able to fland in the Head of his Enfign. The thing that only grieved him was, that the Physicians would not Minister before the third day: In the mean Season Parmenie whom of all his Nobility he trufted moft, had exherted him by his Letter, that he fould not commit himself to the Cure of Philip, for that he was corrupted by Da. ries with a thousand Talents and the promise of his Sifter in Marriage. Those Letters brought the King into great Jealoufie, and moved him fecretly to confider with himfelf, all that either fear or hope could put into his Fancy. half I adventure (disputed he with himself) to drink this Medicine; What if it be Poison? Shall I not then be accounted the cause of my own Death? Shall I sufpett the Fidelity of my Phyfician , and thereby fuffer mine Enemy to Kill me in my Red ? Yet were it better for Me to perish by other mens Treason, then thus to

die through mine own faint Heart. His mind being thus diverfly perplexed, he would shew the Contents of the

1

of

nat

be

his

f,

ıaı

ess

to

of

ti.

4 .

TY

y,

nd

ed

id

r.

of

ed

he

16

et

14

h:

7.

1-

.

h:h

0

.

0

d

r

t

80 Letter to no Man, but Sealed it with his own Ring and nd laid it underneath his Pillow. Two days were paffed DOT in these Imaginations, and the appointed third day the Iv Physician came to his Bed side with the Medicine ready of. hin prepared; when the King faw him he raised himself upon his Elbow, and taking the Letter in his left hig hand, with the other hand took the Cup, and ftraight. his Vi way drunk it off, when he had so done he delivered the Letter to Philip to read, and whileft he was reading he beheld him fledfastly in the Face, supposing that if he had been faulty, some tokens of guilt would have ap-V peared in his Countenance : When Philip had read the m th Letter, he shewed more figns of Indignation than Fear, and falling down upon his Knees by the Kings Bed, he ut-H rered his Resentments in this manner. Sir, I see my

0

th

d

tl

0

h t

t

1

t

declare that I am falfly charged with this Treason: Ther fore when by my means you shall get your Health, I trust you will not then deny me my Life, in the mean Season lay fear aside, and suffer the Physick to diffuse through your Veins and Perform its Operation; keep your mind quiet, and suffer not your self to be troubled with the superfittious car fulness of your Friends, which though it proceed of good Will, is notwithstanding a great impediment to the regaining of your Halth. His words not only farished the King, but made him to conceit perfect hope of his recever, and faid to Philip, if the Gods would have granted thee to advise with

Life depends upon your Health. but your recovery shall,

thy felf of a way to prove the confidence I have in thee, the good Will I bear thee, thou couldest never have chofen to good a one as this, for notwirl flarding the Letter I confidently drank of the Phylick, and believe thee as truly z alous to vindicate thy own Truth and Fidelity as to restore my Health, and therewith gave him, his hand, yet af erwards when the Medicine began to work, it was such in Operation that it seemed to verifie, Parmenio his accusation, for the fainted oft, and had much

labour to draw his Breath; then Philip left nothing un-

endeavoured

d

d

e y

ft

.

e e

e

.

e

. y II.

1,

e

pd

h

11

1

S

0

e,

ndeavoured or undone that might serve for his purpose; he laid warm Cloaths to his Body, and lways as he fainted revived him again with Scents of Perfomes and Cordials: And when he perceived him once come to himself, he ceased not to divert him fometimes, by puting him in remembrance of his Mother and Sifters, and fometimes of the great Victory fo near approaching.

When the Power of the Phylick once entred into his Veins, there appeared ftraight in all parts of his Body manifeft rokens of Health : First quickness came to the Spirits, and afterwards the Body recovered his frength a great deal Cooner than all Mens Expectations. For after the third day that he had been in this fad condition he walked in the fight of his Soldiers, who wonderfully rejoyced to fee him; and they the wed no less affection to Philip, whom every one severally Embraced and gave him thanks, as if he had been a God. It cannot be expressed, besides that Natural Veneration that Macedons use to bear to their Prince, in what Reverence they especially had to Alexander, and how fervently they loved him, they had conceived of him an Opinion, that he could enterprize nothing, but that it was furthered by the Divine affistance, and fortune was so favourable to him, that his very Rashnets it se'f was an Augmen. ta im of his Glory, his Age being fearcely ripe, and yet sufficient for so great Archievements, did marvellously illustrate all his Actions, and many things which out of the Wars would be counted lightness, were most acceprable to the Souldiers, as the exercifing of his Body amongst them, his Appa rel not differing from the common fort with his Courage and forwardness in the Field, which Qualities given him by Nature, and some things belides done of Policy, did ger him both the Love and Reverence of his people. When Darius heard of Alexander's Sickness, he marched towards Euphrates with

b

V

2

t

t

F

P

c

1

t

C

te

ti

d

b

r

fa

0

h

S

B

n

2

t

n

ti

6

F

their

all the haft he could make of in the conveyance of fo innumerable an Army. He made there a Bridge, and in five days passed over it, making all possible speed to enter Cilicia before his Enemy .. And now had Alexander recovered his strength, and was come to a City called Soles, which the Inhabitants yielded to him, and having exacted two hundred Talents: He put a Garrison into the Cattle, and there celebrated Plays and Triumphs, which he had vowed to Esculapius and Minerva, for the recovery of his Health, where being quietly given to his Sport, he shewed how much he confermed the coming of his Enemies ; Whilest Alexander was thus bufied, he received pleasant News how his Men won a Battel against the Persans at Malicarnafus, and that the Miridians and Cannians, with divers other Nations in those parts were brought under his Obedience.

These Sports being once ended, he removed his Camp, and by a Bridge made over the River Pyramus. he came to the City of Malon, and from thence with a. nother Motion to a Town called Castabulum. There Parmenio returned to the King, who had been fent to fearth the Streights that lay in their passage to the City of Ifum : He had prevented the Perfians at that Pass, and fo leaving a small party for the defence thereof, he possessed himself of the City of Isum, deserted by the Enemy. departed from thence & drove the Persians out of the Moun. tains, fearching and clearing all the ways; fo that having made all things fure for the Army to pass, he returned again, both the Author of the Act and the Reporter of the thing done. Alexander Encamped within the Cityof Isum, and there debated in Councel, whether it were better to pals on further, or elfe to tarry there for additional ftrength and supplyes expected from Macedon. Parmenie was of Opinion that this place was most fafe to attend Darius in, and to give him Battel, where both the Ar. mys should be of like force, by reason of the Streights . wherein no great multitude can fight at once. He shew. ed reason why they ought to eschew the Plains wherein

11.

in-

10 to

ter

ed

12-

OD

ri-1,

į.

he

u.

1

he

in

is

,

1.

.

h

of

ò

d

e

.

. f

f

.

1

their Enemies should have great advantage, through their great Number, wherein they might close them a. bout ; not that he feared so much the Assault of their E. nemy, as that their cwn men might be overcome with weariness, where a multitude should fight with a few . and fresh men fill succeed in the place of them that fainred. This Counsel was Embraced, and Alexander de. termined in the same place to expect his Enemies.

There was in the Hoft of the Macedons one Sylenes & Perfian formerly fent by the Governour of Agypt to King Philip, who being advanced with reward and promotions chose to live out of his own Country, and so following Alexander into Afia, was efteemed among those in whom the King repoled trust and confidence. A Cretan Souldier delivered him a Letter from Nabarzanes, Darius Leiutenant, in which he exhorted him to do some signal enterprife, whereby he might win favour and reputation with Darius, Sysenes innocent of any such design, was divers times about to present this Letter to the King, but feeing him taken up with weighty affairs in preparation for the Battel, and waiting longer for some more favourable opportunity, he brought himfelf in suspirion of Treason, for the Letter was brought to the King's hands before it was delivered him, who reading it, Sealed it up again with a strange Seal, and cansed it to be delivered to Sysenes, to prove thereby his Fidelity. But because he concealed the thing in any days, and had not in all this time addrest himself to the King, it apappeared that he consented thereunto, and therefore by the Kings Commandment he was put to Death by the Hands of the Grecians.

The Greek Souldiers which Thymondas had received of Pharnabasus, being those that Darius trusted most, were now come to him. They perswaded much Darius to retire back into the Plains of Mefopotamia, and if that Counsel were not acceptable, that at the least he should divide his Power and not commit the whole Force of his

Empire to one Broke of Fortune.

This

BOOK III.

B

te

21

G

fe

21

AH

C

p

br hi

cl

21

b

b. Se

This Counsel was not so displeasant to the King as to Tome others about him, for they faid Mercinary Sou'diess were always inclined to Treason, and were so much more to be doubted, in that they Counselled the Divifion of the Army which was for no other purpole, but only that they might have opportunity to fly to Alexander, when any favourable opportunity should be offered fire fuch a Revolt. There is nothing therefore more fafe for us, (continued they) then to inclose the treacherous Authors of this pernitious Counsel with our Army . and to cut them in pieces for an Example to the World, that Treason may never be left unrevenged. But Darius who was of a meek and good disposition, refused to commir so cruel an A&. in flaying them that had betaken themselves to his Tru?. For he said if we should defile our hands with their Blood, what strange Nation would ever then commit themselves into our Hands? and alledged that there ought no Man to lofe his Life for giving foolifhCounfel, for who would then be fo bold to give Counsel if in Counselling there should be any Peril. I call you quoth he to Counsel daily, and hear the diverficy of your Opinions, and mistrust not them that give menot always the best Counsel, he cau'ed the Greeks to be answered that he gave them thanks for their good Will, but in returning back, he faid he should give up his Country into his Enemies Hands which was not convenient: And confidering the Force that Fame is of in War, in going back (he alledged) he should appear to A, but to defer the fight he thought it worft of all, feeing fo great an Army as he had (the Winter then ap. proaching) could not be victualed in a defolate Country that had been wasted, both by themselves and by their Enemies. And for the dividing of his Forces, he she wed that he could not consent to it, as thinking him. felfabliged to follow the Example of his Predecessours, who was not wont to hazard the Battel but with all their Power.

He

5

0

He declared that Alexander before his coming seemed terrible to the World, and hitherto through the absence and slow approach of his Enemy, was pufft up with vain Glory and Presumption. But after he saw him come forwards, he became wary and well advised, hiding himself in the Streights of the Mountains, like those Coward Beasts, that hearing the Noise of the Passengers, shrowd themselves in Caves and Dens of the Woods: He had deluded his Souldiers (quoth he) with his Counterfeit Sickness, but now I will not suffer him to prolong the Fight any longer, which if he will resule, I will oppress him in his Coverts and lurking Holes.

Thele words he spoke with greater Oftentation than Truth & Cent his Treasure & Jewelswith a finall convey to Damafeus in Syria, and entred with his Army into Calicia, bringing with him according to his Country manner, both his Mother, his Wife, his little Son and Daughter. It fo chanced that on the same Night Alexander was come to the Streight entering into Syria Darius came to the place called Pyla Amanica; the Perfirms net doubting at all bet that the Macedons would have forfiken the City of Ham . and flie away for fear: For certain of them that were infirm or wounded, and so could not follow the A my were taken, whom Darius through infligation of the great Men about him, raging with Barberous Cruelty, caused their hands to be cut off and to be led about his Cemp, to the intent they might behold the Multitude of bis Aimy : And after fufficient view raken he let them go, bidding them declare to Alexander what they had feen. Darius removed and paff d the River of Pyramus, purpoling to pursue after the Macedons, which he thought had heen flying a way. They who had their Hands cut off came running in among the Macedons, informing that Darius was advancing in great haft and fury. There was scarcely any credence given to their words, but to be more certain of it, Alexander sent Spies towards the Sea Coafts, to know whether Darius were there in Perfon with the wole gross of his Forces, or else they were only

vh ooi

ler

re

we

vea

bt

ut

let

12

he

abo

od

hus

an

and

inc

only some parts off, or the Vantiurun of the Army; the Spies returning. advertised that his whole Army was a hand, and straight way the fires might be seen, which gave such a show by reason they lay straighing so far a broad to get forage. as though the whole Country had been on fire.

When Alexander was afcertained of the Truth, he En camped in the fame place where the tidings came to him being marvelloufly glad, because he knew he should fight; especially in the Streights, being the thing heal ways defired. But as it is commonly feen when dange and extremity are at hand, that even the greatest of con Adence is under some doubtful Apprehensions, so no he doubted not without great cause that fortune might change upon him, by whole favour he had done for great Afts; and confidered her mutability by what fi had taken from others and given to him. He faw then was now no proregation of the time, and that there we now but one Night before the last refult of this great De cifion. On the other fide he called to remembrance the the Monour of the Victory, was a reward that far exceed ded the adventure, and as it was doubtful whether h should overcome or no, to he was certain if overcome n die with Honour and perpetual Glory. When he ha weighed thefe things, he gave Order that the Souldier should refresh themselves, and at the third Watch be An med in a readiness to advance. He himself went up in to the Top of a Mountain with many Lights and Torch es about him, where he offered Sacrifice to the Gods at ter his Country manner, and when the hour was come he appointed the Souldiers at the third found of th Trumpet to be in a readiness both for the March and th Battel. Exhartation was given them to pass on wit Courage and Confidence; and by the break of day the were come to the Streights, wherein their purpole wa to prevent Darius: by that time fuch as were fent befor to fcour the Country, came in and reported that the Pa fans were within thirty furlongs, hereupon he ordere hem to make a ftand, and having put on his own Arms

the hem to make a fland, and having put on his own Arms he fer them in Battel Array.

As Alexander was informed of Darius, fo was Darius of Alexander by the Peafants of the Country, who came fear-inly running to him, declaring that Alexander was at As Alexander was informed of Darius, fo was Darius of ully running to him, declaring that Alexander was at En in al. and. These words were not believed, for they could or think them to be coming, whom they thought before be fled; but when they perceived that it was so in-leed, because they were in better order to pursue their Enemies then to Encounter them in Battel, they were truck with a marvellous fudden fear, every Man work ion lon gh G G G im to his Armour in hafte, and the calling that one nade upon another did greatly amaze them: Some ran o the Tops of the Hills to view the Macedons, others fell o Bridling their Horfes; fo that the Hoft full of diversiy, and not ruled by any certain Government in this hury burly, put all things out of order. Darius at first had ppointed one part of his Power torake the Mountains, tho feeting upon his Enemies Backs, might inclose them both behind and before, and affigned another Company o passalong the Sea-side which was on the right hand, o keep his Enemies doing on every part. He gave orer also that twenty thousand Footmen with a Band of rchers, should pass the River of Pyramus, that ran beween both Armys, and give an onset that way; but if too week to make an opposition, he ordered them to retire inthe behaviors, and invade their Enemies on their Backs: ut Fortune which was of greater force than any Policy etermined all things that were well devised, according she thought good, for some durft not for fear, execute he thing that was commanded them, and then the reft aboured in vain, for where the Members fail, the whole ody is confounded. The Order of Darius's Army food nus Arranged to fight; his power was divided into two lattels, one marching on the left hand, the other on he right. Nabarganes impaled the Rassol hus Arranged to fight; his power was divided into two and with a great power of Horlemen, and thirty thouind Slingers and Archers. Thymondas was also in the

P

co

B

ne

C

W

15

te

A

ir

n

H

b

B

u

1

Battel with thirty thousand Mercinary Greeks, being really Darius's chiefest Force, a Power equal to the Phalans of the Macedons. In the Battel on the left hand, Arifteme. nes was in the fore Front with thirty thousand Frontmen planted for his succour and releif. Such Nations as were counted most valiant. There were about the King, being also in the Battel three thousand choice Horsemen, that were of the ordinary Guard of his Person, and form thousand Footmen, with the Horsemen of Hircania and Media, and the Horfeman of other Nations were Wings on both fides. And befides these Numbers there went before his Bartel in a Forlorn Hope, fix thousand Sling. ers and cafters of Daris. All the plain Ground between the Streights was filled with Men of War. Darius's Battel stood thus Arranged from the Mountain down to the Sea fide. The Mother and Wife of Darius, with also the Women, were received into the middest of the Batta lia.

Alexander on the other side, ser his square Battel of Footmen, called the Phalanx, being the Macedons chief. eft Force. In the fore Front Nicanor the Son of Tarmenia was Captain of the Battel on the right hand, and with him Cenos and Perdicas, Meleager, Ptolomeus and Amintas, every one a Colonel of his own Regiment. Parmento and Craterus had the Condud of the Ba tel on the left hand, which firetched rowards the S:a, bur Craterus was commanded to obey Parmenio. The Horsemen were ser in Wings to both those Barrels. The Macedon and Theffilian Horsemen being appointed to the right hand Bitrel, and the Horsemen of Peleponesus to the Battel on the other fide : Before which Buttel, there were alfo f t Stingers with Archers intermingled, and the Eretians that were lightly Armed, advanced before the main Battel. The Band of Agrians that were lately come out of Grecce, were affigned to Encounter with those that Darius had fet to take the Top of the Mountains. He order'd Parmenie, that as much as might be, he should stretch out his Forces towards the Sea, and withdram as far as he could

71

ze.

en

re

ng

at

ty

od

15

nt g.

11

t-

he

3

of

· [.

710

th

5,

d,

n.

in

211

d

15

1.

at

e,

d

r-

ut

ld

could from the Hills which the Enemies had taken:
But such as had direction by Darius to take the Hills,
neither durst resist such as came against them, not yet
compass about such as were passed by them, but sled away at the first sight of the Slingers, which fortunately succeeded for Alexander, for the only thing he doubred most was, that they from the higher Ground,
should invade the open side of his Fattel which lay unstanked towards them. The Macedons Marched thirty
in a Rank (for the straightness of the Ground would
not suffer them to move in a broader Body,) but by
little and little, as the Plain between the Mountains
began to enlarge, so they had liberty to make their
Battels broader, and also for the Horsemen to march

upon the fides.

When both the Battels were come in fight of each other, the Persians first gave a terrible & rude shout, which was again doubled by the Macedons, not with their Number which was far interiour to the Persians; but with therebound of the Hills and the Rocks which doubled every Voice of theirs. Alexander rid up and down before the Fron s of his Battels, making a fign to his Souldiers with his hand, that they sould not make too much haftero joyn with their Enemies, nor bring themselves out of Breath, and as he went by, he used to every Nation fundry Exhortations (vitable to their divers difpositions and qualities. He pur the Mared rs in remembrance of their Ancient Courage, and the Number of Bittels that they had won in Europe. That they were come this her by his Conduct, not only to fut due Afia, but the uttermost bounds of the orient. He rold them they were the people ordained to pass the Bounds of Mercules and Bacchus, and Subdue not Perfia alone, but the whole World. He declared that both Bactria & India should be theirs, in respect of which the Countrys they had yet feen were but Trifles, and thefe were fo begotten all with one Victory. Their Travel he faid . hould not now be in vain, as it was in the Barren Rocks

d

d

ł

h

I

4

6

T

t

f

ì

to

1

tì

th

hi

Po

th

th

W

h

So bo

p

p

W

of Miria, or in the Mountains of Thrace, but in the Conquests the spoil of the whole orient was offered in them: For the getting whereof, they should scarce need to handle their Swords, fince the Battels of their Ene mies wavered to already, for fear that with their ap proach only they had almost put them to flight He recalled his Father Philip to their memory, how he Conquered the Athenians with the Country of Boetis. how he razed to the Ground the Noble City of Thebes He mide rehearfal to them of the Battel won at the Ri ver of Granick, and of all the Cities that he had taken or that had been yielded to him, with the Country they had passed through, and now subjected by the Ma sedonian Arms. When he addreft himfelf to the Gree's, he defired them to call to mind the great Wars that had been made against their Country in times past by the Persians, first by the Pride of Xerxes, and after by Da rius, who made destruction both by Sea and Land, in fuch fort that the Rivers could not ferve them for drink nor the Earth furnish them with Victuals for Food. recounted also, how the Temples of their Gods were laid in Ruins and Athes, their Ciries overthrown, and all Truces broken, which ought to be confirm'd bort by Divine and Humane Laws. When he paffed by the Illirians and Thracians, which were accustomed always to Theft and Spoil, he invited them to behold their Enemies which gliftered with Gold, and bear no Ar mour but Spoil for them to take: He encouraged them to go forwards like Men, and pluck the Prey from those Effeminate Women, and to make exchange for their own Native Craggy Rocks and Barren Mountains, covered only with continual Snow for the plentiful Grounds and Lands of Perfia.

By this time both Armys were advanced within the throw of their Darts, and Darius's Horsemen gaves fierce Charge upon the left hand Battel of the Massedons for Darius's defire was, to try the Battel by the strength of his Cavalry, rightly judging that the chiefest pow-

in the parties of

n

ry:

s,

he

10 k

He

rt nd

och

be

Lys eu

À.

20

ofe

WE

ed

nd

the

eı

ms, sth

Daries

er of his Enemies confifted in their fquare Battel of Footmen, and now also the right Wing of Alexanders began to be incompast, which Alexander perceiving, to prevent his being inclosed round, he commanded two Bodys of Horse to keep the Top of the Hill, and brought all the reft to encounter with the Enemy. Having then deawn the The Salian Horsemen where they food to fight. he commanded their Captain to bring them about behind the Battels, and there to joyn with Parmenie , to perform with Courage what farther Commands they hould receive. By this time the Phalanx of the Mace. done in manner inclosed about with their Enemies fought gallantly on all parts, but they flood fo thick and were so joyned one to another, that they wanted room to weild their Weapons; they were fo min 2led. that in casting their Darts they hindred one another . few lighting on their Enemies, and the most pare falling on the Ground without Execution, and being forced to joyn hand to hand, they valiantly used the Sword. Then there was great effution of Blood, for both the Armys closed fo near that their Harnels clashed together, Weapon against Weapon, and foined at one anothers Faces with their Swords. There was no place for the Fearful or the Coward to fly back, but each fet his Foot to the other, and by fighting kept fill their place till they could make their way by force, preffing forwards only by the overthrow of their Enemies. they were wearied and travelled thus with fighting , they were received with fresh Enemies, and such as were wounded could not depart out of the Battel, as it had been seen elsewhere; their Enemies affailed them To fiercely before, and their own party thrust on to hard behind. Alexander that day performed not only the part of a Captain, but adventured himfelf as far as any private Souldier, covering by all means to kill Darius. which he excemed the greatest honour.

t

ij

to

1

f

1

ì

n

0

b

b

H

C

1

tl

C

C

A

V

W

C

n

E

1

E

C

i

(

t

0

b

1

-

t

Darius rode alofe upon his Chariot, giving great provocarions, both for his Enemies to affail him, and for his own Mento defend him. As oxatres his Brother appeared most remarkable amongst them alt, in his fur niture and personage, so in Courage and Affection to wards the King, he exceeded all the reft, especially in that case of Necessity, for when Alexander approached near, he thrust in before Darius's Charior with the Band of Horsemen which he commanded, and overshrow. ing divers, he put many more to flight; but the Mate. dons attending their King, enlivened and heartened on by murnafly encouraging one another, charged again under the Conduct of their General, upon the Band of Horsemen, then the Slanghter was great, and the Face of Ruin and Overthre w began to look terrible About the Charior of Darius the Noblest of his Cap tains lay dying honourably in the fight of their Prince for just as they received their Deaths Wounds, fo they fell honourably withour turning their Backs Amongh them , Atices , Romithres , and Sabaces, Governours of Egypt, having the Charge of great Numbers of Men were overthrown and flin, and about them there lay by heaps, a huge Number of the vulgar fort, both Horse men and Foormen : Of the Macedons also some were flain, especially such as pressed most forward; amous whom, the right Shoulder of Alexander was lightly hun with a Sword. In this thr na, the Horses that drive Dirius's Cha jor were thrust in with Pikes, and grow ing ourraginus with the Sense of Pain, began to struggle and overthrow their Mafter. He fearing therefore to be taken alive, leaved from the Chariot and was fel upon a led Horse and fled away , casting his Diaden from his Head, and Robe from his Shoulders, to render him unknown, and conceal the flight of their King Then the reft of his Army were dispersed by fear, and fling by fuch ways as were open for them, they threw away their Armour, which before they had taken for t hell ro

for

her

ur

to-

10

bed

the

w.

ice.

no

ind

the

ole,

p-

ce,

ley

glt

of

hy

ſe'

ere

)ilg

urt

1

W.

ug.

ort

(et

em

der

ng.

nd

ew

for

hei

their defence. Of such a Nature is Fear, that it refuseth

the thing that should be its safeguard.

When Parmenio faw them flie, he ftraight commanded the Horsemen to pursue them, and put all his Enemies to flight that were on that part : But on the other hand . the Perfians put the Theffalian Horsemen to great Distress, for at the first shock, they had broaken one of their Troops: Nevertheless they wheeled about, and rallying themselves, they charged again the Persians, with so much Courage that they foon broak their Order, and overthrew them with a great Slaughter. The The Talians had herein a great advantage, by reason that the Persians belides that they are Armed themselves, have their Horses also barbed with Plates of Steel, which was the cause they could not on the Charge, or on the Retreat, be to quick as the Thefalians were; for the Thefalians by their celerity, wherein the force of Horsemen chiefly confifted, had overthrown many of them before they could turn their Horses about . When Alexander underflood that his Men prevailed on their Enemies on that Wing, likewise, he adventured to follow the Chase, which he durst not do before he knew the Battel to be clearly won, and the Enemies repelled on all sides.

Alexander had nor abour him above a thousand Horsemen, with whom he slew many thousands of his Enemies: For who is he that in an overthrow or Chase can number Men. Those sew Macedons drove the multitude of their Enemies before them like Sheep, and the same Fear that caused them to slie, stayed them likewise in their flying. The Grecians that were on Darius's side, under Captain Amintas (who formerly had been in great Authority with Alexander, though now against him) broke out from the rest, and marched away in Order of Battel; but the Persians sled divers ways; some directly towards Persia, and some by unfrequented ways escaped by the Mountains and Woods. A few there were that recovered their former Camp, but that the victorious Macedons were already Masters of, being intirely won, and which they

A

H

0

ú

W

ir

t

t

Co

W

w

n

CE

B

in

W

in

C

L

th

fe

b

Ы

fu

P

th

1

be

W

it

found abounding with Gold and Silver, and most Rid Moveables, appertaining not only to the Wars, but ferving even to all Voluptuousness and Excess, which Riches, whilft the Souldiers violently spoiled, the ftrowed the ways full of meaner Packs and Fardels, which their avarice despised in their Ransack for spoils greater value: But when they came to the Women, a their Habiliments were more precious, so the more vielently they riffled them. Their Bodies also were no free from their Lust and Inforcement. The whole Camp was every where filled with Tumult, Cries, an Lamentation in this general Face of Ruin: The licent oulnels of the Victors was fuch, that their cruelty rage upon all Ages and Creatures, and no kind of mischie was wanting amongst them : There might have bee feen the variableness of Fortune; when they which has prepared Darius's Pavillion, furnish'd and adorned with all that Riches and Magnificence, did now referve and keepit for Alexander, as for their old Mafter, for the Macedons had left that mispoiled according to their and ent Custom, which are ever wont to receive their King when victorious into the King's Pavillion that he had vanquished; but the Mother and Wife of Darius the there were taken Pilioners, had drawn the Eyes an Thoughts of all Men upon them as no vulgar Objed the first appearing so truely worthy of universal Ken rence, both for her Majettie and her Age ; and the oth no less for the excellencie of her Beauty, which through her misfortunes was nothing stained, she was for Embracing her little Son in her Arms, not yet of it Age of fix years, Born as an Inheritour to the Domis on which his Father had loft : There lay also two you Virgins in his Grandmothers Lap, even then Man geable, who Languished and Lamented, not so high rouch'd with their own, as with their Grandmothers a flidion. About the Mother and the Wife, were a gre Company of Noble Women, that tore their Hair, a rent their Cloaths, without respect of their former State Gra

ich

icy

id

Ore

no

ole

and

nti

ged

ie

20

ha

vid

and

th

ng

120

th

an

ea

eve

the

ug

in

Grandeur, and unmindful of the Calamitie, which Darius's Wife and his Mother were now fallen into, called them fill by the Name of Queens, with fuch other Titles of Honour as they did before. They all forgetting their own misery, were diligent to enquire the Fortune of the Field, and what success the Battel had in which Darins was in person; for if he were alive, they could in no wife think themselves Prisoners, but he by the changeing of many Horses, was by that time fled far away.

There were flain of the Persian Army, one hundred thousand Footmen, and ten thousand Horsemen, and of Alexander's Company only fifty four hurt, and thirty two Footmen , and fifteen hundred Horsemen Killed ;

fo great a Victory was gotten with fo finall a lofs.

Alexander that was wearied with pursuing of Darius, when he perceived the Night to draw on, and that there was no hope to overtake him whom he followed, returned into the Persian Camp, which a little before his coming was taken by his Men. That Night he made a Banquet to fuch of his Friends as he was accustomed to invite; for the hurt on his Shoulder, whereof the Skin was but smally perish'd, did not hinder him from keeping company: As they fat at Meat, they heard a pitiful Crie from the next Tent, with a ftrange Howling and Lamentation, that put them all in great fear, infomuch, that they who kept Guard about the King's Pavilion, fearing it to be the beginning of some greater Tumult, began to Arm themselves.

The Wife and Mother of Darius, with the other Noble Women newly taken Priloners, were cause of this RIA suddain fear, by lamenting of Darius, whom they sup-OU poled flain, which suspirion they conceived by one of an the Eunuches, who standing before the Tent Door, saw gh a Souldier carrying the Robe of Darins, which a little 5 2 before he had thrown away ro facilitate his escape. gre When Alexander understood their Errour, he Wept (as it was faid) to consider Darius's misfortune, and the itel Womens affection rowards him; and for their comfort ira

(

8

ì

11

3

1

C

1

h

t

h

n

fent to them one Mithrenes, that betrayed Sardis, who was expert in the Perfian Tongue; but yet confidering that the fight of him being a Traitor, should but increase their forrow : He fent a Noble Man called Leens tus to undeceive them, and affare them that Darius was alive. He came towards the Tent where the Women were, with certain Men in Arms, and fent word before that he was fent thither by the King; but when fuchas flood at the Tent Door, faw armed Men approaching, fuppoling their Errand had been to murther their Mi freffes, they ran into the place where they were, and cried out that their last hour was come, for the Men were ar hand that were fent to Kill them. The Servann therefore that neither durst let Leonatus in, nor keep him our, brought no answer, but silently waited the pleasure and will of the Conqueror. When Leonatus had long tarried at the Door, and faw none come forth to call him in, he left his men without, and entred among ft the La dies, whose approach before he was admitted, was the thing that frighted them most of all. The Mother therefore and Wife of Darius fell down at his Feet, re quiring him, that before they were flain, he would foll fer them to Burie Darius, after the Rices and Custom of their Country, which last observance performed, the were content (they faid) gladly to fuffer Death. Leons tus affored them that both Darius was alive, and that there was no harm meant towards them, but they should remain in the same Eftare they were in before. Sifygambis heard those words, the fuffered her felf to be lifted up from the Ground, and to receive some comfort The next day Alexander with great diligence Buried the Bodies of fuch of his men as could be found, and order ed the like to be done to the Noble men of the Persians giving liberry to Darius's Mother, to Burie as many a the pleased after the Custom of her Country : She per formed the same to a few that were the nearest of he Kin, according to the ability of her present Fortune for if the thould have used the Perfian l'omp, therein the Macedo

Macedons might have envied it, who thought the Consperours were less Ceremonial in the Burial of their own.

When these Rites were performed to the Dead, Alex-

: 714was nen ore,

111

ho

ing

in-

h as ng, Mi and ere nts

nim ure ong La the

her re inf. of hey ins.

hat uld hen be the ler

25 er lie

th

de

ns 10

ander fignified to the Women Prisoners, that he himself would come to vifit them, and causing such as came with him to tarry without; he only with Ephestion entred in amongst them. This Ephestion of all men, was most dear to Alexander, being brought up as his Companion from his youth, his highest Confident in all his greatest Secrets. There was none that had fuch liberty to Ipeak his mind plainly to the King as he had, which he used after fuch fort, that he feemed to do it by no Authority.

but by Sufferance, and as he was of the fame Age with Alexander, so in personage he did somewhat excel him, wherefore the Women thinking Ephestion to be the King, fell down and paid him Homage (as their Country manner was to do Kings) till fuch time as one of the Eunuchs that was taken Prisoner, thewed them which of them was Alexander, then Sifygambis fell down

at his Feet, requiring pardon for her ignorance, as having never feen him before. The King took her up by the hand, and faid, Mother you are not deceived, for this is Alexander also: Which humility and continencie of mind if he had coorinually observed to his latter days, he might have been thought much more happy than he was, when he having subdued all Afia, from the Hellespont to the Ocean, did counterfeit the Triumphs of Bacchus, or if that amongst the rest of his Conquests, he would have

laboured to conquer his Pride and his Wrath, being Vices in him invincible; or if in his Drunkenness he would nor have abstained from the slaughter of his Nobility, and have put to Death those excellent Men of War without Judgment, which helped him to conquer so many Nati. one. But the beginning of his Forrune had not made

that alteration in his Nature, to which afterwards the height of his success and Victories transported him; for now he behaved himself so moderately that he exceeded

be

he

ch

th

WL

an

he

W

th

th

th

fe

to

3

tr

h

n

N

li

ti

b

N

h

1

8

1

-

1

3

1

8

in Continence and Compassion, all the Kings that had been before his time. He entertained the two Queens, with those Virgins that were of excellent Beautie, so reverently as if they had been his Sisters. He not only abstained from violation of Darius's Wise, which in Beautie excelled all the Women of her time, but also took great Care and Diligence, that no body else should offer any dishonour to her, and to all the Women he Commanded their Ornaments, Apparel and Jewels to be restored, so that they wanted nothing of the Magnificence of their former Estate, saving only the assure Considence that Creatures want in Misery.

Which Treatment confidered by Sifiganibis, the faid to the King, Sir, Your goodnels towards us does deferm that we flould make the fame Prayer for you that we did sometime for Darius; and we perceive you worth to furpals fo great a King, as he was in Felicity and good Fortune, who fo abound in Justice and Clemencie. You youchfafe to call me by the Name of Mother and Queen, but I confess my felf to be your handmaid For I both conceive the greatness of my past Fortune, and feel that I can bear the present servitude : It lies only in your hands how we shall be dealt withall, and whether you will make us the Objects of your Clemencie or Cruelty; the King comforted them all he might, and willing them to be of good Chear, took Darius's Son in his Arms, at which the Child was nothing affraid, having never feen him before, but took and Embraced him about the Neck. He was so moved with the constancie of the Child, that he beheld Ephestion, and said Oh! that Da rius had some part of this gentle Disposition.

Then departing from their Tent, he caused three Altan to be made upon the Bank of the River Piramus, and there sacrificed to Jupiter, Hercules and Minerva, and so went forwards into Siria: He sent Parmenio before into Damascus, where Darius's Treasure did remain, who under flanding by the way that Darius had sent one of his No bles thirher, fearing that for the smallness of his own Num

ber

18,

G

nly in

160

old

he to

ni.

red

id

FVC W

hy

nd

n.

er

1

e,

ies

nd

cie

nd

in

ng

he

4.

Irs

nd

Co

to

0.

m

er

ber: the Inhabitants of Damascus would keep him out . he determined to fend for a greater Power, but by chance one Mardus fell into the hands of the Horsemen that Parmenio had fent before to fcour the Country, who being brought before Parmenio, delivered him the Letters that the Captain of Damafcus had fent to Alexander, and besides their Concents added of himself, that he doubted not, but all Darius's Riches and his Treasure would be delivered to him at his Arrival. Parmenio gave the charge to certain of his Men to secure his person, and then opened the Letters, wherein it was contained, that Alexander in all hafte , should fend one of his Captains thicher with a small Power: Which understanding, he fent Mardus back again to Damascus, with a small Guard to accompany him; but he escaped out of ther hands and came to Damascus before day light. This Accident troubled Parmenio, greatly doubting that his Enemies had laid an Ambuscado for him; and therefore he durst not adventere in any unknown way without a Guide. Notwithstanding, upon the confidence he had in the Felicity of his Prince, he took some Peasants of the Country to conduct him in the way; who the fourth day brought him to the City of Damafeus The Governour whereof, doubting that Credence should not be given to his Letter, presended to mistrust the strength of the Town, and having by break of day, caused Darius's Treasure (which the Persians call Gaza) with the rest of all his precious things to be brought forth of the Town, he made Countenance as it he intended to flie; but in reality under that appearance to betray the Spoil of fomuch Treasure to the Enemie. There were many thoufands of Women and Men that followed, a deplorable Sight to all that faw them, excepting to him, to whole Fidelity they were committed, for him to ingratiate himself to the Enemie, and obtain the greater reward for his Treachery, purpoted to deliver into his hands, a Prey more pretious than all the reft, which was fuch of his Nobility as he had in his Cultody, with the

ne vei

the

en

Sta

ve

in

fus

111

al

all

of

20

fia

L

25

hi

ch

Ci

w

th

B

W

01

tl

b

f

Ŋ

Wives and Children of the great Men that bare Rule un der Darius; and besides the Embassadours of the Cin of Greece, whom Darius had left in his Treacherous hands as in a Fortress, to his thinking, of most security. The Perfians call those (Gargabe) that carry Burthens upon their Shoulders: And these having the can riage of things of most value, when they could not endure the Cold for the Frost and Snow that Suddenly fell, they put upon them the Robes of Gold and Purple, which they carried together with the Mony, there being no Man to hinder them. For the advertity of Daris emboldned even base fort of Men to use a wretched Li-Those kind of Men seemed to Parmenio at the first fight to be no fmall Army , and therefore weighed not the matter lightly, but gave Exhortation to thole that were with him, as though they mould have given him Birrel, and ordered them to pur their Spurs to their Horses and give the Charge. Which being per. ceived by them that bare Burthens, they fled away for fear, and so did the Men of War that were with them, by fuch ways as they best knew. The Governour of Dama feus counterfeiring fuch fear as others feared indeed, was the cause of all this confusion. The Riches of Darius were left unguarded, and lay scattered abroad over all the Fields, with the Mony that was prepared for the pay of so infinite a Number of Souldiers, as also the Apparel of fo many great Men and Noble Women, with Veffels and Bridles of Gold, Pavilions adorned with Regal Magnificence, and Waggons all deferred full of infinite Riches; a thing even forrowful to behold to the very Spoilers themselves, if avarice can be sensible of Compassion. Was it not a pittiful thing to behold the Riches that had been heaped in so great a Number of Years, whileft the State of the Persians stood in that in. credible height of Fortune, one part thereof to be torn with Bushes, and another part funk and trod into the Mire; being so great besides, that the hands of the Spoilers could not suffice for the Spoil. When the Horse. men ur ity

ous

III.

ur.

ar.

en.

ell,

le,

oe.

ius i-

he

ed

le

en

to

r.

or

1,

of

d,

1:

er

16

)-

h

h

of

e

e f

e

en

men had overtaken them that fled, first they sound divers Women carrying their small Children, amongst whom there were sour Virgins, the Daughters of occhusthe Predecessour of Darius, who before had sufficiently suffered under the change of Fortune, when the State was altered from their Fathers Line: But this advertity was much more grievous to them. There was in that Number the Wise of occhus, the Daughter of oxites that wis Danius's Brother, and the Wise of Artahasus, who was the chief house of Persia, with his Son called Illioneus. The Wise and the Son of Pharnabasus were also taken, to whom Darius had Committed the Charge of all the Sea Coasts, and with them the three Daughters of Mentor, the Wise and Son of the Noble Captain Memnon.

There was scarcely any house of the Nobility of Perfa that bore not a share in this days fatality. There was also both Lacedemons and Athenians, that contrary to the League between Alexander and them took Darius's part, as Ariftogeton, Dropides and Eleutherius, Athenians of highest descent and fame : And of the Lacedemonians, the chiefest were Persippus and Onemastorides, with Omais land callierabides. The Sum of the Coined Mony then taken, was two thousand and fixty Tallents, besides thirty thousand Men and seven thousand Beasts that carried Burthens upon their Backs: But the Gods did persecute. with due pnishment the betrayer of such a Treasure, for one whom he had made privy to the marter, pitrying therein the Estate of his Prince, flew the Traytor and brought his Head to Darius, a comfort not unfeafonable, for thereby he was both revenged of his Enemie, and perceived that the Memory to Majesty was not yet wholly removed out of the hearts of his people.

THE

th

K

m

it

ir hi

ni th th

th

fr

V

ne

te

B

hj

C

w

e's

V

D

ir

h

FOURTH BOOK

OF

Quintus Curtius.

Of the Acts of Alexander, King of Macedon.

Arius, who a little before was Lord of so gre an Army, and who came into the Field carrie a loft upon 'his Chariot, more like to Tr umph than to Fight, fled by the places then waste a defert, which he before had filled with his infinite num ber of Men of War. There were but few that follows him, for neither they fled all one way, nor fuch as for lowed could keep pace with him, that to often change Horles, at length he came to unche, where he was rece ved of four thouland Greeks who conducted him to the River of Euphrates, thinking all those Countrys loft, the which by his speed he could not prevent the com ing of Alexander. Parmenie was appointed Governour Syria, which they call Co-Ele, and to be the Keeper the Treasure and Prisoners which he took at Damasu The Syrians could not at the first bear the new Gover ment, because having not as yet sufficiently felt Scourge of Wars; but being speedily subdued they su mitted to Obedience. The Ine of Nardus was yeilded Alexander, whereof Strate was King, that had in subject Ti

an with following

C th

m r

r

fa

en

t

ful

di

ea

OF:

on all the Sea Coafts, with divers of the Island Countrys, who being received into truft, Alexander marched with his Army into the City of Marathon, there he received Letters from Darius that highly enraged him, because they were fo arrogantly written. The special point that moved Alexander, was, that Darius writing himself King, did not vouchlafe to give him that Tirle, but did write rather by way of Commandment than of Request, proffering for the Ransome of his Wife and Children to much Mony as Macedon could receive. For the Government of the Empire(he faid)he pur it to his choice, to try it by the Sword, but if he would be better advised .and he willed him to be content with his own Inheritance, he would joyn in amity with him, and become his Friend, in which point he was ready to enter into . Treaty with him. Alexander wrote an answer to him after this manner. King Alexander to Darius. Darius whose Name thou ownest wrought heretofore great destruction upon the Greeks, inhabiting the Coast of Hellefoont, and upon the Greek Colonies in Jonia, which are Greek Cities, and from thence croffed the Sea with a great Army to make War against Greece and Macedon, and also King Xerxes another of thy Predecessours, came to subdue us with a terrible Army of Barbarians, who though vanquishe in a Batter at Sea., left notwithstanding Mardonius behind him in Greece, to destroy their Cities, and burn their Countrys. It is manifect, belides that Philip my Father was flain by fuch who were corrupted to that parricide by your Mony. You undertake always unjust Wars, and even in your highest progress of Arms, you poorly Roop to the Practice of Circumvention and Treason. 'Tis thou of late who though in the head of fo vast and numerous an Army, didst attempt my Death with the promise of 1000 Talents. I am not therefore the beginner of the Wars, but only do repel fuch injuries as are offered me in doing whereof through the help of the Gods (who favour alway the right.) I have brought the greater part of Afia under my subjecti-

2

2

8

ſ

1

F

1 (

١

r

on: And having overcome thee in Battel by force of arms; there is no cause that I should grant thee any thing because thou hast not me observed towards the Law of Arms; yer if thou will come and submit thy felf, I promise thee that I will deliver both thy Mother, Wife and Chil dren for I both know how to get the Victory, and hown use such as I overcome. But if thou fearest to committe the felf to us, I will give thee fafe Conduct to come freely; a for the rest when thou writest to me, remember that thou writest not only to a King, bur also to him that it

thy King.

He sent this Letter by Thefiptus, and marched from thence into Phenicia, where the City of Biblen was yelld ed up to him, from thence he marched to Bydon, which was a City of great Magnificence, by reason of the An riquity and Renown of the Founders. The fame was fometime under the Dominion of Strato, and Supported by the Power of Darins, who veilding more by the conftraint of the people than of his own inclination, was thought unworthy to Reign there. Alexander made Grant to Eplestion that he should make fuch a one King whem the Sydens thought most worthy of that Honour There were divers Noble young Men in that City that had familiarity with Ephestion, our of which he designed the choice of a Kin , but they refuled his offer, affirming that none might enjoy that Dignity, except he were del cended of the Royal Blood. Exhestion wondered at their Magnanimity in despising what others sought to pur chafe by Sword and Fire, and faid, continue you still in that vertuous mind, who are thefust that understand how much greater it is to dildain tlanto receive a Kingdem Chuse you il erefore such a one of the Blood Royal, that may remember he has at your hands received a Kingdom But when they faw divers gaping for it, whose ambition of a Crown made them daily flatter and follicite the great Men near to Alexander; they resolved that then was rone more fit for that Dignity than one Abdolominus, who being of the Antient Blood of the Kings, for Pover BOOK IV. Alexander the Great.

ng of

il.

y to

as

at

i

on ld.

ich

n.

vas

ed

n.

vas

19

11.

ed

1

i

ir

11.

21

11.

5

ŗ.

ty was forced to dwell in a finall Graunge without the City. His Honesty was the cause of his Poverty (as it is to many) and being exercifed in his daily labour . he heard Noise of the Wars that troubled all Asia. The Sidenian Nobles came into his Garden with Royal Robes to invest him whom they found Weeding of his ground. and faluted him as a King, addreffing themfelves in this manner. You must make exchange of the Vileness of your Apparel with these Rich Robes we here present you, wash that Body that is now covered with Swear and Duft, and with the Title affirme the heart of King, and in the Station of a King whereof thou art worthy, referve the same moderation and continency as in thy present State And when as thou shall fit in thy Regal Seat, having in thy hand, the lower of the Life and Death of thy people: Do in no wife forget the Estate thou wert in when thou tooks the Kingdom upon thee, nor yet for what purpose thou didft receive ir. All this feemed to Abdolominus like a Dream, who asked them if they where mad, that would mock him after that manner. But when he heard them affirm by Oaths, the intended Honour to be in earnest, he washed himself,

and received the Robes which were of Purple and Gold, and was conducted by them into the Palace.

The Fame of his advancement to the Crown (as usually in Accidents so extraordinary) soon spread through

all the Cities round, whilst some applauded his good Fortune, and others as much dildain it. The Richer fort upbraided his Poverty and base Estate to such as were near about Alexander, who caused the King to send for him, and when he had long beheld his Behaviour, he said, your Personage doth not disagree with the Fame of your Linage, but I desire to know with what Patience you did sustain your Poverty. I would to the

Fame of your Linage, but I defire to know with what Patience you did suffain your Poverty. I would to the Gods (replied he) I could bear my Prosperity and govern a Kingdom with the same mind. These hands then got me all I defired, and having nothing, I lacked

nothing. His words caused Alexander to conceive of him

a marvellous good Opinion, infomuch, that he Commanded not only the Riches and Royal Furniture, appertaining lately to his Predecessour Strate to be given him, but also a great part of his own Rich Spoils late. ly taken from the Persians, adding to his Dominion all

the Country near about that City.

In the mean Season Amintas, who heretofore fled from Alexander to Darius, and now escaped in the last Battel. came to Tripolis with four thousand Greeks, where he embarqued and Sailed to Cyprus, thinking that in the present State of the World, every one might enjoy what he could get and poffess it as his own Inheritance. His defign was to go into Egypt, intending there to be. come an Enemie both to Darius and Alexander, and to comply with every change according as time should ferve, to bring therefore his Souldiers to think well of his Enterprise, he declared how Sabaces Governour of Egypt was flain in the Batrel, and that the Perfians left there in Garrison were but a small Number of little force. and without any Head, he shewed how the Egyptians used to rebel against their Governours, wherefore they were fure to be received as Friends. For Necessity (quoth he) has enforced us to try our new Fortune here, for fince our first hope has been frustrated, we have here a fairer prospect of advantage and success, to repair our past misfortunes. They all agreed with one Voice that he should lead them where he pleased, where. upon to four them on whilft they were high with hopes, he conveyed them to Egypt, and entred the Haven at Pelusium, under pretence that he had been fent thicher When he had got Pelusum, he fer forwards towards Memphis, at the Fame of whose coming, the Egyptians being a light Nation, and more apt to raise a Coil than to maintain it . when it was once began , ran to him out of all their Towns and Villages, with an intent to deftroy all the Perfians, who notwithstanding the fear they were in did not leave the defence of the Country, but fought with the Greeks and were put to flight. Afret

Alexanaer the Great

n.

p.

e.

m

he

16

at

ė.

e.

to ld

of

of

ft

775

16

re

0

le. e.

S,

11

15

le

1

n

1.

le

er

After this Victory Amintas beseiged Memphis, and his Men to destroyed all the Country round, that they lefe nothing unspoiled, whereupon Mazeches, though he perceived his Men under a great consternation from their late overthrow, yet when he faw his Enemies fcattered abroad, and without Order being fulled into fecarity, and transported with the pride of their late Victory, he at length perswaded his Men to iffue out of the City, and in fetting upon their Enemies to recoveragain what was loft. This Advice was no less wife and prudent, than its Event was fortunate: For following his Council, they flew at that time both Amintas and all his Companions. This punishment he suffered for the offence committed to both Princes, being neither faithful to Alexander whom he forfook, nor to Darius to whom he fled. Darius's Captains who escaped from the Battel of Isum, gathering together such Men as were scattered abroad, and such power beside as they could levy in Cappadocia and Paphlagonia, did attempt to recover again the Country of Lydia. Antigonus was Governour for Alexander there, who notwithstanding he had taken many Souldiers out of the Garrison of Alexander yet he so little esteemed his Enemies that he doubted not to adventure the Battel. The Perfians there received the like fortune they did in other places, and attempting the Fight in three feveral Countrys, were vanquish'd in them all.

At the same time the Navy of the Macedons which ALexander had fent for out of Greece, meeting Aristomines, (whom Darius had appointed to make War upon the Coast of Hellefpont) fought and took, or funk all his Ships. Pharnabasus Commander of another Fleet of Darius, haring in his Kings Name, exacted Mony of the Misonians, and put a Garrison in Suos, passed into the Isle of Andos with a hundred Ships, and from thence he failed to Siphnus, and putting Men of War into all the Islands exacted of them Mony. The greatness of the War that was in hand between two of the most puillant Princes

ł

t

66

L

tl

11

d

d

b

h

di

of

th

A

ut

th

ye

Ca

th

Er

Se

th

na

of Asia and Europe in no less hopes than heing Masters of the Universe, drew both Greece and Greet to Arms. Agin the King of Lacedemon, gathered together eight thousand Greeks, that were come home out of Eilicia, and moved War against Antipater that was Governour of Macedonia, the Grecians, following sometimes one part, and sometime another, received one while a Garrison of Macedons, and another while of Lacedemonians amongst them. But those Wars were of no great importance, for all mems Eyes were fixed upon the Wars between Alexander and Darius, as the great Derision of all the inferiour Quarrels of the World.

The Macedons had subdued all Syria, and Phenice, Tyre only exceped, which being the greatest and most famous City of all that Country, shewed that they effec. med themselves rather worthy to join with Alexander as Friends, than to become his Subjects: For when he was come near them and Encamped on the main Land, to which is divided from their City with a small Arm of the Sea; they fent to him by their Embassadours a Crown of Gold for a Present, with great plenty beside of Victuals for his Army. He received their Gifts as from his Friends, and gave curteous answers to their Embaffadours, and told them he was defirous to make Sacrifice to Hercules, whom the Tyrians specially worshiped, and the Macedon Kings affirm themselves to be descended of him, being admonished (as he faid) by an Oracle. Embassadours answered, that there was a Temple of Hercules without their City, which they called Polaetiron , where he might'do Sacrifice at his pleasure. At those words Alexander could not refrain from anger, to which he was much Subject.

I perceive now (quoth he) because ye dwell in an Island, ye trust so much in the Scituation of your City, that you despite my laver power, but I will shortly make you understand that you are Scituated upon the main Land, and therefore rest assured, that if ye receive me

nor in, I will enter into your City by force.

When

gis U-

0.

0.

d

4.

1.

TS

d

.

.

When the Embassadours were dismissed with this answer, such as were near about the King, perswaded them that they should not exclude him, whom all Syria and Phenicia had received: But they had entertained such a confidence, for that their City stood in the Sea, being divided eighty Furlongs from the main Land, that they absolutely determined to stand the Seige.

That Sea of theirs is much subject to the South-West Wind, which at every Storm made the waves beat fo high against the Shore, that it would not fuffer the Ma. cedensto make any work for the uniting of the main Land to the City, it being scarce possible to work any thing there when the waters was most Calin. work that the Macedons began, was presently thrown down with the vehemency of the Seas that were driven by the VVind, nor could they make any Fort to ftrong within the Sea, but that it was washed away and brought down by beating of the VVaves, and when the VVind blew violently the Seas would overflow the work, for by reason that the VValls were environed about with a deep Sea, they could raise no Engine to shoot but a far off our of the Ships; nor was there any Ground about the City whereupon Ladders might have been reared a. gainst the VValls, or approach made to them by Land. Alexander had no Ships, and if he had any, and had defigned to bring them to the VValls, yet by reason of the unstableness of the water, they might with Shot easily have been kept off. But amongst many other things, the Tyrians were wonderfully encouraged by the coming of the Embassadours sent from Carthage to celebrate a yearly Sacrifice; for the Tyrians being the Builders of Cart hage, where ever fince that time, had inveneration of them as their Parents and and first Founders. These Embaffadours exhorted them in any wife to continue the Seige, and promised them shortly, and which thing they alledged might casiely and soon be done, for so much as at that time, all the Seas were full of Carthagi. nan Ships: Upon this Encouragement they determined to

BOOK II

p

2

t

V

S

le

P

e

h

tl

n

d

t

.

i

0

N

t

h

6

4

t

1

U

100

i

6

(

1

Materials

abide the extremity, and placed their Engines upon the Towers and Walls, dividing the management of them a mongst the Youth of the City. The Artificers, where the City had great plenty, were divided into work houses, to make all things as were necessary for the Wars: There were devised certain Instruments where with they might pull down the works that their Ene mies had made, called Harpagons, and also Crows of I. ron named Corvi, with all other things that might bein vented for the defence of the City; but a ftrange thing is reported, that when the Iron was put in the Forge and blown in the Fire the fame was feen to be full of ftreaks of Blood; which wonder the Tyrians interpreted ass token of good Fortune towards themselves, and as a fignification of Deftruction towards their Enemie. A like wonder was feen among the Macedons; for when a Souldier was breaking of his Bread, he observed drops of Blood to fall from it, whereat Alexander being afto nisht, Arifander the most cunning of all the Divinen, made answer, if the Blood had appeared outwardly then it had fignified Evil Fortune to the Macedons, but in as much as it was found within, it betokened destruction of the City they deligned to beleige.

Alexander confidering his Navy to be far from him, and that a long Seige should be an impediment to his ather affairs, sent Officers of Arms into the City to persuade them to peace, whom the Tyrians against the Law of Nations Killed, and threw them over their Walls into the Sea. Their unjust Death stirred Alexander so much that he then utterly determined to go forward with the Seige, but before he could make his approach, it was of necessity for him to make a Peer, or Land work, whereby they might pass from the main Land to the City, but in the making thereof, his Souldiers had conceived an utter dispair of accomplishing it, considering the deepness of the Sea which they saw not possible to be filled, scarcely by any Divine Power, for they thought no Stones so great, nor Trees so high, nor any Country able to supply

III BOOK IV. the 18.

col

rk.

the

re.

ne.

I.

in.

ng

ind

ks

14.

ike

ul.

of

to

m,

ly,

in

ION

im,

0. er.

24

nto

th,

the of

by

יום.

ess

ce.

fo ply

als

Materials Sufficient for Building of a Bank in Such a place; confidering the Sea remained always troubled, and the narrower the place was between the City and the Land, so much the greater was the violence of the

Waters: But Alexander who had the Policy to allure his

Souldiers to what effect be pleased, declared that Hercules appeared to him in his Sleep, and gave him his hand, proffering him to be his Captain and his Guide for his entrance into the City, thereunto he added the Killing of his Embassadours, whereby they had violated and broken the Law that all Nations observed, and that there remai-

ned but one City that staid his Victory, whereupon he divided his work among his Captains, commanding

them each to ever look his own Band, and to encourage and four on all helps and hands to expedite the work. There were great plenty of Stones at hand of the Ru-

ins of the old City where Tyre stood before; and for making of Boats and Towers, Timber was brought from Mount Libanus. The work did rife from the bottom of the Sea like a Mountain, but it was not yet brought to the high-water Mark, and the further the Peer was brought from the Land to the Seaward, fo much fooner the Sea did swallow up the Materials whereof the Peer was made. Whilft the Matedons was thus about their work, the Tirians would come about them in small Veffels, and give them words of reproach and scorn, as they were now become goodly Men of War, that would be made Pio. niers, or like so many labouring Beasts., carry Burthens upon their Backs, and they asked them if they thought Alexander to be greater than Neptune. But their reproach did not hinder, but increase the chearfulness of the Soul. diers in their Pain and Travel, infomuch that the work

in a mort space furmounted above the Water, and increafing much in breadth, approached near to the City. Then the Tyrians seeing the Mighty Progress, in the increase whereof, they saw themselves deceived, little thinking that it would have advanced to fuch a perfection, in little Vessels came Rowing about the River, and

fo

BC

rif

thi

de

an

Sv

ul

w:

br

th

kr

ho

do

of

an

th

in

an

So

Y

fa

W

ga

N

Co

W

of

of

E

t!

W

0

OI

fo incommoded the Workmen by their Shot, in which the lightness of their Vessels much affisted them, as be ing able to advance or retire at pleasure, that they gal led and wounded the Macedons, with little or no damage to themselves, & forced them to quit their work, and fall to their own detence. For Remedy whereof to and avoid their Enemies Shot, they were compelled to firetch on Beaft Skins upon Poles like Sails, and fer those between them and their Enemies, and besides, at the head of the Peer, they raised up two Towers , from whence with Shot and caffing of Darts, they kept of the Boats that came about them. On the other fide, the Tyrians would land Men with their Boats far out of the fight of the Camp, and Kill fuch as were carrying of Stones. The Pealant of Arabia, also did set upon certain of the Macedons that were learnered abroad in Mount Libanus, where they flen near 30 and took almost as many Prisoners. That was one cause which moved Alexander to divide his Army, and leafthe might feem to remain idle, by employing his whole time in the Seige of one City, he appointed Perdicas and Craterus to take the charge of the World he had in hand, and marched himself in person in to Arabia, with a feled Body of his Forces. In the mea Seafon, the Tyrians prepared a great Ship Laden with Scones and Gravel behind, to that the fore part floated above the Water, which Ship annointed over with Pitch and Brimstone, they brought suddainly by Sailing and force of Oars to the Peer; and there remaining, the Marriners fer the Ship on Fire, and leapranto the Boat which attended to receive them. The Ship thus fet on t Flame, fo fired the wood work of the Peer, that before any opposition could be made, the Fire had taken the Towers and all the vpper works of the Peer. they who leapt into the Boats, faw the Project take fud Effect, they put betwirt the Timber and other void pla ces, both Fire-Brands and all fuch things as might git and nourishment, increase to the Fire, fo that the Town and all the rest being in a Flame, many of the Macedons p iti

nd

P. ots

y, ng

in an ith ted the

ar-

att

the

nen 1d

ola

rifht in the Fire, and the reft for Gook their Arms, and threw themselves into theSea. The Tyrians that were more defirous to take them alive, then to Kill them with Staves and Stones, did so bear them on the Hands as they were swiming, that for weariness they were glad to be taken up into their Bosts. The Towers were not confumed with Fire only; for it chanced also the same day, a terrible Wind to rife, which blowing from the Sea. brought the Waves with Such violence upon the Peer. that with often beating of the Seas, the Joynts that knit the work together began to loofe, and to leave their hold: Then the Water that washed through, broke down the whole Work in the midft, fo that the heaps of Stones which were before fustained by the Timber and Earth cast betwixt them, being broke a sunder, the whole Work fell into Ruin, and were carried away into the Deep.

By that time, Alexander was returned out of Arabia . and scarcely found any remainder or token, though of fo predigious a Work. In this miscarriage (as it is ever nfed in things that fall our unhappily) one laid the fault upon another, when indeed the violence of the Sea was the cause of all. Alexander began to make the Peer again after a new manner; the head thereof lying into the Weather & the Wind, & not the open fide as it did before. to that the fore Front alway defended the rest of the Work lying behind; he increased also the breadth thereof to the intent the Towers might be builded in the midft of the Peer, whereby they should be less subject to the Enemies Shot, whole Trees were put into the Sea with tleir Tops and Branches, and after great Stones were thrown upon them, and over those a new course of Stones and Trees, and Stones again, by which device the whole Work was joyned and fastned all in one.

As the Macedons were bufily employed in advancing this work, so the Tyrians were as diligent in all inventions and projections, as might give impediment to their Proceedings; the chief practice was for a great Number of them to enter into the Sea Coafts a far off, out of the Macedons fight, and so come diving under Water till ther come to the Peer, where with Hooks they would put the Branches of the Trees which appeared out of the Stones, and the other substance followed after in the Deep, for the Trees being discharged of their Burthen were easily drawn away, and then the Foundation failing. the whole work that flaid upon the Trees fell to ruin, Amongst these impediments, Alexander stood in great perplexity of Mind, doubting whether he should continue or raise the Seige. When he was in this imagination, fuddainly his Navy arrived to Cyprus, and Cleander all with his Souldiers which he had brought out of Greece, and leaving to the Number of 180 Ships, he divided them into two Squadrons, whereof he committed the one to Pithagoras, the King of Coprus, and to Craterus, and rook charge of the other himself, committing his own person to a Gally called Cinquereme, which had five Oan on a fide. The Tyrians durft not adventure the Sea- fight. although they had a great Navy, but fet all their Galley in Front before the Walls of the City, which the King affailed and pur to diftress. The next day the Maerdon with their Ships invironed the City round about, and beat down the Walls with their Engines and battering Rams: But the Tyrians Areight way enforced and made up their Walls with Stones that lay at hand, and raised up an inward Wall round about the City, which might be their defence if the other failed ; but their deftruction ap. proached on every fide. The work was new wrought within the cast of a Darr, and the Ships gave the approach round about the Walls, fo that they were invironed and affailed both by Sea and Land. The Macedons had contrived to joyn their Galleys two and two together, in fuch fort that the fore parts met close before, and the hinder

hind iopi Bric end Wh

BO

for Ster ftoe wit of I wa

SVI Var fea wi

rec lit W Vi 1

de th th to p I fi

f fo fi b f

d

m

rs

1:

ir

n.

it

p.

ch

nd

ġ.

in

he

er

hinder part lay far off one from another, and over the squares remaining betwixt Poop and Poop, they made Bridges with Mafts, and Main yards laid betwixt Galley and Galley fast bound together, to carry Souldiers upon. When they had putrtheir Galleys in this order, they fee forwards towards the City, and having rampired the Sterns for defence of the Souldiers that were behind, they food in their Galleys and caft Shot against their Enemies. without any Peril or Danger to themselves. The Sterns of their Veffels being their Breaft work and Covert. It was Midnight when they had Commandment to fet forwards and encompass the City. As the Ships were advancing on all paris, and the Tyrians stood attonish for fear and desperation ; behold the Skye was overwhelmed with dim Clouds, and all the light of Heaven was obscue red by a suddain darkness. Then the Sea by little and little grew terrible and rough, the Wind blew, raising the Waves, which did beat the Ships one against another, the violence whereof burft a funder the Bandsand Grafpers. wherewith the Galleys were fastened together, which done, the Bridges crashed and flew a funder, and with the Souldiers that frood upon them fell into the Sea : there was great confusion, for the Ships entangled thus together, could by no means be Governed in fuch a Tem. pet. The Souldiers difturbing the bufiness of the Marriners, and the Marriners giving impediment to the Office of the Souldiers. Thus as it doth often happen in such a case, the Expert were obedient to the Ignorant : for the Ship Mafters that were accustomed to Command; for fear of Death were directed by others, but at length by force of Rowing the Galleys recovered the Shore, the greater part of them being much hatter'd and torn. It chanced ar the same time, that thirty Embassadours came from Carthage to Tyre, who gave more comfort than afiflance to them that were beseiged; for they declared how their Mafters the Carthaginians had their hands fo full of Wars at home, in defence of their own Territories . that they were utterly unable to lend them any fuccour; infomuch

or

an R

ftr

M

in

np

mi

en

no

to

th

th

th

ag

ca di

ob

an

fic

Ve

ty

the

W

P4 0

infomuch that the Syracusans were destroying Africa with Fire and Sword, and had Encamped themselves under the very Walls of Carthage. The Tyrians however had not then hearts wholy dejected; though disappointed of their greatest Hope, but delivered to those Embassadours their Wives and their Children to carry to Carthage, thinking to continue the Seige with greatest resolution, when the nearest and dearest part of themselves should be secured

from danger.

There was a Tyrian, who in an open Affembly, declared that Apollo had appeared to him in his fleep, and declared to him that he had forfaken the City, and trans formed the Work the Masedons had made into a great VVood, Hereupon, though the Author were of a fmall Credit, yet as Men in fear, are apt to believe the work they tyed Apollo's Image with a Golden Chain, and bound faft also the Altar of Hercules (to whom the City was dedicated) thinking by detaining of the one to keep fak the other. The Carshaginians in times paft, had brough that Image from Siracuse, and had placed it in the head City, out of the which they were descended: For their Custome was to adorn Tire with fuch Spoils as they had taken, no less than they did carthage it felf. They u hat time, would also have been Authors to the Tirians, lo he renewing of an old Sacrifice omitted for many year, nd undoubtedly very little acceptable to the Gods, therein they used to offer up to Saturn a free Born Child thich being rather a Sacriledge than a Sacrifice; the arthaginians received from the Founders, and fill ob erved the fame, till they were destroyed : And had no heAncient Men by whom all things were governed with tood it, this wicked Superfition had taken place, which Jature and Humanity does abhor. The necessity that as hanging over their Heads, being more effectual that by Art er Science, inftructed them not only to practic l'accustomed ways for defence, but also to find on what was never invented before; for to the diffurband the Ships which approacht the VValls, they deviled long ad as

one Rafters, to which they fastened Grapples of Iron, and great Hooks like Sythes, which let down with Ropes by an Engine. did either tear the Ships or de-stroyed the Men. They invented also Targets of Mertal to be made Fire hor, in which they put burning Sand and scalding Lime, and then poured the same upon the Macedons that came near to the Walls, being a mischief that they feared most of all other, the hot Sand entred between the Armour and the Body ; there was no means to avoid it, and where it touched it burned to the Bones, to that they were forced to throw away their Harness, and tear away all things they had upon their Bodys, whereby they became subject to be hurt by their Enemies, and were not in cafe to endamage them again : But especially the Graplers that were let down. called Corvi, took violently away many of the Souldiers that were within the Ships. Alexander feeing the obstinate defence of the Tyrians, was weary of the Seige. the ad and determined to raife it, and to go to Egypt, for confidering in how short a space he subdued Afia, it grieeit ved him to be detained to long about the Walls of one at for ars, ds, ild, the Ciry, whereby he omitted the occasion and opportuniw of greater Conquests. But he was as much ashamed to depart without archeiving his defigns, as to continue there and leave other things undone : Judging that if he should thus quietly rife up from before Tyre, as a Wirnels that he might be withftood, it fould much im. pair his Fame , by which he had gotten more than by ob. lorce: And therefore to leave nothing, he order'd the fitting up of more Ships and more Forces to manage hich them Befides, it chanced at that time, a Monfter of an that exceeding bigness did appear, as well in the fight of the that Tyrians as the Macedons, which lying upon his back above the Water, came towards the Feer and when he had lifted up himself at the head of the Peer, he divert under Water again, and sometimes appearing above Water, lops

and sometimes hiding himself underneath. When he came near to the Walls of the City, he shot under water and vanisht.

BOOK IV.

ï

The light of this Monfter rejoyced both parties, the Macedonians interpreting his appearance as fent them for 2 Guide in their directions to finish the Work, and the Tyrians divining, that Neptune in revenging the ulurpan on that the Macedonshad made upon the Sea, would show ly deftrey the work they had made, in such like for as he had taken away the Monfter. They upon the own imagination conceived fuch a gladness, and progne fligated to themselves such good Fortune, that they h to Banqueting and Drinking; and when they were a charged with Wine, at the Sun-rifing they put Garland of Flowers upon their heads, and mounted in Galleys believing this Monfter fent not only as an Omen, but Congratulation of a certain approaching Victory. chanced ar the same time, that Alexander had conveye his Navy to the contrary fide of the City, and left up on the Shoar thirty of the smallest Vessels, of which the Tyrians took two, and put the rest into some fear an diforder: Until fuch time as the King hearing the Alam fer forwards with his Navy towards that part when the cry came; the first Galley of the Macedons that cam near them was a Cinquereme, the swiftest of all the rel which when the Tyrians espied, they came against he with two Galleys cross upon her fide, whereof one fru at her full with her Stern, with whom the Cinquest grapled, and the other which was loofe and at liberty fell upon her on the contrary fide; but left betwee them two the might fustain some damage, one of Ala anders Triremes came to the rescue with such violence, the the Mafter of the loofe Galley was fruck into the Se when the Tyriaus faw that Alexander was come himself and more of his Ships at hand, with strength of Oa and great industry, they fer their Galleys that were'd tangled loofe again & at liberry making towards the Haw

me

and

the

for

the

ari

orifon

heir

nofel

all

ys; at t

yed upthe and annend annreft her red eres

See

Oal

e d

law

Haven with all the hafte they could. Alexander imediately purfued them; but when he came to the Haven . he could not enter, but was beaten of with thot from the Walls, yer he took and lunk most part of their Galleys. After this Adventure he rested his Souldiers two days . and then Commanded his Ships to be brought forward. and the Engines in them, to the intent that by affiulting the Tyrians on all fides, he might put them into an extream fear. Alexander with a great and undaunted Courage, nor without as great peril of his person, mounted up into the Top of a Tower that was made in a Ship. and there known by his Apparel and Rich Armour, was himself almost the only mark of the Enemies shot. He performed many glorious Actions with his own hand . for with his Lance he flew divers that tought on the Walls, and afterward he fought hand to hand with his Sword and Target, throwing divers down from their defence, For the Tower wherein he fought towned close to the Walls.

By that time the Battering Rams having thrown down the Walls, the Navy was got within Haven, and certain of the Macedons had won the Enemies Tower. The Tyrians then oppressed with so many miseries at once, were utterly discommed; some fled unto the Temples for fuccour; some shur their doors, taking that kind of death they liked best, and others ran upon their Enemies to fell their lives at the dearest Rate: But the most part got up unto the Tops of their houses, and from thence caft down upon their Enemies whatfoever came to their bands. Alexand er commanded all to be flain without exception, faving such as fled into the Temples, and ordered all the houses to be fer on Fire. Though Procla. mation thereof was made through the City, yet the Trians that bore Arms could not fave themselves : For as the Women and Children filled the Temple, fo the Men kept the Entries of their houses, ready to abide the cru. E 2 elty

B

1

A

rii

H

fr

10

E

rì

di

h

B

et

tl

to

81

A

h

m

M

Ol

8

N

th

fo

elty of their Enemies. Yet the Sydonians were the occasion that many were faved, who ferving the Macedons in this Expedition, and entring the City with the Conque rours, were mindful of their affinity with the Tyrians, (Agenor being the Builder of both their Cities) and conveyed many into their Ships which they privately fem into Syden, by that means fifteen thousand escaped the eruelty of the Sword; the number of them that were flain may parrly be conjectured, in that there were found dead in the City fix thouland of such as bore Arms. The King's Anger and implacable Revenge against the, City had occasioned so dismal a Slaughter, as became a Spell acle of Horrour even to the Conquerours themselves ; for 2000 whom the fury of the flaughter had left alive, were hanged upon Croffes all along the Sea Coafts. The Embassadours of the Carthaginians were saved, but War was threatned to be made against them, from the which he was then only hindred by other more urgent bufiness that turned his Force elfewhere.

Thus Tyre was taken the feventh Month after it was beleiged, a City as memorable to Posterity for the Antiquity, as the feveral changes it had fuffered. founded by Agenor, and many years was Mistress of the Seas, not only thereabours, but in all places where their Navys were heard of, and if we may credit fame this City was the first that taught or learned Letters. Builded Cities, Planted Colonies, throughout the greatest part of the World, as Carthage in Africk, The besin Boetia, and Cades in Spain upon the Ocean. It is believed that by reason of their free Course through all Seas, and by vifiring many strange Countrys, they had occation to feek new Sears, in which to place their Youth, wherewith they then abounded, or as some report, the Inhabitants unwilling to dwell there, by reason of many Earth-quakes, were compelled by force of Arms, to feek our nem Habitations. But when many Gafualties had

V

Cł.

s in

11e-

onent

he

nd he

a.

re

n-

25

had happened to Tyre, after this destruction being reflored to its former Glory & Prosperity, it now remains eth under the Protection of the Roman Clemency. About the same rime Alexander received Letters from Darius, wherein at last he was contented to name him King.

His Request was, that Alexander would receive his Daughter Statera for his Wife, with whom he offered in do. wer, all the Countrys between Hellef pont., and the River Malys referving only to himfelf, fuch Kingdoms as lay from thence-Eastward, and if peradventure he should refuse to receive his offer, he willed him to confider that Fortune is not wont to continue long in one Effare, and that the greater Felicity Menenjoy, the greater Envy doth attend them. It was to be doubted (he faid) left he exalted himfelf through some vain affection, like as Birds use to do, whose natural lightness doth convey them to the Stars : For there was nothing more difficult than in such young years, to bear well the height and greatness of Fortune. He wish'd him also to confider that there remained yer many Countrys that he had nor touched, and that he should not meet him always in the Streights, having to pass the River of Euphrates, Tygre, draxes, and Hydaspes, which were as Bull-works unto his Dominion, and when he should come to enter the Plains . he would be ashamed of his small number. He put him in remembrance how long it should be ere he could pass Media, Hircania, Ballria, and the Indians that were bordered on the Ocean Sea, and likewife the Sogdians and Archofians afwhom Men have no other knowlede than of their Names only; with other Nations lying towards Mount Caucafus and the River of Tanais and although no Man fould withstand him or give him Battel, yer he should grow in Age (he faid) before he could pass fo many Lands. In the conclusion he advised him not to call him forward too haftily, for he flould come foon enough for his destruction.

E 3

wett

Atexander made answer to those Letters by the Messen gers that brought them to this effect.

That Darius offered to him that which was none of his own, and made proffer to give that which he had already loft. For Lidia, Jonia, Molidia, and the Coaft of Helle front which he offered in dower, were already become the rewards of his Victory; and as for Laws and Condin. ons, those were wont to be given, and appointed by the Victors, and received of foch as were overcome, and if he were ignorant in which of these two Effates he were that he foold adventure the Battel once again, for he very well knew, he faid, before he paffed the Sea , how Lidia and cilicia were over small rewards for making of fuch a War: But his determination was to Subdue and bring under his Subjection both Persepolis, the chief City d his Empire, and Battia and Echatana, with the utrermof Bounds of the Orient. He could flie no where but he was able to follow; and therefore Counfelled him that he should not fright him with Rivers, who had learn'd how to pass Seas. Thus the Kings wrote one to another, and in the mean Season the Rhodians yielded their City and Haven to Alexander, who committed the Rule of Cilian toS crates, and the Country about Tyre to Philotas. Andra machus was made Par nenio's Deputy in Caria, and Catifa ria for Alexander refolved to accomplish what he had begun, commanded Ephestion, that with his Navy be should fail along the Coasts of benicia, and so he arrived with his whole power at Gaza: About the fame time there were folemn Triumphs and Plays at Ifthmus, accu. fromed to be celebrared by the co. fluence of all Green In this a Countel was had, and as the Wits of the Greek are Suddain, they decreed to fend twelve Embaffadoun to Alexander to prefent him with a Crown of Gold, in Grarulation of the Victory he had won, and the Acts he had done for the fafeguard and liberties of Greece, and yet a little before, they harkened how the Fame went, and

len.

his

ldy

ent

the

iti.

the dif

re,

he

OW

of

ind

7 d

of

VES

he

WO

nd

nd

cia

70.

6

ad

he

ed ne

D.

e:

b

in he

te

were ready to bend that way Fortune inclined. Alexander vilited not in person all such Countrys and Cities as refused to pay Obedience to him, but made Conquest of them by his Deputies: For Calès mastered Paphlagonia, Antigonus Liconia, and Balachrus overcome Idarne, who was Darius's Leiuetenant, and won Miletum, Amphiterus and Egilachus, with a Navy of 100 and 60 Ships subdued all the Islands between Asia and Athaia, and also by the Consent of the Inhabitants, got Tenedos.

They were just upon gaining of Scios, but Pharnabafi; Darius's Deputy having Intelligence of it, did first appre hend all such as were of the Macedon Faction, and com. mirred the Ciry with a small Garrison to Apclonides and Athenagoras that were inclined to the Persians. Alexan. der's Captains nevertheless continued the Seige of the City, not fo much in confidence of their own frength. as in hope of the Faction they had within the City, in which they were not deceived; for through a Sedition which arose between Apolonides, and the Captains of the Men of War, occasion was ministred to the Mace. den to enter the Town; when the Gate was broken up, and a Band of Macedons entred then the Citizens which before had privately resolved to betray the Town rook part with Amphiterus and Egilocus, fo that the Garrison of the Perfiaus were flain and Pharnaba fus with Apolouides and Athenagoras taken Priloners.

There was twelve Galleys taken, with their Souldiers and Rowers, belides thirty Ships and Vessels of Pyrates, with three thousand Greeks that were in Pay under the Persians, the Gree's serving to recruite the Macedons, and the Pyrates being put to Death, the other Ships were

added to their own Fleer.

It chanced that Ariftonicus the usurper of Methyna, enorant of all that had happened in the fore part of the Night came early by break of day with certain Pyrate Ships to enter into the Haven; of whom when

E4

re

ve

á

th

Vi

Pe

15

A

tu

Al

di

ti.

lit

ed

A

ca

th

ha

di

ni

b

St

Ca

ha

W

m

01

the Warch demanded what he was, he faid he was reflections, and came to the fuecour of Pharnabalus. The answered he was then at reft, and could not be spoke within, but as being his Friend, and Allye, he might enrer into the Haven for that Night, and might have full access to him at a more seasonable hour of the day, Arift nicus was the first that entred, and the ten Pyram Ships followed him but whillt they anchored the Ships the Watchmen drew the Chain again over the He ven, and then called up fuch as lay near about them, whereupon none of them ducht relift, but were all taken Prisoners, and delivered to Amphiterus and Egilocus From thence the Macedons paffed to Mytelene, which was kept by chires of Athens, with a Garrison of two thosfand Perfans, not being able to endure the Seige, he yielded up the Giry, on composition to have their Lives la ved, and to depart to Imbras. Darins despairing of Peace, which he thought to have obtained by his Letters and Embassadours, bent his whole mind and Study to raise a new Army, and once more renew the War.

Therefore he commanded the Caprains and Rulers of his Men to have a Randevouz at Babylon, and that Befu Governour of the Balfrians should come thirher with all the Power he could make. The Ballrians are the most hardy people amongst those Nations, rough Men and much abhorring the Effeminacy of the Persians, for by reason that the y Border on the Sothians, which is a warlike Nation, they are accustomed to live by Spoil, and are conversant and continually in Arms But Beffus who was suspected of Treason affecting the Kingdom, and who would not be content to be the fecond in power, put Darius in great jealoufies, who having fome intima. tion that he aspired to be King, feared his Treason, Befus having no other way but that to accomplish his defigns. Alexander wrought all the ways he could to obtain knowledge where Darius was, and into what Country he was gone, and yet could not get any Intelligence, by reason 4 en was a- 1-

of i-

reason of a custome among the Persians, who with a marvellous Fidelity keep close their Princes & creis, for the errering whereof, neither fear of Death, nor hope of rewant can extort one word from them. This was an ancient discipline which the Kings there used amongst their Subjects, in punishing with the loss of Life, the la. vifinels of the Tongue, as being reputed amongst the Persians the most Capital Crime they could commit. Nor is there in those parts any virtue or principle of hone-Av expected at that Mans hands who has not the gift of Secrefie, that of all Duries is much the eafieft, that Na. ture has taught us to perform. This was the cause that Alexander was ignorant of all things that his Enemies did, and therefore continued the Seige before Gaza. Be, tis was Captain there, who was a Man of fingular Fidelity towards his Prince, with a small Garrison defended the City that was of a large Compais: Wherefore Alexander observing the advantage of the Scituation caused many Mines to be made ; for the lightness of the Ground not only facilitated but concealed the defign, having neither Rocks nor Stones to give him any impediment. They began their Mines on that fide where they within could not behold them; and to avoid the Sufpition of any fuch work in hand, he caused an approach to be made to the walls, with Towers that he had made with Timber, but the Ground would not ferve for their carriage and removing by reason of the looseness of the Sand, whereinto the Wheels funk, and was the cause of the Joynts of the Towers brake a funder. About the carrying of them many were hurt and much trouble they had both in withdrawing of them, and fetting them forwards. When he perceived he could not prevail by that means, he drew off his Men for that time; but the next day he invironed the City round about to give an affault on every part at once, and before he returned out of his Camp he made Sacrifices after his Country manner, re-E.s. quiring

ī

-

quiring the affiliance of the Gods. It chanced as he was To doing, that a Raven Bying by, let fall a clod which the carried in her Tallons upon the Kings Head, when ir brake in pieces, and the Raven flew to the next Tow. er where her Feathers were to intangled with Pirch. that the could not flye away, but was taken by the Cen. rinels. This was thought a matter worthy a Confultation on of the Diviners, himself not being a little addicted in Superfixion in Accidents of this kind. Therefore Ariffe. derito whom he gave most credit, interpreted it to porend the defruction of the City, bur yer there was for Peril that threatned the person of the King, for which cause he perswaded Alexander that he should not go about any Exercise that day, though it grieved him much, the one Ciry should be a stop and impediment to him for his free passage into Egypt: Yet he obeyed the Progno flicators, and caused all his Men for that day to rein The Enemies took Courage at this their retreat, image ning fear to be the cause why they came not forward, and iffuing out of their Gares, they fer upon the Ren, but they were more fierce in the beginning of the Shi milh than confrant in the maintaining of it; for who they faw the Mated as face about, they flayed and pur fued no further: Alexander hearing the Alarm, and quite forgetting the danger that was Prophecied to him ar his Friends request pur on his Arms, which he was feldome accostomed to do, and reforted thither, when the Engagement was most hor. There he was known by a certain Arabian that was one of Darius's Souldiers, whi rook upon him a desperare enterprise to kill Alexannite and therefore making his pretence to approach him as Deferter from the Perfians, kept his Sword secret under neath his Target, and fell down on his Knees before him who judging that he had fled to him for fuccour, com manded that he mould be received amongst his own Mel Bur the Arebian therewithal made a violent thrust arth Ming with his Sword, which he steping aside a little, void

735 kh

ere

.

A,

n.

in.

to

'n.

01-

TRE to

tBC

hat

for

70. ire,

121 rd.

ar.

kn.

m.

end im.

11'25

ent

vho

er:

5 1

er.

int

10

元 あ 古

voided it from his Throat, and cut off the Arabians hand that miffed the blow, not at all doubting but in this deliverance he had escaped the threatned Peril of that day. But (as I think) deatiny cannot be avoided; for whilft he was eager in Fight amongst the formost, he was shot with an Arrow which paffed quite through his Couffer & fruek in his Shoulder. Philip his Physician pluckt it out, and a great abundance of Blood did follow, whereof every Man was affraid, forafmuch as they never faw an Arrow pass so far through any Armour before. But he never changed Countenance nor Colour, but caufing the Blood to be stenched and his Wound to be wraped up . continued ftill in the Skirmich amongst the formost, either suffering or diffembling his Pain. But when the Blood that was thenched for a time broke out again, and the Wound which whilft new and fresh grieved him but little came now to fwell and rankle as the Blood waxed cold. then he began to faint, and his Feet to fail him, infomuch that those about him were forced to carry him into his Tent. Belis that perceived this, and supposed him to be flain resired to the City with great joy and Triumph. Bur Alexanders Wound being yer unhealed, he caused a Mount to be cast up as high as the Walls, and the Walls to be cast down in divers places by the Miners.

They within made a Counter-work as high as the old Wall, but it did not reach to the height of the Towers made upon the Mount, fo that the inner parts of the City were obnoxious, but the worst and final misfortune of the City, was by a breach made in the Wall by one of the Miners, for the Macedonians entred and the Town was loft, through which Alexander leading them on, and preffing furious in the head of all his men, lat his Leg hurt with a Score Norwithstanding that he mounted up by the help of his Wespos (his former Wound yer unclosed) and fought a nong the formo t, being not a little enraged that in the Seige of one City, he had received two

Wounds. Betis that had fought gallantly and received

divers

BOOK IV

h

1

1

ł

0

1

ŧ

1

divers hurts, was forlaken of his own Men, not withfranding which, he fill fought on till his Armour was all o. ver stained both with his own and his Enemies Blood But when he was inclosed round, Alexander, who some times used to admire the verrue of his Enemies, yet being now puffed up with an infolent joy, faid to him, I. tis thou halt not die as thou defireft, but whatfoever Totments may be invented, believe that thou halt luffer them For all which Menaces, there appeared in Betis no token of fear, but he beheld the King with an undaunted Courage, diffaining to answer him one word. Wher upon Alexan der replyed, See you not how obstinate he continues, he will neither kneel nor ask Mercy; but Groans shall break his Silence if nothing elfe can do it. Thus his Fortune did alter his Nature, and turned his Wrath into Fury For he cuafing Cords to be put through Betis Feet, whileft he was alive, and tyed behind a Chariot, h dragged him about the City with Horses, glorying in that he imitated Achilles (of whom he was descended) in the like affliction of his Enemy. There were flain of the Perfans and Arabians ren thouland, and the victory was nor unbloody to the Macedons. This Seige was not fo famous through the Nobility of the City, as it was by the double danger the King was in, who making haft to pall into Egypt, fent Amintas with ten Galleys into Macedin w levy more Sou'diers: For though he were always a Conquerour, yet his Men were Diminisht, and he trusted no to much to the Souldiers of those Country's he had subdued, as he did to his own Nation; the Egyptians being a people that always were offended with the increase of the good Fortune of the Persians; who in their Government over them used much Pride and Covetousness, at tended the approach of Alexander, with no small impatience and farisfaction having formerly fo kindly receive ved Amintas, who came more like a Fugitive than a Conquerour, whereupon a great multitude affembled at In lu fum

IV.

tan-10.

ood.

me.

be.

Be.

or.

emi

n of

ge,

dh.

he

eak

me

ry:

h

in 1)

of

35 à.

fi

ot a

lufumito congratulate his Entrance, which they supposed he would make there

The leventh day after he rembyed to Gara, he came to the place which is now called Alexander's Camp, from whence he fent his Army to Pelufium by the Land way, and he himself with a choice Band of Men were conveyed thirher upon the River of Nile. The Perfians durft por fland his coming, being in doube the Egyptians would tevolt, and therefore when Alexander drew near to Mem. phis, Affaces the Governour, and Darius Leinerenaut crof. lang the River to meer him, yielded up the City and de. livered him eight Hundred Talents, with all the Riches be onging to the King of Perfia. From Memphis he palled up the River into the inward parts of Egypt, and to or. dered the Government of the Country, that he changed nothing of their Laws and Custom, which having Effeeled, he had a great delire to vifit the Oracle of Jupiter Hammon. Bur it was declared to him that it was not possible for him to march with any great number, the Country he had to travel through being spread all over with Barren Sands, which being heared with the Sun, burn their Feet in fuch a fort, that it should be intollerable for them to Travel, not only with the hear and want of Water, which neither Earth nor Heaven would in that place supply them with, but also with the Rowhing Sand which was to deep, and would to fink under their feet, that they should not easily flir. All which difficulties the Egyptians fet forth, to be greater then truly they were . But Alexander for the vehement defire he had to exceed the Condition of Morrals, was fo fervently bear to visiciliar famous Oracle of Jupiter, whom either he believed or defired the World Mould believe, to be his Father, that nothing could withhold him in performing of this Enterprise. Therefore with fuch as he had to accompany him in the fourthey, he passed by water upon the Nile till he came to the Marth of Meetis. The Embaffadours of the Cyrenians came to him thither ,

and

0

1

and brought him Prefents, fuing for Peace, and Conting him to enter their Cities, who n he gently entertain ed, affuring them of his Friendship, which done he went foreward in his Journey. The first and second daw Travel feemed tollerable, not being yet come to the barren and desolate Wilderness; and yet the Ground they passed on was but unfruitful and barren Earth But when the Plains appeared that were covered over with deep Sands, they then looked round about then and fought for Land, as men are accustomed to do when they Sail upon the main Sea; for they could not judge themselves on Land, where they neither faw Tree, nor any appearance of Habitation, or haunt of Men; and there was no Water found in that dry and burning place; and what they had brought with them in Bortles on Car mels Backs, was confumed and fpent; belides the Sm was fo hot that it dried and burned up all things. While they continued in this diffres; whether it were by the Will of the Gods, or by chance, the Clouds Suddain's overwhelmed the Skie, and fo fladowed rhem, that i was a great Comfort to fuch as were wearied with hear though they wanted Water to drink; but to supply their need, prefently fell a great Shower, which every Man for the great defire he had to drink, gaped to receive wirh open Mouth. When four days Travel was fpent in these wild Deferts, and they drew near to the place of the Oracle, there appeared a great Iwarm of Crows fig. ing low before them, and when the Army marched fofly they lighted upon the Ground, and sometimes fliw forwards, as it they had been Guides to shew them the way. At length they came to the place confecrate in Jupiter, where it was a wonder to fee in the midft of fo valtand difmal a Solitude, a Ground to invironed on all parrs with high Trees defending the heat of the Sun, and fuch a number of Springs running every where, which canfed the Woods al ways to look Green. The Air all Seafons of the year like to the Spring time, whole font Our

ain.

, h:

lavi

the

DAU irth

over hen

hen

de

not

and ice:

Ca

San

ilit

the

nly

ti

eat.

ıer

fan ive

> 10 of

By.

fi.

°W

the

to Go

31

n,

133

Air

le.

m

Some and temperate. This Country Borders on the Ethies towards the East, and upon the Arabians whom they call Trogt dits on the South; whose Country Arerches to the Red-Seal It confinerh on the West with other Ethiops. which are called Scenites : On the North are people called the No famones, who inhabiting upon a flat Shore, are accustomed to live upon the spoil of the Sea, and lie always in wait upon the Coafts, to fpoil fuch Ships as fuffer Wrack. The people which inhabit about the Wood . are called Ammonians, and dwell in Cottages scattered shroad. The midft of their Wood closed about with a Triple Wall is their Forgress and Castle. In the first Ward is the Pallace of their Antient Kings; in the Second their Wives, Children and Concubines were lodged, in which place the Oracle of Jupiter is alfo, and the third is a place for their Guard and Souldiers.

There is also another Wood, in the midit of which cans a Spring called the Fountain of the Que, which in the Morning is Luke-warm, in the midth of the day cold, and in the Evening warm again; at Midnight fealding hot, and as it draws towards day, it dimnishes its hear to the

former Temper.

The Effigies that is worthiped for Jupiter, has not the Similitude of other Images that Crafts men do make for Gods: for to the Navel it refembles a Ram, and there in the midft is an Emerauld fee about with Pearls: When my answer is required, the Priest carry the same in a Ship of Gold, that hath many Places of Silver hanging on both fides : the Matrons and Virgins follow after finging a strange Song after their Country manner, whereby they dob lieve they oblige Japiter, to make his Oracle pronounce I rath. When Alexander was come to the place the Eldest of the Priests, who came to meet him, salured him in the Name of Jupiter's Song telling him it was the fpecial Command of the God to Stile him for whereupon Alexander forgetting the State of his Mortality , faid that he did both receive and acknowledge the Name. Then he

C

6

11

h

fu

m

(

ha

pi

fa

hi

ha

fu

hi

an

E

of

ke

th

ree

Ci

C

to

Kit

mo

the

ma

Di

ger

to

Nil

wa

OVE

lon

SW

cou

die

he demanded further, if the Empire of the whole world were not appointed him by deftiny, there the Prophe prepared to Flattery, answered that the whole World thould come under his Obedience. After that he deman ded whether all fuch had fuffered Death that had Mus thered his Father. The Priest answered that the Father of Alexander was above the reach or Aroke of Treafon But he faid that all Philips Killers were put to Death And one thing he added more, that he hould be invin cible till fuch time as he mould depart to the Gods Thereupon Alexander made Sacrifice, and offered great Gifts both to the Priefts and to the Gods : He permitted alfo his Friends to ask Counfel of the Oracle in whatever they would demand; yet they enquired no further, but if it were Jupiters Will they should Worthip their King with Divine Honours. To this it was answered, thu if they would honour their Victorious Prince as a God. it should be acceptable to Jupiter. If he had with judg. ment weighed this Oracle, he might have well perceived the untruch and flitterys it had delivered. But those whom Fortune has intirely made her own Voraries. She makes them Comerimes ambitious of their Glorys which they are utterly incapable of receiving. Alexander not only suffered, but commanded himself to be called the Son of Jupiter, and whilft he went about to increase the Fame of his Acts, he corupred and defaced them with fuch Vanity, and the Macedonsaccustomed to be Governed by Kings, but yerreferving a greater show of liber ty than other Nations, did with fand him more obstinates ly in his affectation of immortality, than was either expedient for him or them : But thele things shall be declared in time convenient. I will proceed to declare the reft of his Acts. on further many and I spare and bearing

When Alexander was returned from Ammon, and came to the Marth of Meoris, Scitnate near the Ifle of Pharos, be viewed the Nature of the place, and was at the first determined to Build a City within the Island, but afterwards confidering the Iffind not to be large enough , he

chose

Į,

er

B

S,

1

er

at

g

u

ŀ

ĺŧ

à

10

0

K

.

.

6

chafe out the Ground where Alexandria now fanderh called by the Name of the Founder, containing all that Ground berween the Marsh, and the Sea : The Walls whereof were in Compals eighty Furlongs. When he had taken order for the Building of this City, leaving fuch behind him as he had appointed for the performance thereof, he departed to Memphis, He had a defire (not unreasonable if it had been in time convenient) to have feen both the inner parts of Egypt, and also of Ethiepie, and the affection he had to view Antiquiries and the famous places of Memnon s and Tython, had almost drawn him beyond the Bounds of the Sun : But the Wars he had in hand, being of much more importance than any fuch idle Peregrination, gave him no time to gratifie his fantafie: Therefore he appointed Estilus a Rhodian, and Penceftes a Macedon, to manage the Government of Egypt, affigning them four thousand Souldiers for Defence of the Country, and gave Polymon thirty Galleys to keep the Mouth of Nile: He made Apollonius Ruler of that part of Africa which joyns to Egypt; and Cleomines receiver of the Tributes in both Countrys. This new City was foon replenisht with a great Multitude: For Commandment was given in all Countrys there about . to fend Inhabitants to Alexandria. It is faid that when the King according to the Macedons Cuftom, used the Ceremony of freeping Barley at the railing of the Walls, the Birds came and fed thereon, which being taken by many for an unlucky prelage, it was answered by their Diviners, that there should be great resort of Stran. gers to that City, and that it should give Nourishment to many Lands. As the King went down the River of Nile, Heffor the Son of Parmenio ambitious to follow bim. was drowned, for the Veffel that carried him funk, being over laden with the Croud that filled it. He frived long with the Stream, but his Garments hindred his Swiming, fo that his Breath was near gone before he could recover the Shore, where for want of succour he died, whose unforrunate loss Alexander very much la.

ian

m

W

to

fte

to

-

H

N

tì

1

fo

fe

b

G

h

P

b

1

ľ

1

1

ľ

mented, as beings a person much in his favour, in therefore he caused his Body to be Honourably he ried.

This forrow of Alexander's was much increased, he the Death of Andromachus his Leiuetenant, whom the Samaritans had burned alive ; for the revenge whereof he made all the hafte he could, and at his coming in Samaria, had the Authors of the A& delivered into his hands, whom he put to Death, and then advanced Memor in Andromachus Command, he delivered into the Methin ens hands Aristonicus and Crisolaus who usurped over them whom they after many grievous Torments hang'd our their Walls: That done, he gave audience to the En baffadours of the Athenians, the Rhodians and Chiene The Athenians Congratulated his victories, and requel ed that fuch Greeks as were taken Prifoners might ben fored to Liberty; the Rhodians and Chiences complained their Garrifons. He granted to them all their requel and restored to the Mitelens all their Pledges, increaled their Territories and Dominions, in respect of the Fid lity they had flewed him, and gave him fecurity to the Mony they had expended in the Wars. He gar Honour alfo according to their defervings to the King of Cyprus, who revolted from Darius to him, and his Aided him at the Seige of Tyre. Amphiterus his Adm ral had Commission to drive the Persians out of the of creet, but Specially that he should rid the Sea of Pyrares, who together with the Perfians, intected, and spoiled the Mands which lay Obnoxious to their dale incursions, whilst Darius and himself were bending the Forces against each other.

Having ordered these things he dedicated to Herubat Tyre, a great standing Gobset, and thirty Bowls of Gold. That done, he rurned his whole Thoughts again Darius, causing it to be proclaimed, that every Ma should set forwards towards Euphrates; But Darius under

reol

ing

his

MIL

bini

nem.

Over

Em

KU

ie&

re de

इ के छ से

28

10年

derstanding that his Enemy was gone through Egipt into After frood in donbt whether he foul fray about Mefopo" tamia, or withdraw to the inner parts of his Kingdom; judging that he in person thould prevail with those remore Nations, in bringing of them forwards to the War, which his Leiuetenant should not be so well able weffelt: Yer when Fame had published, and he under. stood by certain Advertisement, that Alexander was re. mmed out of Egypt, and fully refolved to follow him with all his Power into what Country foever he went : He then gave order, that the force of all the remote. Nations should draw towards Babilen, as well knowing the resolution of the Enemy be had to match withal. Thicher reforred both the Battrian, Scythians and Indians, for the Power of other Countrys were come thither before, and having the double number of Men that he had before in Cilicia, he prepared Armour for them with all speed and diligence, of which many of them wanted, both Horlemen and Horses , were Armed with Plates of Sreel, fuch as before had no Weapons but Darts, had Swords and Bucklers given them; to increase the Power of his Horsemen, he delivered many Horse to be managed and broken by the Footmen: He had prepared also two hundred Waggons fer with Hooks, which in those Countrys, are esteemed the Things of great Force, and judged to be of a wonderful Terfour to the Enemie They were made with great long Spikes iffuing out forward, and with Swords fer overthwart on both fides. The Wheels were all full of Iron Pikes, and of great Hooks and Spears both upward and downward, wherewith all things were cut in funder that came in their way. his people were thus furnished with Armour, and provided sufficiently for the Wars, he removed from Babylon, keeping the River Tyris on his Right, and Euphrates, on his Left Hand. He over-spread with his Army all the Plains of Mesopotamia, after that he had

80

im

lor

ber

out

her

ring

pari

0 art ind

hey 11

eve fir fl

for

[en

wei

he

the

n

is ron

oth

the

cal

an Pa

we

ne fir

fa co

to

th

th

BOOK IV had passed the River Tigris, and understanding the his Enemies were approaching, fent Satropaces before with a thousands chosen. Horsemen, and afterwards pointed fix thousand to Magens, to oppose Alexander passage over the River, who was also Commissioned Waste and Burn the Country, where he judged in Enemies should come, thinking to famish them h want of Victuals, confidering that they had no other Provisions, but what they got by plundering and be flealth, they themcelves having plenty brought the of all things, both by Land and the River Tigris; length he came to a Village, called Arbella, after wards made famous by his overthrow. There left his Ammunicion and Baggage, and laid a Bride over the River of Licus, and in five days conveyed over his Army, as he had done before over Euphran passing forwards from thence about fourscore Full longs. He came to another City called Bunado and there Encamped. This Country ferved wonder well, for the arainging of his Battels in the large Plains, paffable for Horses every where, and without Shrubs or fhort Bruft to cover the Ground withal. having to free a profpect, that the Eye might difcen things a great way off. And if there appeared and Hills within the Plain: Darius caufed the fame to be east down, and to be made level to the Ground fuch as by conjecture made report to Alexander of Dari as Power could not be credited, for he could not think after fo many fin there could be a greater Power ga thered together than those he had vanquished before.

But he that doubted not any Peril , much less the Multitude of his Enemies. After the Eleventh Encam ping came to the Kiver of Euphrates, over the which he mide Bridges passing over his Horsemen, and al terwards his Footmen, for Mazens that was fent against 三黎 巨足岩牙丘鸡 京子

I,

ny be

d, it is

2.

he

m.

h,

afi

im

im, with fix thousand Horsemen to hinder his passage, furft not encounter him. When he had continued here a few days, not only to rest his Souldiers out also to confirm their minds, and to encourage hem, he fet forth resolutely against his Enemies, tea. ing that they would have retired back into the inward parts of Persia, where he should have been inforced o follow them, through places long, waste, and deart. Therefore the fourth day he paffed by Arbella. and came to the River of Tigris. All the Country beyond the River was on a Smoak, newly fer on Fire by Mazens, who burned all things where he came, even as he had been an Enemy. Alexander at the fift by reason of the Darkness of the Smoak, flayed for fear of Ambushments. But when they which were lent to scour the Country reported that all things were clear. He appointed a few Horsmen to found he passage of the River, who found the Deepness at the first entry to come to the Horses Breast, and in the midst of the Stream to the Horse Neck. There is no River in all the East part of the World that runs fo violently, which besides that, the Waters of other Rivers do run into it, driverh down Stones with the rapidness of the Stream, being for its Swiftness called Tygris, which in the Perfian Tongue fignifies an Arrow. The Footmen thereof divided into twowere inclosed on both side with the Horsemen, and so passed till they came to the Deep of the Channel without any great difficulty, the King was the first amongst the Footmen that passed over to the farther fide (who with his hand, seeing his Voice could not be heard) shewed the shallow places to the Souldiers; but they had much to do to keep their Footing by reason of the Stones whereupon they stumbled, and of the violence of the Water that took their Feet away. Such as carried Burthens on

BC Ca

be fit

T

chi

w

lai

tw

gi

81

25

ne

N

tì

b

0

V

8

(

1

1

1

-

their Backs had the greatest Travel, nor being it to stay themselves, through the troublesome pome of their Loads, were born down by the violence the Stream. And whilst every Man went about recover his own again, there fell greater strife mongst themselves than they had with the Street and the heaps of Fardels that every where flow upon the Water bare down many of them, the Ki Cried to them it was sufficient to keep their Arm and let the rest go, promising to recompen every Man, but they neither followed his Com nor did as he Commanded them, for besides Noile that was amongst them, fear filled their E as they were Swimming and Wading through t At length where the Stream was mo Shallow, they came forth, there being nothing Mi carried or Wanting amongst them all, saving few fardels. How eafily here might his whole for have been destroyed, had his Enemies had the Con rage to Attempt it. But Alexander's good Form turned his Enemies away from him, which Success to passed the River of Granick, when so many Thos fands of Horlemen and Footmen kept the Paffig against him. Afrer that manner he Overcame the Multitude of his Enemies, in the Streights of Cilia Though his hardiness was still such, that his & rempts had not always been Warrantable, if the Felicity of his Success had not always Answered in the Temerity of his Condud.

If Magens had done his part, and fer upon them, they were passing the River, he might easily have Ron ed them, being Unarmed and our of Order. But a ter the Macedons had Armed themselves (being the to late) he began to thew himself with a Thousan Horsemen. When Alexander perceived the small Nun ber that came against him, be Commanded Arib Captai

able of the second of the seco

Captain of the Peenians, to adventure with his Party. Charge them: The Horsemen that Day bravely behaved themselves, but especially Ariston; who with his Spear ran Sutrepaces the Chief Captain through the Throat, and perfuing him into the midft of his Proop. threw himself from his Horse, and cur off his Head; which to his Great and Infinite Glory he brought and hid at the Feet of the King. Alexander tarried there two Days, and on the Morning caused Notice to be given by Proclamation, for fetting forward: But in the first Warch of the Night, the Moon suffered an Eclipse ; and loofing her brightness, became afterwards as red as Blood, and then waxed Dim and Dark; the ftrangeness of this Sight ftruck a Religious fear amongst the Macedons, whereof proceeded fuch a Doubt and Dread, that they fell into a Murmering why they should be brought forward in such a manner, against the Will of the Gods, to the uttermost Bounds of the Earth. where they could neither pass the River, nor injoy the accustomed Sight of Heaven; finding nothing but waste Grounds and wild Defarts, all which was indured (they faid) for the Ambition of one Man, to whole Vain Glory, the Blood of fo many Thousands should be facrificed. He dispiseth (faid they) his own Country he had forfaken. Philip for his Father in his foolish affecation, Borrows his imaginary Defent from Heaven, infomuch that at last, it was almost become a Sedition. When Alexander, that in all things was withour fear, Commanded the Cheif Rulers and Captains of his Men of War, to affemble at his Pavilion, and there Commanded the Astronomers of the Egyptians whom he judged to have most understanding of the Planets, to declare their Opinions. They uuderstand. ing very well the Revolutions of Time and Motions of the Heavens, and there appointed courfes knew that the Moon was over Eclipsed, when her light was blemished by the Interposition of the Earth, betwixt her and

and the Sun: Which Knowledge they Wifely referred to themselves, keeping the People only in Ignorant But affirm that the Greeks were under the afpect of the Sun. And the Perfians under the Moon, and therefor To often as the Moon failed of her light, it fignifies gree destruction to the Nation, that was under that Confe lation. And to Confirm that Opinion of theirs, the brought in old Presidents of the Kings of Persia, a whom the Eclipse of the Moon had signified, that the Gods were against them in Fighting of their Battely There is nothing more effectual than Superitition, Govern a Multirude; who otherwise are without Rule Tumultuous and Mutuable, but when they have one Conceived a Religion, though it be but Vain, the are more Obedient to their Diviners then to their Cap tain. Which thing might be well perceived when the Answers of the Egyptians were divulged amongst the People, for they fireightway were moved from the Dulness and Despair, and Animated to new Hope and Confidence. The beautiful to the

Aiexander

CONFEED PROGER

H. H. H. P. T. B.

ĸ

dennie therefore, to lay hold of the favourable Minute. rempley his Southers in their good mood in the second removed their Camp, keeping Typris on his right and the Mountains which they call Goadian on his By break of day the Seours that he fent before to difwe the Enemy, brought back invelligence of Derind his will Muzander in their Head matched forwards in order Maitel's but those that were discoverers for the Persians, Thousand Horsemen, who seemed to the Man-South to have been a great Army. The Seouts comonly have that property, that when they cannot find our touch, they imagine through feels things that are falle. then Alexander understood the certainty, he fent nameds with a finall minber of the dwn Plosfometh, as whole comflorers? That done, he fent forch another Party, as well discover farther, as also to diench the fire which the that had made through all the Country; for as they away, they put fire into the Roofs of their Houses, id the Stacks of Com which having only took hold above, if the Stacks of Com which having only took hold above, in the stack of the sta innovilliment of the fire great planty of Corn was dervell and abilitative of all other things enfued amongs Motive which chouraged the that they might burn and confume all fuch things as by could make, providence growing from Necessay for

the was purfied, field away? and left to the Mandons the lefter part into the delivery. It was come within an indirect and fifty in longs, made the part of the within an indirect and fifty in longs, made to the Darius Letters were there intercepted, which he written to the origins, in perfection cube to kill or written to the origins. The doubted whether he should recite the doubted whether he should recite

8

the fame Letters openly or no, having no mistrust their fidelity towards him. But Parmenio disswaded him. from acquainting the Souldiers with any such promise Darius, that his life lying ope to any one hand that dur or commit so execrable a fact, and that Coverousness are the coverousness and that coverousness are the coverousness and the followed Powers and the coverousness are the coverousness the coverousness judged any thing unlawful, he followed Parmenio's confel, and to removed his Camp. As they were marching one of the Eunuchs that attended upon Darius With an brought word how the fainted, and was in great danger. of death, for indeed file was so wearied with comme travel and perturbation of mind, that she fell down in fwound between her Mother-in-law and her young Dank ter, and so died. He had no some reported it. another came with tydings that the was dead indeal whereat Alexander was no less forrowful than if his of Mother had been in the same condition, and weeps in the same condition, and weeps in the Tent where Darius Mother was sitting by the day at body, his forrow there renewed when he faw her hard profrate on the ground, that prefent misfortune calls to mind her part calamities, the took in her Arms De and were the only Remainders of her own. Her young Grand rechild flood in her presence the more to be pitted to cause that for his youth be felt not the calamity deferved that pity. A man would have thought it allegander had wept for his own cause; he lamented a second of the calamity of the lamented of t would receive no comfort, but abflained from me and commanded all Honour to be done to the de off Corps after the Countrey Cuftom of the Persians, we say the was thereby to receive the due reward of land Meekness and Continency. He had only seen her on the before, which was on the day she was taken, and the came not to visit her but Darite's Mother; the excellency of her Beauty was no provocation to him of Lust, but of Glory of those Eunuchs that were about the Queen in there was one Triotes, who during this lamentain by escaped by a Gate that was unwarded, and fled to the Perfin

OOK IV. Alexander the Great .

uh.

le i

Cin

of h

ft, b

infest Camp, where he was by the Watchmen brought Darius's presence; when Darius saw him lamenting earing his cloaths, he was in a labouring expectaon what his forrow should be, doubting the thing of most he seared. Thy Countenance (quota he), degrees that some great Mischiet is happened, take heed on conceal nothing from my milerable Ears. I have With armed to be unfortunate, and it's oftenimes a comfact class of man in his Calamity to know his milhap. Is it not a milhap is it not a milhap is it not a milhap is it not a milhap. man in his Calamity to know his milhap. Is it not a miluting of my Wife and Children that thou wouldit. can be militing of my write and Children that I safect most, which is the thing that I safect most, which is the thing that I safect most, which is the thing that I safe most, which as I believe) is also the transfer and most grievous of their own afflictions. No dealing less (quoth Tyrietes) the same Hoyour that was a suite them by your Subjects and Vassas is now given the calle of my red tief it, your unbappy Duces is just now dead. When do not work was once spoken, there was nothing but later the was nothing but later presented and mourning throughout the Camp, and Daniel could not be otherwise perswaded but that she was as bean, because the would not consent to the injuries and mourning throughout the that she was as bean, because the would not consent to the injuries and the manner that were offered her, informed that between discontinuous content to the injuries and the manner that were offered her, informed that between discontinuous content to the injuries and the manner that were offered her, informed that between discontinuous content to the injuries and the manner that were offered her, informed that between discontinuous content to the injuries and the manner that were offered her, informed that between discontinuous content to the minure of the content to the conten me ame that were offered her, infomuel that between di-

what to great an offence have I committed in the unit thee, whom of thy Kindred have I flato that thou ed a coldiff require me with this cruelty. Thou half done it may thou any provocation of my part. But be it to that thou do not move a just war against me, is it therefore thy part to wo sate war with Women?

Trions thereupon did Swear by the Immortal Gods that r ond ere was no kind of Villany done, or so much as offered to But that Alexander lamented her Death, and wept no is than he himself would have done. Those words drive d the celle nuced in into a farther suspition and jealously, conjecturing that interest lixanders behaviour had proceeded from the familiar control to the state of between them. Therefore he commanding all to regime Perfil The

0,0

ď

to

15 th 15

Ø

lo

a

1

recise, excepting Tyriores, and now not weeping but fight Look to it Tyriores faid he, that not the feast Syllable of hood flips from thy lips. Tormenes ftraightways half bridght before thee, I require the therefore, if any is rence of thy Prince remain within thy heart, tell me with computation the thing that I define to know, and am allow to chiquite. Is to possible, being of the Age that he is having her in his liable, that he should not attempt he typically offered limitell to be Racked in tryat of the cause called the Gods to winess that the was never used but the ly affilies offered limitell to be Racked in tryat of the cause called the Gods to winess that the was never used but the ly affilies that his were true, he covered his face, we may a long space, and affel wards the Fears yet diffill down his Cheeks uncovered it, and holding up his hand the with 1915.

O'ye Immortal Dieries the Tutelar Gods of thy Count and Empire. I implore you chiefly to effablish this kindom to my left. But I your unaherable Doomis have a termined my fall and rule, then my request is, that no may keigh King in my Dominion but he only.

And therefore though he had twice before required less at Alexanders hands, and prevailed not, but had convert all his milital revision die Wars, yet he was right to oversom with the confinency of his Enemy, that he lent everyoold chiefer of his Blood as Ambaffadors to Treat with him up conditions of Peace. Alexander calling a Councel gothern andience, to whom the Eldest pake in this manual

That Darius had now the third time demanded Peace so you now Power has compelled him, but your Juffu and Continency that invited him to it: He cannot peace to that either his Mother, his Wife or Children was Prioners any otherwise than in their wanting his copying; you take care of their Challities which remains like a Father; you give to them the Honour apperaining to them, and futier them to continue in his jeff

ely and Grandure, little inferiour to their former Estate. fee that fadnels in your Countenance which I faw in Dring when I parted from him, and yet he doth mourn or his Wife, and you for your Enemy; and if the geneous care of the Burial had not detained you, you had ow flood in Battel in readiness to fight against him; it any marvel therefore if he require Peace of fuch Man that is fo friendly disposed towards him? what, hall they need to contend with Arms between whom fiere remains no harred? In his former Treaty he of-feed that the River of Alys which boundeth upon Lydia, hould be the Confines of your Empire. But now he proffers you in Dower with his Daughter to be instantly elivered, all those Countries that lye between Hellespont and Euphrates; for the performance of which his promile, and for the observing of Peace, Occhus his Son now in your pollection shall be the Pledge; for his part his request is to have his Mother and his two Daughters reflored to him, for which you shall receive Thirty thousand Talents. Except I knew the moderation that is in you, I would not be fo bold to fay that this is a time when you ought not only to grant Peace, but also to feek for it your felf. Look back and behold what a great thing you leave behind you, and forefee how much it is that you covet before you, an Empire overgreat is dangerous, and it is hard to hold that which you are not able to receive. Do you not fee that those Ships which be of exceeding greatness, cannot well be governed? Judge that to be the cause that Darius lost so much, because that overmuch is the occasion of much loss; it is more easte to get many things, than to keep a few: how much more easily do our hands catch, than hold fast? the very death of Darius's Wife now doth shew that you have not so great occasion to shew mercy as you had before.

The Embassadours did withdraw into another place, and hedebated in Councel his opinion; It was before any durst F 2 utter

作品

6

where what they thought, because they were uncertained the King was inclined, at length Parmonio addrest his species to the King in this manner.

My opinion was ever, that the Prisoners taken at Damin should have been delivered to such as would redeem the whereby a great sum of money might have been made them, who now remaining in Captivity, trouble the had of many a man of Service: And now I think most necessary of all that you exchange for Thirty Thousand Talens of Gold, this old woman and the two young Damiels white are but impediments and disturbance to your Marches. He is a rich Realm to be gotten by treaty without any hazarde Battel; for there was never any before you (quoth she) that was Lord of all the Countries between Ister and Exportates, he willed him therefore rather to have respect to wards Macedonia than to look forward towards Bastria and the Indians.

This advice pleased not the King, and therefore so soons Parmenio had made an end of his speech, he return'd this artwer. And if I were Parmenio, I would rather desire money than glory: But now seeing I am Alexander, I am so in any doubt of poverty, and have in Consideration that am a King and no Merchant, I have nothing whereof I will make Sale, I will much less sell my fortune. If Alexander inclinations were to deliver the Prisoners, it were fitter for Alexander to give them up freely than to ransom them for Gold.

Hereupon he called the Embassadours and answered them in this fort; Declare to Darius, that giving of thanks is needless to an Enemy, and let him not think that I have had any respect to his friendship in acting those things which are only the dictates of my own Clemency, and Liberty, nor let him impute them to any consideration of himself, but to the inclination of mine own nature, and that I contend not against mens calamities, but against the force of mine Enemand.

mies;

in ho

major them ide d hand clari

its of

Hat

rda

he)

3 5

13

10.

10-

100

t.I ill

775

01

10

d

mies; I use not to make War with Women and Prisoners, is he must be armed to whom I shall owe my hatred, and though it were so indeed that he meant good faith in his peace asking, yet peradventure I would take advice before would confent. But feeing that at one time he hath prosoked my Souldiers to betray me, and at other times ffirred mmy friends with money to destroy me, I must pursue him the uttermost, not as a righteous Enemy, but as one that works his ends by Treachery. If I should accept the Conthions of Peace that you bring, I should acknowledge him mbe Conquerour, his Liberality does give me all that is behind the River Euphrates, not confidering in what place I" feak now to you. Have you forgotten that I have passed the Aiver Euphrates and encamped beyond the bounds you proffor me in dowry? drive me from hence that I may know the fame to be yours wherewith you would infeoff me, he profereth me his Daughter with no greater liberality than he has already done to one of his Servants; Does he think to do me pleasure in preferring me to be his Son-in-Law before Matus? Go and tell your King that both what he has loft and what he has yet in poffession shall be the rewards of the War which shall determine the bounds of both our Empires, and by the fortune of the Battel which we shall fight to morrow. appoint to each of us our Limits: Lethim know that I came not into Afia to receive but to give, if he would havebeen content to have been the second person, and not Coveted to be equal with me, I would peradventure have panted his request. But as the world cannot be govern'd by two Suns Shining at once, so neither can it bear two supream Kingdoms at one time without endangering the Subversion of the World; Therefore either let him this day yield himself, or else prepare against the morsows fight; nor let him promise himself any other fortune than what he has proved already.

The Embassadours replyed, that seeing he was re-solved to proceed with War, he did Royally that he was plain to them, and did not feed them with hope of F 4 min Cont

of

大田田田

W

B

W

10

4

M

of h

d

peace; their request was therefore, that they might a dispatched to their Prince, so warn him to prepare his self likewise, with the assurance of which they retund to Darius; wherefore Darius sent for Mazons with the thousand horsemen to keep the passages by which the Macedans should pass. When Alexander had perform the Funerals of Darius's wife, leaving a small guard hind with all fuch as were unprofitable for the se he fet forwards towards his Enemies, his Footmen were divided into two Battels, empaled with Horfemen a both fides, and his carriages were placed in the mill He fent Medinas with horsemen upon the Spurs to di cover where Darlus was, but he not daring to advature far because Mazeus was there flrongly quartered returned back, and reported that there was nothing to be heard but the noise of men, and the neighing of Horses Marens also the Scouts of Alexander being of covered, gave intelligence to Davis of the approach of the Enemy. Darnes, who defired to try the event of the Battel, in the open Plains, commanded his Souldiers in be Armed, and put his Army in Array of Battel Thousand Battrian horse, as many Dacions and An chofians with for Thousand Sufran horse made up the wing. These were followed by a hundred hooled Charious, next unto them was Biffus with a Thouland Baltrian horse, and two thousand of the Massagere back him on his rear; to these the Foot of many nation not mixed but in distinct Regiments, did joyn the formidable power; after them Ariobarcanes and Orioban with the Mardians and Sogdians did bring up the Arm of the Persians. This part of Darlus Jarmy was confen Kings, and deriving also his Original from the Bla ftrious King Circus; There were other Nations that followed these, but hardly known to their own Neighbours, after whom Cradates having fifty hooked Chaziots placed a Band of Capian horiemen, before then and behind them were the bidious, and the other la habitett dot alliftance. This Square was also empaled with the dot alliftance. This Square was also empaled with the direction fifty Chariots, unto the which the Mercinary suldiers were joyned; after them followed the men of amount the left, then the Babylonians, and next the latitude with such as inhabit the Coffean Mountains; The Gortuans came next, who some time followed the latitudes out of Euloja, but at those days degenerated from their Country Customs; the Phygians, Carbonians, and Parchians, closed up the rear; these was the left Wing of the Army.

In the Battel on the right hand were the people of the prester Armenia, the Cadafians, Cappatiocians, and Millans, who had fifty hooked Chariots, the Sum of his whole Army, was forcy five thousand Horsemen, and two hundred thouland Footmen, when they were placed in order of Battel, they marched forward ten hillongs, and then were commanded to make a hale. Whilft the Perfiam in this manner tarried for their Enemies, there fell a fudden fear among the Macidons. whereof there appeared no cause, and yet every man was amazed, and a fecret dread entred into their hearts. The Lighming that fell out of the Air, it being in the fummer featon feemed like fire, and the flames fuddainly appearing, were thought to come from Darius Camp. If Mazius was fent out to observe the approach of the Mudmians, and had fet upon them while they were in this fear, he might have performed a most fignal piece of Service, and made what flaughter he pleafed. Bur he was flow in the enterprize, and remained upon the Top of an hill, contented that he was not affailed.

Alexander perceiving the terrour that invaded his Souldiers, made a fign for them to stay; and gave order that they should unarm themselves and refresh their bodies, giving them to understand that there was not any cause why fig.

ct

10

en

30

th

be

th

th

A

C

h

TE

W

W

A

be

fo w

di

De

de

W

th

all Ca

fu th

they should entertain so vain a fear, seeing their Enem were yet a good diftance from them; at length when b perceived they had recovered their Spirits, he exhand them to receive courage and put on their Armour, but we he thought nothing more expedient than to Fortifie h Camp in the same place. The next day Mazeus who ha planted himself on a high hill from whence he might behold his Enemies Camp either for fear or elfe because his Com mission was only to observe the motion of his Enemies, to turned again to Darius upon equitting that post the Macedan immediately possessed themselves of the hill which he had forfaken as being of more strength than the plain where the remained before, from whence they might furvey their Enemies Camp, and though the mist which the moist hill cast forth took not away clearly the use of their prospect, ye it hindred them to differn the division of their Enemies Ba tels and their order; their multitude over foread the Field, and the noise of their numbers did fill their Ears, though they were faroffen Then Alexander begun to revolve in his mind, and to debate with himfelf; one while Parmain opinion, and another time his own, for he was now advanned fo far; that he could not retire except he were Vido rious without the hazarding the loss of his whole Army. The multitude of his Enemies moved him much in respect of his small Numbers, yet on the other part he remembred what great and glorious actions he had acheived by them, and how many Nations he had Vanquished, so that his hope fur mounting this fear, he thought it of all most dangerous to defer the Battel any longer, left desperation should grow amongst his men, and therefore dissembling his resentment, he caused the Mercinary Horsemen and the Poens to pas on before, and divided his Phalaux, as hath been faid, into two Battels, and empaled it with Horsemen on both sides; by that sime the mist vanished, and it waxing clear, the order of his Enemies was manifestly discovered.

The Macedons then, whether it were through Courses or linguisence to tarry any longer, made such a shout a

14

10-

to-

14.

ca

cd

Щ,

pg

ta

W

B,

6

01

5;

e

DE: 4

of War use when they joyn in Battel, the like shours sere returned from the Persians whilst the Woods and Villeys rebounded with the terrible found. The Macedons could not abftain any longer, but would have Marcht forwards toward their Enemies, but Alexander thought it better to fortifie his Camp upon that Hill, and fo commanded it to he intrenched about, which work being speedily performed, he recired into his Tent from whence he might behold the field Marshall'd, and the whole Army of his Enemies embattelled: Then the fashion and form of the impending dinger was presented before his eyes, both Horsemen and Footmen glistered in their bright Armour, and all things were prepared with extraordinary diligence. He beheld the care of the Captains in his Enemies Camp, how they rod up and down to fet things in order, and many things that were but vain indeed, as the noise of men, the neighing of Horses, and the glistering of their Armour troubled yet the mind that was careful in the expediation of the event; therefore whether it were that he was not fully resolved in his mind, or else to prove the resolution of such as were about him, a Council of War was called to advise what was best to do; Parmenio who was the most experienced amongst all the Captains in the Art and Mystery of War, judged that a surprize might bemore successful, than apitcht Battel, and was therefore for fetting upon them in the dead time of the night, whereby he thought they might more easily be put into dilorder and confusion, as being composed of People of such diversity of Customs and Languages, that they should never be able to rally well together, especially when in the dead of night, they should have their quarters beaten up; Whereas in the day time, the shape of the Scythians, and Buttians with their rough faces, and long hair, besides the hugeness of their bodies, should appear terrible. He alledged how Souldiers were more moved with the vain causes of sear and such as were of no moment, than with such as were just causes indeed. He declared also how their Enemies, by reason of their great multitude, should.

.

-

-

b

-

R

0

N

B

Ħ

C

W

西代坊

be able to inclose their final number round about, a that they should not now fight in the Streights, and nam passages of Chiris; but in an open and large Compain.

They all in a manner agreed to Parmenio, and Poline was directly of opinion, that the victory confided on a following of that Counfel. The King that before had a braded Permenio more birterly than was expedient, we not check him again, but beheld Poliperon, and faid,

That policy you advise me is more agreeable with the principles and practices of Robbers and Fellons, for a stheir propriety to work by darkness, and deceipt. I will no more fuffer, that either Darius absence, the streighted of the ground, or the stealth in the night, shall be a hindrance to my glory; I am plainly determined to some with him in the open day, and had rather repent me if my fortune, than be assumed of my victory. Desides the is to be considered, that the Persians keep good ward, and stand armed always in a readiness to receive us, where of I have advertisement, so that they cannot be deceived that way; therefore there remains no more but that you prepare your selves to the Battel.

Having thus animated them into courage, he disinstellem from Councel to refresh their bodies, Darius conjecturing that his Enemies designed to move as Parmei had persuaded, caused the Horses to stand ready bridle the whole night, and the most part of his Host to continue armed, and to keep good Watch. His Camp show bright with the fires that were made, and he himself with his Captains and Kinssolks went about his Soulder that stood in order and in Arms, making Invocation the Sun, to Mars, and to the everlasting fire, that the would inspire into them a fortitude of mind worthy their Antient Glory, and the Acts and Monuments of their Preducessors, and declared, if the mind of man were able to conceive any toxens or signs of the Gods savour or assistance.

のなる子子の子のは高い

fance it was no doubt but that they were beat on their having already firicken a fudden fear amongst the (which he faid) might be feen by their running here and there, by the carrying and casting of their Armour: And that the Gods which took care of the Polisis Empire, were now determined to punish those Cowards, whose very Leader himself is little less, who the wild Beafts are just now falling into the mares pre--berief tal, a bared for destruction.

The like care was amongst the Macedons, for as though the matter should have been tryed that night, they passed gover in doubt and anxiety. Alexander himself that was never feen in such fear before that time, called for Ariflanto make Vows and Prayers, who in a white Garment carrying Verbenes in his hand with his head covered, went before the King, calling upon Jupiter, Minerva and Victoria; when he had thus performed his Sacrifice according to their Religion, he returned into his Pavillion to repose the refidue of the night; yet he could neither rest nor deep, but continually debated with himself which way he should affail his Enemies; one while he was of opinion to march down the Hill and give the first onser upon that Battel of the Persians that should come on his right hand; sometimes he determined to meet his Enemies in the very front, and otherwhile whether it were better to encounter them on their left Battel; at length his body became heavy with the travel of his mind, and he fell into a found fleep. When the day appeared the Captains assembled about the King's Pavillion to receive their charge, where they flood amazed at the unaccuflomed filence: For they could not but wonder that he who was ever wont to call upon other men, and to reprove such as were flow or negligent, not to be then fireing in the extremity of the utmost danger; and many were of opinion that he flept not, but shrunk for fear; yet not one of his Officers Guards, nor any about faid ;

BOOK W fon the morning past away, and the Souldiers neither darft put on their Armour, nor frand in order of Band Part Part without commandment of their Chief. When they had thus tarried a great while, Permenio gave order that the should fall to meat. At length when the time came 611 that of necessity the Army must be drawn into Battel, be entred into the King's Pavillion, and called upon him 201 divers times by his name; but when he could not awake

Cli

ha C

wi

the th

C

lie

Pi

gu in

Al C

Ga A

W

T

B

A

be

DC

th B

AGB

The day is far advanced, and your Enemies come forward in order of Battel, and your Souldiers being yet unarmed, impatiently wait your command; where is that cheerfulness and courage of yours become which were wont to flir up-even those that were most watch ful?

him with his voice, he ftirred him with his hand, and

Auxander made answer to him.

Think you that I could sleep before that I had rid my felf of the care that hindred my tepofe? and thereupon caused the Trumpet to Sound to the Battel.

But when Parmenio continued still in his Admiration that he in such a time should sleep so quietly, It is no marvel (quoth Alexander,) that when Darius burned the Country, wasted the Villages, and destroyed the Fore rage, I had then neither time nor leifure to rest; But now what cause have I to fear now he prepares himself to fight? he hath now fulfilled my defire, repair you to your charge, and I will be ftraight amongft you and give you such further orders as shall be necessary for the business in hand.

He used seldom to take his friends advice, when any doubt or danger was at hand. When Parmenio was

gone.

足亲旨宋泉军是是官

rie

ne

re ch

h

d

.

me he armed himfelf and came forwards amongst his souldiers, they feeing him look for cheerfully as they had not feen before time, conceived by the courage of his countenance a certain hope of Victory. Then he smed the Trenches of his Camp to be cast down, that the Souldiers might have free passage forth, and in this manner fet his Battels in order. The Horsemen of whom Clieus was Captain were planted in the wing of the right hand Battel, to whom he joined Philotas, and other Captains. The last Band of Horsemen were Miliagers. which were next unto the square Battel of Footmen that the Macedons name Phalaux. After the Phalaux followed the Agiraspides of whom Nicanor the Son of Parmenio was Captain; Cenus with his Band was appointed to be a rehef. Horestes and Lincestes advanced next, and after them Poliperson that had the Rule of the Strangers, and Phylasgus who led the Balacrons, who were but lately entred in the service of Alexander; and this was the order of Alexanders Battel, in the right Wing, whereof Amintas was Chief.

In the left Battel, Craterus had the charge of the Peleponefor Horsemen, and with him were also the Bands of the Achaians, Larrensians, Malaeans, and the hindmost Troops were the Horsemen of Thessay under Philip their Caprain. Thus the Horsemen covering the Foot, made the Front of the Battel, and lest their Enemies through their multitude should enclose the Battel about, he planted a great Force behind for a reserve, and set a relief also upon the wings, not in Front with the rest, but upon the sides, to the intent that if the Enemies attempted to compass round about the Battels, they should be ready to keep them in action.

Those that maintained the places of reserves were the Agrians, of whom Attalus was Captain, and the Archers of the were joined to them; such as stood in the Rear of the Battel were ordered to turn their faces from the Frontwards, that being thus ready on all hands, the Battel should

be

to The Life of BOOKIN

C

be everywhere equally Fortified. They which stood is their faces contractivite were the Illyrians, and the Mon nary Soldiers with the Thracians that were light Armed: whole Battalia's were thus prudently managed to more very way, that fuch as flood in the hinder parts could a be enclosed about, but might every way make their Fre fothe Front, the Flanks, and the Rear were all of like form When he had fet his men in order, after this manner he am commandment, that if the Perfians should attempt upon the with their hooked Chariots with a cry or noise, that the they should open their Battels, and receive them withis lence, not doubting but that they should pass with little a no Execution if no man did refift them. But if they should come without any shout or clamour, that then they there felves fhould make a cry to flartle the Horfes withal, and fo with Pikes thrust them through on every fide; the which had the charge of Battels were commanded to es tend them so much in breadth as possible they might left by flanding over-close they might be invironed, and yet not to stretch them fo far out as to leave the Rank void and thin in the midft. The Carriage and the Prifoners amongst whom Darius Mother was one, were ken on the Top of an Hill with a small guard about them the charge of the left Battle was committed to Parment as formerly, and Alexander himself was in the min Body.

When they were drawn near to one another, one But came flying from the Persian Hoft in a full Gallop, and declared to the King that Darius had planted Iron when he thought his Horsemen should pass, and by a certain sign shewed him the place that so he might avoid the danger. Alexander ordered the Fugitive to be kept safe, and affembled air his Captains together, declaring the matter, and exhorting them to make their Souldiers print to the danger for eschewing the place pointed one to them. But all that were in so great an Army could not hear the warning given, the noise of both Armies taking away the

d with

di

OVE

dw

From force

then

the

ichf

le a

en-

and

the

ight,

and

anh

Pri-

képi

em;

nain

Ryun and ere ain

28

nd

20世紀日本日本日

should

of the Ears. But Alexander riding betwint the Battels. Exhortation to the Captains, and to all others that were within the hearing. He declared that there was but one hagard remaining to them that had passed through so many Countries in hope of the Victory, which they were now ready to fight for. Thereupon he recalled to their memory the Battels they had fought at the River of Granike, in the Mountains of Cilicia, and with what speed they had overcan both Syrria and Egypt, the rehearfal whereof put them in great hope, and incited them forwards to the defire of slory. He told them that the Perfans being now as it were callyed from their former flight, were compelled to fight of necessiry, because they could fly no further, and how that three days together amazed for fear, they had remained fill in one place with their Armour on their backs, of whose defair (he faid) there could be no greater Argument than that they had fet on fire their own Country, confeiling all to be their Enemies that they destroyed not; he exhorted men hot to fear the vain name of unknown warrons, resite was a thing nothing pertinent which were called Scythians. and which Cadufians: for being unknown Narious, it was a fure token that they were men of no valour, because such as be valiant could never be unknown to the world, and contrariwife Daftards, when they come forth of their Dens and Coverts, bring nothing with them but names of men, whereas you (quorh he) that are Macidons have fo fignalized your selves by your Vertue and Manhood, that there is no Country in the world ignorant of your Acts; he willed them to behold the evil order that was in their Enemies Bott, of whom fome had no weapon but a Dart, others, a Sling to cast stones, and very few had such Armour as they ought to have: So that though on the Enemies fide they had more numbers, on their own they had more Souldiers, mother for his part he would not require any man to adwesture farther than where he himfelf would lead them in person, and fland their great Example of that days action and glory; for he affured them that he would be feen fightmg with the foremost, knowing that so many wounds as he

H

h

6

h

٧

0

should get, should be so many ornaments to his person. So said) they knew themselves that he would be no parate of the prey; but that it was ever his custom to bestow the rewards of his Victory upon the Souldiers to cherish an enrich them: thus far he said he spoke to men of course. But if any were of another temper, he was to inform the that they were come to the place from whence they could not flie, having left so many Countries behind them which they had passed over, and so many Rivers and Mountain at their backs; so that now there was no way to their on houses and Native Countrey, but such as they must hew or with their own hands and swords.

Such was his Exhortations, and such his Encouragement to the Captains, and such of the Souldiers as were next me to him. Darius that was in his left hand Battel accompanied with a choice Band of Horse and Foot, despited the small number of his Enemies, their Battels appearing to him thin and void of men, when he saw their wings street ed so far abroad. He stood therefore on his Chariot of high, and turning himself both on the right hand and the left, he spake in this manner to such as were about him.

We that were not long since Lords of all the Countrey lying between the Hellespont and the Ocean Sea, are compelled now to fight, not for our Fame and Glory, but for our safety, and what is yet dearer than our safety our Liberty. This day shall either establish or make an end of the greatest Empire that hath been in any Age. At the River of Granik we fought with a small part of our Power, when we were vanquished in Cilicia, Spria was able to receive us, and the Rivers of Tygris and Emphrates, were as Bulwarks to defend our King-

10 T

nen

100

000-

安全草草

and

ght,

our

fety

hile

that

niki

hen

Ea-

ing.

om,

dom, but now we are come to that extremity, where if repulft, we have no shelter nor retreat to fly to, all things behind our Backs are wasted with this long War, neither Cities are inhabited, nor men left to Till the ground; our Wives and our Children follow this Army a prey ready for our Enemies, except we put our Bodies for the defence of those who are the nearest and dearest partners of our Souls. All that concern me, all that lay on my part, I have performed, preparing such an Army as this huge plain is able to receive. I have distributed amongst you Horse and Armour, providing that Victuals should not be wanting for fuch a Multitude, and have chosen in apt place to Arrange our Battels in, all the tell remains in your hands, do but dare to fight and the Victory is yours, and despise you the Fame of the Enemy, which is but a weak Weapon against men of Valour. It is rashness which hitherto you have feared, as a vertue whereof, when the first brunt is spent it waxes dull, as are Drones having once lost their Stings. This plain hath disclosed their small number which the Mountains of Cilicia concealed from us; you fee how empty their Ranks are, how thin their wings be extended abroad, how their Battels be empty, and void of men, and fuch as are in the Rear have already turn'd their backs; they may be overthrown with your Horses feet, though I send none against them but the hooked Chariots, and

if

if we win the Battle, we make an end of the Wa for they have no place to fly to, they are flut with Tygris on the one fide, and with Euphran on the other, and that now wholly makes again them, which before was their only advantage our Army is light, and without much baggage and they are laden with Rapine and Booties, inlo much that we shall kill them wrapt in their om spoils, and crush by the very weight of their own prey. And thus that which shall be the cause shall also be the fruit and reward of our Victory; I any one of you be startled at the Fame of the Nation, let him confider that he meets here only the Armour with the outward shew, and not its Bodies of the Macedons. We have confirmed to much of their Blood fince the War began, and feeing they are but few, their loss must need be to them the greater; for how great soever Ala ander doth feem to them that are Cowards, he i but a man, and if you trust me, both rash and without consideration, and hitherto more forthnate through our fear than by his own Valors There is nothing can continue that is not govern ed by reason, for though Fortune seems to favour for a while, yet at last the will not support his rashness; besides that the estate of things are full of change, and no man hath a perpetual felicity: It may be that the Providence of the Gods have so ordained it, that the Empire of the Persiani encreased with such prosperous success by the space

Wa

hut braw gain

tage, gage,

OW

OW

ihall

ber

only

the 10 and be

les

ei

and

tu-

an. m W hit ul y: Ve

W.

œ

your

of Two hundred and thirty years, and brought to great a height of Fortune, thould now rather be shaken than utterly overthrown, thereby to admonish us of mans fragility, that is too apt to forget himself in over-much prosperity. It is not long ago lince of our own motions and coune we made War against the Grecians, and inward their Dominions, but now we stand at defence for our own Countrey. Thus we are tolfee one against another by change of Fortune for one Nation cannot: suffice the greatness of the Empire which we both do covet. But he if fo that hope were taken from us, yet necessity ought to eacourage us, the War is brought to such extensity. He keepeth now as Prisoners both my Mother, my two Daughters, and Occhus my Son born to the succession of this Empire; he keepeth Captive your Prince, and those Princes your Illutrious Captains, who descended from the Blood Royal, and equal with Kings, and unles on your parts you shall now perform all that lies in your power, and all that's worthy of you, I my felf shall be his Captive too, whose greater part of me already wears his Chains; deliver you therefore my bowels out of Prilon, and festore to me my Children, for whole take I do not refuse to die: Be you all fure, that both my Mother and my Children. for my Wife is dead in Prison, are holding up their hands, crying to the Gods, and calling for

wor.

your help, your courage and fidelity, that you ish would free them from servitude, from setten and from the estate they are in, living at other out mens will and controll. Think you that the key can be content to live under such as they could start the carried vouchfate to have for their Subjects I see that our Enemies Battels do approach, and in the less that our Enemies Battels do approach, and in the less that the descent at less than the less the nearer the danger is at hand, the less the word my I have spoken do satisfie me. I make request to with you by the Gods of our Countrey, by the Etc. no has Fire that is carried upon their Altars, by the adbrightness of the Sun that rises within the bound is of my Empire, and By the evertaining memory into of Cyrac, who took the Empire from the Medical and Lydians and gave it to the Persians to deli-tho ver their Names and this Nation from Thame and the reproach go forth cheerfully filled with good hope have and fee that you reftore to your polierity the glory w and fee that you restore to your posterity the glory we you received of your Predecessors; behold you have carry in your hands your liberty, your help, our hope in time to come. Whosever contemns death escapes it, and death only overtaketh such as do the fire from it. I ride here in a Charlot, not only for that it is my Countrey Custom, but also that in I may be seen of you all; and I desire nothing is much as that you will follow me, whether I shew you an Example of Courage or of Cowardiness to the mean season, whilst Alexander endeating the place of peril, whereof he would be avoid the place of peril, whereof he would be a world the place of peril, whereof he would be a world the place of peril, whereof he would be also and the place of peril, whereof he would be a world the place of peril, whereof he would be a world the place of peril, whereof he would be a world the place of peril, whereof he was a world the place of peril, whereof he was a world the place of peril, whereof he was a world to a world the place of perils whereof he was a world to a world the place of perils whereof he was a world to a world the place of perils whereof he was a world to a world the place of perils whereof he was a world to a wo

voured to avoid the place of peril, whereof he un was advertised, and inforced himself to encounter with

of the Dariss, left Battel, where he remained in the Dariss, left Battel, where he remained in the Dariss, left Battel, where he remained in the Land of the Was compelled to fetch a compass action, whom when Dariss perceived, he turned lewise his own Battel towards him, commanding to the towards him, commanding to the towards him, commanding to the Malagets to give charge on Alexander's left Battel. He sent before in his hooked Chariots, which by a signal given, and the following upon their Enemies with their wittelt speed, that by coming unawares, they make the greater slaughter. The Spears had Books to be many of the Macedonians, who do not by degrees open to them, but were put that a great disorder: Which when Macedonians, who do not by degrees open to them, but were put thousand Horse to the Relief of Their own Men, do who were Prisoners, whom he expected would d who were Priloners, whom he expected would e we broken their Bands at the approach of their warparty and joyned with them in plundering heilinemas Cerringen But Parmento, who was the left wing, foreseeing the design, sent Polyh samas to advertise the King, and know what meathe swere to be taken in the present Danger. Alexander returned this Answer to Parmenio; "Go telk him (said he) if we fight bravely and conquer, we had before that not only recover our Booty we had before that not only recover our Tropkies. Tell him, no men can possibly be drawn out of the Battel; and let him therefore fight as becomes a Captain, and let him therefore fight as becomes a Captain, and let him therefore fight as becomes a Captain, and concerned for any such loss,

that his Men would be alof hour year of benesoned gut benesoned gut benesoned gut benesoned gut benesoned they call the second they call the second gut benesoned gut bene Sarilopionii

.

All this while the Barbarians plundered the Enemies, and having loofened the Chains of their Captives, and flaying best part of the Convoy, they returned, and fiercely set upon the Michael Captives, who were hardly pur to it on all side the Captives, who were hardly pur to it on all side the Persons grown of the Vinance So confident were the Perficus grown of the W clory, that they ran with the greatest joy image nable to Sifigambis, and told ner that Army was overtherwn, and greatest part of his Army was overtherwn, and greatest part of his Army was a second of the ffroyed; and to commin it they added, that and dy they had ranfackt his Tents which they effect the ed an Intallible light of Victory. But not even the Report was able to work any change in the Queen, though encouraged by their Boatted for the cells to no little Transports of Joy. She fill returned not one word of answer, for in the least after ed her majeltick face of forrow; but heare all the least after the contract of the cells are the cells are majeltick face of forrow; but heare all the least after the cells are t with a filent gravity, unwilling perhaps to tempe Form to Inconstancy, who case and harry an expression her Joy. The Mediengers of this good news could feather discount the least inclination the had, whether the fancied the or the contrary, to be true. As negligent as the Ring seems of his carriages, yet Aminas his General of the Horfe earlier to their Relief; thought its not certain whether by own motion, or the command of Alexander. But the form Treeps he had were napple to withfland the Scytbians at Cadulans, fo that he returned back to carry the news to a wander of what he had seen, and in vaintantempted to prevent. io men can pollibly

Upon this Relation the Griefof the King almost darland his Understanding, for he feared, and not without read that his Men would be more intent upon the loss of the prey, than winning of the Battel; wherefore he for

Sarifopherin

のないない。

alo

her bel

WC the Swiffophorij, against the Scythians. By this time the hookd Chariots, which had before troubled the Fore-front, were come within the Macedons Phalanx; yet the Souldiers never brunk at the matter, but received them into the midst of their Battle; whereas, joyning themselves close together, hey stood like a Wall on both sides, thrusting their Pikes into the Bowels of the Horses; and incloting the Waggons, threw down such as stood in them at desence: and thereupon, there fell a Slaughter both of the Horses and the Charioteers. They could not rule their Horses when they were once galled, or hurt, who with much bounding and Imaging, not only broke their Traces, but also, overthrew the Chariots, dragging at their tails the men that were flain; neither being able to stand still for the sear they were in, ww of them passed through the Battle, whereby such as the Chariors lighted upon were miserably slain, lying upon the Ground with their members cut in sunder; yet, because that through the greenness of their Wounds they felt little pain, they kept their Weapons still, notwithstanding they were maimed, and without strength; at last, by over much loss of blood, they funk down dead. Aretes, in the mean time, had flain the Captain of the Scythians that was fooiling of the Carriages, and repulsed them back; but infantly came the Ballrians, sent by Darius, and turned the Fortune of the Field again. Many Macedons were flain at the first encounter, but more fled to Alexander. Then the Persians made such a shout as men are wont to do that win the Victory, and fiercely affailed their Enemies, thinking they had in every place been put to flight; when Aexander perceived his men shrink, and begin to faint, and give ground, he rebuked fuch as he faw afraid, and encouraged many that withdrew from the fight; fo that he alone restored the Battle again. When he had put them in heart again, he commanded them to press forwards, and boldly affault the Enemy. And perceiving the Batirians were drawn off to the defeating of the Carriages, and by their going, had left the right hand Pattle of Davis thin

and naked, he bent his force wholly that way, and he made a wonderful Slaughter and Deftruction of his ! mies, who by reason of that loose array, were not able withfland him; which the Perfians in the left Wing offe ving, were in hope to have enclosed Alexander round, came forwards to fet upon his Rear; in which encoun he had been in great danger, being invironed both being and behind, if the Agrians had not put fours to their ha fes, and given a gallant charge to their Enemies, that we invironing the King about, and fo compelled the Pella to turn their Faces again towards them. The Battles received great Losses on both sides. Alexander had his for both before and behind; and his Enemies that came on back, were fore oppressed by the Agrians; the Badha also, that had spoiled the Carriages were excluded in their own Company, and could not recover their Polis gain: Thus the Battles were divided in divers parts, a fought one against another, as Fortune guided their hand The two Kings that joyned their Battles hard to one a ther, renewed again the Fight: There were most of Persians slain, but the number of the wounded, pretty equal, on both fides. Darius rid in a Chariot, a Alexander upon a Horse. They both had a select Guardato them, which were careless of their own Lives; for if the Princes should miscarry, they neither could be safe, m had they defire to be fo. Wherefore, every one of the thought it a noble thing, to adventure their Lives before the Face of their Prince: And he that coveted most to fend his Mafter, was in most peril; for each man defin the Honour to kill the King of the contrary Party. The (whether it were an Imagination of the Eyes, or villa indeed) fuch as were about Alexander, believed the they faw an Eagle fluttering above his Head, which neith scared with the clashing of their Harness, nor by the cit of the dying, hovered still in the Air, a little above his Then Alexander, who wore a white Garment, and carrie Lawrel in his Hand, shewed this fight to the Souldier being busie in fight, as a certain token of Victory: The d the

s En

able

d, 2

ounn befor

ir Ho

two

Sth

ou h

fro

oft:

200 and

Wd

an

के व्य

the

fight of which inflamed such Courage, and put such Resolution into the Hearts of the most dejected amongst them, that with more vigour than ever they renewed the Combat.

The fight continued in this manner, till the time that he was flain, who governed the Horse that drew Darius's Chariot; then neither the Persians nor Macedons doubted, but that Darius himself had been slain. And the Persians upon that Imagination, made a Barbarous Noise, and a sorrowful Howling, which struck such Terrour and Consternation into their whole Host, who till then were fighting with equal Victory, that Darius's Kinsmen, and the Squires of his Body, that were on his lest hand, deserted him, and besook themselves to flight; but such as stood in his Desence on his right hand, conveyed him into the heart of the Battle.

It was said, that Darius drew out his Sword, and was determined divers times to kill himself, rather than to sufrain the shame of a dishonourable flight; but when he saw as he fat aloft in his Chariot, that great part of his Army remained yet fighting, he was ashamed of the very thought of leaving them to; and while he thus wavered in his own mind, the Persians by little and little gave ground, and thrunk from their order. Alexander that had tired many Horses, did at that instant change his. Horse a new, and charged in the faces of those that opposed, and in the back of those that fled. There was none then that made Resistance any longer, but manifest Slaughter fell on the Perfians, and Darius turned his Chariot to flie away. The Macedons purfued hard after them that fled, and the dust that new up to the skie took away their prospect, so that they wandred almost in darkness, and following only the sound of those voices they knew, only the ratling and noise of the Chariots, was a token for the Macedons to follow in the pursuit: As Fortune was Prosperous to the Macedons on this part, and so averse to their Enemies; so on the other side, when Parmenio in the left Wing incountred with the Persians, they had the better, and the Macedons

G 2

m

n

h

i

(

the worse. Mazeus with his whole band gave a violen Charge, and put the Horse-men that stood in the Wingsm some diffress, and thereupon, by reason he abounded with multitude, he began to inclose the Foot-men round. The Parmenio fent word to Alexander in what danger they were; which he fignified to be fuch. That without speedy succour they should be forced to fly: Alexander was gone far inthe chace, when this unhappy Message was brought him; where fore he commanded his Horse-men to stand, and chastel wonderfully, that the Victory should be thus taken outd his hands, and that Darius had better Fortune in flying than he in following. In the mean feafon, the fame of Darius's over-throw was brought to Mazeus; wherefore, though before he had the upper hand, yet he was fo fruck with terrour at the Miscarriage of his Fellows, that he made a flack pursuit upon their Enemies: Parmeni) was ignorant of the cause, the Persian fury began so suddenly m cool; but laying hold of this occasion, to turn the face of Victory, he called the Thessalian Horse-men to him, and Maid, See you not how our Enemies, that even now gave sus a fierce on-set, are suddenly afraid; I see the Forum of our King does give us the Victory; all the Field's frowed with the Carcaffes of our flain Enemies ; Why do you therefore flay? Are you not good enough for menth · fly ?

They saw that his words had some appearance of truth, and therefore by and by they took Courage, and putting Spurs to sheir Horses, gave a full Charge to their Enemies, who now retired not by little and little, but marched away in hast; and they wanted nothing of flying, only they had not yet directly turned their backs; yet for all that, informuch as Parmenio knew not what was become of the King, nor of his Battle, he made a halt, and would not pursue them too far. Mazaus having Liberty given him to fly a this leisure, passed the River of Tire, not the next way, but by a farther compass about with more surety, and recovered the City of Babylon with the remainder of that vancuish

Army.

IV.

olem

gso

with

Then

vere;

COUL

n the

afed

ut of

ing.

e of

ruck

t he

s ig-

y to

e of

and

ave

une d is

do

hat

ath,

ing ies;

vay

had

ng, fue at

but

ve-

fht

In

In the mean feafon, Darius, with a few that accompanied him in his flight, came to the River of Lycus; where paffing over, he flood in dispute, whether he should break the Bridge or no, for it was told him, that his Enemies. were at hand; but confidering how many thousands of his men, by the breaking thereof, would become a prey to his Enemies, he left the Bridge standing; and at his depar-ture said, That he had rather open the way to them that purfued him, than to thut it against them that fled after him. But Darius left not flying, till he came to Arbela, where he arrived about midnight. Who is able to conceive. in his mind, or express in words, the Revolutions of Fortune in this discomfiture, the slaughter that fell both upon the Captains and Souldiers, the chafing of them that were put roflight, and the destruction in general, and in particular? Forume seemed to have contracted the whole business of Ages into the Action of that one day. Some took the way that came next to hand, others fled into the Woods, and fourht out by-ways to escape such as had them in the chace; there was a Confusion of Horse-men and Feet-ren mixt together, without any head, the armed with the unarmed, and the whole with the wounded.

At length, their mutual Compassion to each other was mined into sear, and they that could not so key, were less bewailing themselves one to another: But the instruction afflicted the wounded and wearied, who lay along every where in the ways where any Water was, gasping after it with open mouth; and when for greediness they had gulled in the troubled Water, they began to swell when the mud once entred their Intrails; and being thus not in case to move, the Enemy came and stirred them up with sresh Wounds: Some when the Brooks near at hand were taken up by others, sought out for Springs in every secret place; nor were there any puddles so dry, or so far out of the way, that could be hidden from the thirst of them that searched them out. The old Men and Women were heard howling and crying in all the Villages near the way.

fide, for Darius their King.

G. 3

Alex-

to

Alexander, as it hath been faid before, pursuing the chace was come to the River of Lyous; at which the multitude of Flyers were more than could pass the Bridge, so that many, when their Enemies pursued them, leapt into the Water, and there, laden with their Armour, and weary with fighting and flying, were devoured in the Stream: But within awhile, neither the Bridge nor the River were able to receive the throng that continually increased by sheir indirect flying; for when fear had once entred into their hearts, they retained no other Object of Terrour, but that which put them into that fear. The Macedons were very eager in the pursuit of their Enemies, and requested Alexander that he would not suffer his Enemies to escape free away: But he, to stay the chace, alledged, that their Weapons were dull, their hands wearied, their bodies faint in the long pursuit, and the night besides was too far approaching; but in reality, careful of his other Battle, which he thought yet fighting, he resolved to return to their succour. He had no sooner turned his Enfigns, but that certain Horse-men brought him word from Parmente, that he likewife had put his Enemies to fright. We was not in so great danger all that day, as when he was coming towards his Camp; for there were but few that followed him, and they were out of order, as men that rejoicing at the Victory, judged all their Enemies either to be fled or flain in the Field; fuddenly there appeared a Band of Persian Horse-men, marching towards them, which at first made a little halt; but afterwards, perceiving the small number of the Macedons, gave them a Charge. The King rode foremost, rather dissembling than despising the peril he was in; but his perpetual felicity never failed him in his Extremities; for at the first encounter, he struck the Captain of the Persians, who in eagerness of the fight unadvisedly came against him, through with a Spear; when he with that blow was faln to the Ground, Alexander seconded this good beginning, by giving the next to him the same fate, by the same Weapon, and making others of their Company participate in their Leader's fall; when Alexander's IV

hace

rude

that

the

cary

am :

vere

by

into

our.

lons

re-

ies

ed.

eir

ias.

er

e.

n-

m

13

nder's Companions faw their Enemies amazed at the great Actions of their King, they followed their Valiant Leader. and broke in upon them, and threw many to the Earth. ver they for their parts were not unrevenged, for the whole Revele did not so earnestly fight, as this handful of men essembled as it were by chance: But at length, when they aw flying in the dark to be more fafe to them than fighting. they fled away in divers Companies; Alexander having efraped this extraordinary Peril, brought his men in fafeguard

to his Camp.

There were flain of the Persians, which came to the knowledge of them that had the Victory, forty thousand; and of the Macedons, less than three hundred; which Viflory Alexander won more by his own Verrue than by any Forme; and with Hardiness and Courage, more than through any Advantage of the Ground; for, he both ordered his Battles politickly, and fought manfully; with great Wildom he contemned the loss of the Baggage, confidering the weight of the whole matter to confift in the Bande it felf. Whilft the Fortune of the Field remained doubtful, he bore up the same with undaunted Courage and Resolution, as if assured of the Victory; and when he had pue his Enemies in fear, he ceased not till he had fer them flying: And that which scarcely can be believed in that herceness of Courage, he pursued in the chace more wifely than greedy; for if he should have followed on still. part of his power yet fighting in the Field, he should either have lost the Battle through his own fault, or else have won the Victory through the Prowess of another; or. if after he had obtained the Victory, he had shewed himfelf afraid of the Horse-men he met, he must either shamefully have fled or miserably have faln.

Nor were his Captains to be defrauded of their share of Praise and Glory, for the Wounds that they did receive were tokens of their Manhood; Hephaftion's Arm was wounded with a Spear; Perdiccas, Conus, and Menidas, with that of Arrows were almost stain outright; and if we will give a true Judgment of the Macedons that were there, we

G 4

muft!

BOOKY must consess that he was a King worthy of such Minister. and they Men worthy of fo great a Mafter.

FIFTH BOOK.

Of the Acts of Alexander the Great, KING of Macedon.

IF I should here recount the Wars, that during this Ex. pedicion intervened, both in Greece, Italy, and in The cia, and of the Revolters that were checked and subdued by the Commission of Alexander, and the Conduct of his Lieutenants; the proceedings in Asia would be thereby interrupted, the feries of which I thought more convenient to continue till the death of Darius, and then joyn them with this work as they agree with the time. I will first speak of those things that ensued after the Battle of Arbela, where Darius arrived about Midnight, and as it chanced, the greater part of his Friends, whom he called all together, and spake to them to this effect;

That he doubted not but Alexander and his Souldiers, greedy of the abundance of the spoil which was in a readiness for them, would visit such Cities and Countries of his as were most famous for their Situation and Wealth, which thing he faid, confidering his effate, could not but turn at length to his advantage; his purpose was in a most fwift March to repair into the Defarts, and feeing the wtermost bounds of his Kingdom he might easily repair his

Losses, and levy new Powers to renew the War.

fel ha OU ifters

Ex.

bra-

ned

his

ent yn vill of

it

rd

15

Let therefore that greedy Nation (quoth he) take my Treasure, and satisfie their hunger with Gold, which shortly will revert to us again, and they and their spoils be one day ours. For (he faid) he had learned by Experience, that the flocks of Concubines and Eunuchs were nothing elle but burthens and impediments, which Alexander poifelling, and carrying about with him, it would at last debase him to that Esseminacy, as should render him inferiour to them, over whom he now was Victorious.

His Oration seemed to al! men to be full of Desperation; for they imagin'd thereby, that the richCity of Babylon should: begiven up to the Macedons, and Sufa shortly after, with all other Ornaments of the Realm, which were the cause of the War. But he proceeded, in perswading them, that men: in Advertity ought not to do things that thould feem goodly in the speaking, but necessary in the Experience: The: Wars were made with Iron, and not with Gold; with Men, and not with the Walls of Cities; for all things follow: them that are armed, and in ffrength. He told them, that: his Ancestours, Famous for their Archievements, were affiled after this manner in the beginning, and yet at last, repaired their Losses, and recovered their ancient Glory. After he had spoken these Words, either, for that they were: thereby encouraged, or elfe, that they rather obeyed his Authority, than liked his Counsel, they followed him into the bounds of Media; shortly after, Arbila was delivered. up to Alexander, which was full of Treasure, and precious Moveables; and befides, the pay of the whole Army was: left there, amounting to no lefs than four thoulaid Talents. The Sickness that begun in Alexander's Camp. arising from: the favour of the dead bodies; which we'e scattered over all the Field, was the Cause, that he sooner removed from The plain Country of Arabia, Famous for the: abundance of fweet odours there growing, lay upon the: right Hand, as they marched; and so rassing through the Country, lying between Tigris and Euthrates, which is fefat and plentiful a ground, that the Inhabitants are forced i to drive their Beafts from feeding, least a surfeit should de-Progy

G. 5

the

Me

fol

the

stroy them; the Cause of this Pertility, cometh from the Moissure, that issueth from both Rivers, sweating by Veins through the ground. Both these Rivers have their beginnings in the Mountains of Armenia, where they are distant twenty five hundred surlongs, and so run forwards, keeping their distance, till they come near to the bounds of Media and Gordia: for there by little and little, they draw more near together, leaving less space betwixt them. They inclose on both sides the Country, that is called Mesoporamia, from whence they run through the bounds of Babylon,

aud empty themselves into the Red Sea.

After Alexander had changed his Camp four times, he came to a City called Mennium, where there is a Fountain within a Cave, that belcheth out great plenty of Pitch; fo that it appears, the Babylonians had their Cement from thence, which they imployed about the making of their Walls of an incredible breadth and compass: As Alexander marched from thence towards Babylon, Mazaus, who had before fled from the Battle, came to meet him in a most suppliant manner, and committing his Children into his hands, he yielded himself, and rendred up the City: His coming was very grateful to the King, confidering how difficult an undertaking the Siege of so strong a City must have been, had it held out against him; and besides, Maraus was a man both Famous and Valiant, and much commended for his Atchievements in the last Battle; and that he conceived, his leading Example, would be a means to bring others to the same Submission. He received both him and his Children very courteoully; and yet gave order to his men, that they should enter into the City in such Array of Bartle, as if they were presently to fight. A great number of the Babylonians stood upon the Walls, defirous to behold him that was their new King, but the most part went forth to meet him. But Bagophanes, that was Caprain of the Caftle, and Keeper of the King's Treasure, because he would shew hin self to be no less affectonate towards Alexander, than Mazaus was, strowed all the ways where he should pass with Flowers and Garlands, and set Altars of eins gintant

eep-

sof

raw

hev

nta.

lon,

he

ain

fo.

m

ir ler

ad

oft is

is

A

4.

the

of Silver on both fides, with Frankincense burning upon them, and all other kind of fweet Odours. Next to him came droves of Beafts, great numbers of Horses, with Lyons and Pardals lying in their Dens, which he brought as Presents to offer to Alexander; and after them, the Wife Men, finging after their Country manner; the Chaldeans followed next, with their Divines and Prophets; and then the Musicians, with several kinds of Instruments, whose Office was to fing the Praises of their Kings, and the Chaldeans, to declare the motion of the Planets, with the Course and Revolution of Times and Seasons. Last, in order, came the Babylanian Horse-Men, whose sumptuous Furniture, both for themselves and their Horses, tended more to Voluptuousness and Delicacy, than to any Magnificence. Alexander that was inclosed about with armed Men, ordered that the Babylonians should come behind his Foot-men; and he riding aloft in his Chariot, entred into the City, and afterwards into the Palace, where the next day he furveyed Darius his Wardrobe, and his Treasures. Beauty and Pleafantness of that City, gave just Occasion, not only to Alexander, but to all Eves about him, to behold it with an unufual Admiration: Semiramis was the Founder thereof, or as some affirm, Belus, whose Palace is to be feen there. The Walls are made of Brick, cemented with Pitch; they are thirty two foot in breadth, fo that two Carts may eafily drive upon them in front; they are in height one hundred Cubits, and the Towers are ten foot higher than the Walls; the compass of the who e work about, is Three hundred fixty eight furlongs, I eing built (as it is left in memory) in so many days; the Housesfland the breadth of an Acre diffant from the Walls; they are contiguous Houses, inhabited by the space of ninety furlongs, in other places, not joyning near to one another, but for some Confiderations, so divided asunder. The restof the ground is fowed and tilled, to the inten-, That if any foreign Power come against them, they should be ables to sustain themselves, by the product of Fruit within themselves, the River of Euphrates runs through the midst of

de

n

C

d

the City, and is kept in on both fides, with Walls of wonderful Workmanship: But the great Channels and G verns made of Brick, and fastned with Pitch instead Mortar, and wrought low within the Ground, to receive the violence of the stream, exceed all the rest of the Works there made; for unless they were made so large and capacious as to receive the Water, when the stream over flows the Banks that are made to keep it in its Violence, would beat down the Houses of the City. There is all over the River a strong Bridge, which joyns both parts of the City together, accounted one of the most prodigious Works of the World; for because that Euphrates is so full of Oufe, there can hardly ground be found to lay the Foundation upon, and the stream besides, casts up such heaps of Sand against the Bridge, that it is an impediment for the water to pass, and therefore the River beats upon the Bridge with greater force, than if it had its free courfe.

There is also a Castle that is twenty furlongs about, the Towers whereof are thirty foot deep within the Ground, and fourscore soot in height above the Ground; where alto the Wonders are to be feen to often mentioned by the Greek Poets; for in the same are whole Groves of Trees, fet by wonderful Art, as if hanging in the Air, and so high as are the tops of the Towers; which Trees are marvelloufly beautiful and pleasant, through their height and shadow which they make. The whole weight of them is fustained and born up by huge Pillars, made of stone; upon which there is a Floor of square stone, able to uphold sufficient of antity of earth for the support of the Grove, and also, moissure and nutriment that waters and cherishes it; the Trees that grow thereupon are eight Cubits about, and as fruitful as if they grew on natural Earth. And although that process of time by little and little doth not only destroy things made with hands, but also the works of nature; ye, this work, notwithstanding it is oppressed with the Roots of fo many Trees, and burthened with the weight of so vast a Wood upon it, does yet remain unperiffed. of 1

G

ive

the

lad

er. ec,

le

of

ne

rished, being sustained with twenty broad Walls, distanteleven soot one from another. When these Trees are seen afar off, they seem to be a Wood growing upon a Mounmin. It is said, that the King of Syria, reigning in Bablin, erected this Fabrick to gratishe his Queen; who for the Love she had to Groves, and shadowy places, moved her Husband in doing thereof, to counterseit the pleasantness of Nature.

Alexander tarried longer here than in any other City, which corrupted more the Discipline of the Macedons in their Wars, than any other place, for nothing was more Licentious than the Manners and Customs of this City; nor was any other place more abundantly furnished of all things wherewith men are allured, and ftirred to excess of Pleasure. The Parents and Husbands are contented that their Children and Wives should for gain, embrace such strangers. as came amongst them: The Kings and Nobility of Persia. delight much in Plays and Banqueting; but the Babylonians are specially addicted to Wine and Drunkenness, where the Women use a Custom, that in the beginning of the Feaft, their Apparel seemeth Civil and Modest, but afterwards by little and little, they put of their uppermost Garments, and laying aside all Modesty, they at lastdiscover themselves naked; which vile Custom is not used by Harlots only, bur by all Women in general, who efteem making of their bodies common but Civility, and good manners. In this Voluptuousness the Conqueror of Asia wallowed by the space of thirty four days, whereby he became much the weaker for Gallant and Marshal Enterprizes, if there had been an Enemy to have flood against him; but to the intent, the damage should be the less perceived, he increased his power with a new supply out of Macedonia; for Amyntas the Son of Andromenes, brought him from Amipater fix thousand Foot-men, and five hundred Horsemen, and with them five hundred of the Thracian Horsemen, and thirty five thousand Foot-men of the same Nation; he had also out of Peleponnesus sour thousand Footmen, and four hundred eighty Horse-men, being all Mercenary.

eenary Souldiers: Ammt at also brought him fifty of the young Men of the Nobility of Macedonia, to attend upon Alexander's Person, whose Office it was to serve the King at Table, and to bring him his Horse when he went to Battle. They accustomed to be about when he hunted, and kept Warch by course at his Chamber door. These were they who afterwards proved great Captains, and out of whose Loins sprung great Commanders and Governours of Provinces.

Alexander constituted Agarhon Captain of the Castle of Babylon, with feven hundred Macedons, and three hundred Mercenary Souldiers, and left Minetas and Apollodorus Governours of the City, and Country; to whom he affigned two thousand Foot-men, and one thousand Talents, with Commission to levy more Souldiers. He made Magaus that gave the City into his hands Lieutenant of the whole, and caused Bagophanes that yielded up the Castle, to sollow him in his Wars. Armenia was given to Mithrenes that betrayed the City of Sardis; and to encourage his men to enterprize new Atchievements, he gave out of the Treasure of Babylon, to every Macedon Horseman five hundred Deneir, to every Horse-man of the Strangers five hundred, and to every Foot-man two hundred: when he had fet all these things in order, he came into the Country called Satrapene, which being plentiful of all things, and abounding in Vi-Auals, canfed the King to tarry the longer there.

And left Idleness should enseeble the Hearts, and debase the Courage of his men, he contrived a way to stir up their Spirits, and to keep them in Action, by appointing Judges to try out such as shewed themselves most Valian in the Wars, to whom he assigned rewards due to their defervings. There were eight found out, whose manhood appeared above the rest, and the charge of One thousand men was committed to every one of them, who were then called Chiliarchi; this was the first time they put One thousand into a Regiment, for before this, they were divided only into five hundred, the Command of which was not counted any great preferment, or reward of Service;

The

The number of them were great that came to plead their right, at this Court of Honour, who before the Judges that gave Sentence, brought in a Testimony of their Atchievements; whereby it could not be unknown, which of them had justly purchased such Honour or not: The first place was adjudged to the Elder Adarchias, where he chiefly did reftore again the Fight, when the young Souldiers had given it over: The second place of Honour was given to Antigenes, and Philotas Angeus obtained the third: The fourth was adjudged to Amyntas: The fifth to Antigonu, Amyntas the Son of Lyncestes, obtained the fixth; Theodorus the feventh, and Hellanicus the laft : He alfo profitably altered many things formerly used by his Predecessors, in the discipline of War; for whereas before the Horse-men of every Country, were in several Bands, under Leaders of their own Nation; he without respect of any Nation, appointed them fuch Captains as he thought expedient. And whereas at the removing of the Camp, warning was wont to be given, by a Trumpet; the found whereof in any Noffe or Tumult, could not be univerfally, and distinctly heard, he caused an high Pole to be always set up, before his Pavillion, on the Top whereot, an Enfign was fastened, apparent to all men: The other Tokens. which they observed, were Fire in the Night, and Smoak in the Day.

As he was marching towards Susa, Abulites that was fuler of that Region, either by Darius's Commandment, thinking either by reason of the spoil to divert Alexander, or by his own free will, sent his Son to meet him, profering the delivery of the City; the young man was courteously received, and by his conduct Alexander passed forward till he came to the River Hydaspes, which is esteemed to be a very delicate water: Abulites there met Alexander, with many, and Princely Gists; and presented him, amorgst other things, Dromedaries, that were wonderfully swift, with twelve Elephants, that Darius had sent for out of India, to be a terror to the Macedons, which now were become an increase to their strength. When

fu

the Riches of the Conquered, were delivered into the hands of the Conquerour, he found in that City an incredible Treasure; Fifty thousand Talents of Massie Silver uncoined; which riches gathered together in the space of many years, by diverse Kings for their Succession and posterity, came thus in a moment into the hands of a Foreign Prince.

Alexander being lodged within the Palace, fat down in Darius's Seat, which being higher than served for his Stature, by reason his feet could not reach to the Ground, one of the King's Pages put a Board for him underneath, to tread upon; wherear one of the Eunuchs that belonged to Darius, looked forrowfully, and fetched a deep figh; whose sadness when Alexander perceived, he inquired of him the cause; he answered, that when he beheld the Table whereon Darius was wont to eat, imployed to fo base ause, he could not behold it without Tears. Alexander being ashamed to violate the respect due to the Gods of Hospitality, and to debase that which before was had in fuch reverence, caused it to be taken away. But Philoton made request he should not do so, but rather take it as a divination of good luck and fortune; that the Table whereon his Enemy did eat, should now become his Foct ftool.

Alexander purposing from thence to pass into Persia, Committed the City of Susa to Archelaus, with three thousand Men of War; and to Zenophilus the charge of the Castle, leaving such Macedons as were Aged there in Garrison; but bestowed the keeping of the Treasure upon Callicrates, and restored to Abulites the Government and Principality of the Country of Susa; leaving within the City, the Mother and Children of Dazius. And as Alexander had at that time, pleasty of Cloth of Purple, sent him out of his Country; with Garments ready made after the Macedons Fashion, for the Honour he bare to Sysigambis to whom he paid a more than silial obedience; he thought good to present part of them to her, with the Persons that used to make them; beseeching her, if those Garments pleased.

re.

er'

of

00-

gn

in is

d,

lt,

d

of.

0

n

18

pleased her, she should accustom her Neeces to make the like, and give them for Presents. At the declaring of which Message, the Tears slowed down her Eyes, which declared the Gift not to be acceptable to her; for the Persian Ladies take nothing more in contempt, than to put their hands to Wooll. When it was told Alexander in what fort she had received his Present, he thought the rudeness meet to be excused, and her to be comforted,

therefore came to visit her, and faid:

This Garment which I wear, was not only the Gift, but the Works of my own Sifters hands: Our customs brought me into errour; therefore I desire you, that you will not misconstrue a fault, which was only a fin of Ignorance. I must that otherwise I have observed sufficiently all things which I knew to be your Customs. When I understood that it was not lawful for the Son to sit in his Mothers presence, except by her permission, I would never, whensoever I came into your presence, sit till you were pleased to command; you would often times have fallen down and worshipped me, but I would never suffer you, but have ever honoured you, giving you the name due to my

dear Mother Olympias.

When the King with these words had pacified her, he departed, and by four Encampings came to a River, the Country-men call Pasitigris; which springing in the Mountains of the Uxians, it runs fleep down amongst the Rocks, betwixt woody Banks, by the space of fifty Furlongs; but then descending into a Plain, it becomes Navigable, and focontinues with a more quiet stream, and in a softer Ground, by the space of Six hundred Furlongs, till such time as it falls into the Persian Sea. Alexander passing this River, with Nine thousand Footmen of the Macedons; with the Agrians, the Mercenary Greeks, and with Four thousand Thracians, whose Country lies nearest to Susa, and stretcheth out into Persia, leaving betwixt it and Sua narrow streight; Madathes had the rule of that Country, a man scarce to be marche at that time; for he determined to abide all extremities, for his duty fake; fuch.

10

M

her

the

the

hac Kit

the

Fo

the

10

Gi

for

OV

ma

an

or

Li

no

T

CI

ly

to

of

m

D

to

he

te

P

as knew the Country did inform Alexander, that there wa a privy way through the Mountains, whereby men might get to the furthermost fide of the Chief City of that Country; and if he would fend but a few that were light Amed, they might be brought to a place, where they should appear above their Enemies heads. This Counsel pleased him fo well, that he made those Councellours Guides for his Army, and committed them to Tauron, whom hear pointed chief of the enterprize: He affigned to him Fifteen hundred Mercenary Souldiers, and One thouland Agrian; with whom, after the Sun was gone down, he began his Jour ney: Alexander in the third Watch removed his Camp, and by the break of day, had paffed the Streights; there he fet his men in hand, for the cutting down of Timber, for the making of Scaling Turrers, and all such other things as pertained to the Affault of a City; and so began his It was a difficult matter to make the approach; the City stood so high, and the Rocks and passages were so craggy, that the Souldiers were repulsed, and received many Wounds; contending both with the Enemies, and the Situation of the place: Notwithstanding they gave it not over, by reason the King was always amongst the foremost, asking if they were not ashamed, being the Conquerors of fo many Ciries, to be fo long in the winning of fmall Castle, so obscure and unknown in the World. Ashe was advancing and preffing forward in the Front, the Enemies made several shots at him, with Darts, and Arrows from the Walls; but the Souldiers defended him with their Targets, because they could not perswade him thence; at length Tauren on the other fide, appeared with his Troops above the Castle of the City; at whose fight his Enemies Hearts fainted, and the Macedons more fircely did affail them; when they faw themselves in this extremity, and perceiving their power not able to withstand the Macedons, there were diversity of resolutions amongst them; for some were determined to die, and many to fly away, but the greatest part retired themselves into the Castle; from whence they sent to Alexander, thirty Embafladours 5. 五年月 年 9. 点

ap co

ns;

11.

P.

re

Ţ,

24 15

d

C

C

į,

affedors to ask mercy; but he returned a fad Answer to fem. That there was no pardon to be obtained at his unds: Whereupon they being reduced to this manifest langer and extreamity, and excluded from all other Renedies; sent to Sysigambie, by a privy way, unknown to heir Enemies; imploring her intercession to Alexander or the pacifying of his rigour towards them; in her only her put their hope, knowing how much Alexander loved her; and that he esteemed her, as if she had been his Mother; and they thought she would the rather encline to their suplication, because Madathes that was Captain there, had Married her Sifters Daughter, whereby he became a Kinfman to Darius: Sysigambis stood long in denial of their request; telling them, that it agreed not with her Forume, to become an interceffour for others; adding thereunto, that she feared least she might misuse his Fayours, and make him weary of her importunities; for the faid, that she had more remembrance, that she was a priforer than that she was a Queen: But at length she was overcome; with their Sollicitations, and by her Letters, made intercession to Alexander, after such fort, that the first excused her self for daring to make this suit to him, and afterwards befought him that he would pardon them. orat the least forgive her being Petitioner, only for the Life of fuch a one as was her Friend and Kinfman; and now! no longer an Enemy, but in readiness to submit himself. This one thing is sufficient, to declare the Moderation and Clemency, that was then in Alexander; for he did not only pardon Madathes, but left the City untouched, granting to all that were within it, their Liberty, with Enjoyment of their Lands and Goods, without paying any Tribute; more than this fhe could not have obtained, even from Darius her own Son.

When he had thus subdued the Uxians, he united them to the Province of Susa, and purposing to pass forwards; hedivided his Army into two parts, whereof he committed the one to Parmenio, to be conducted through the Plain Country; and referving such a part as was pestered

n

least with Baggage, he rook the way to the Mountain which with a continual ridge runneth out in length from thence to Persia; the fifth day he entred into the Streight of Pyla Sufia, which were defended by Ariobarganes with Fifteen thousand Footmen, who on the Tops of the high and craggy Rocks, that hang over on both fides of the way; at the first kept themselves quiet on purpose, pretending a fear, till such time as the Army was entred the narrowest Streights: But when they faw the Macedons pass on forwards, in contempt of them; then they threw down Stones of an extraordinary Bulk, upon their head which striking upon the undermost Rocks, and there break king in pieces, rebounded amongst the Macedons, falling with fuch violence, that they diffressed whole Regiment at once; and besides this, they did them great damage, with shot of Arrows and Stones, that they cast out of Slings. But as they were men of courage, they were not so much terrifyed, and dismaid, at the apprehensioned Death and Destruction that compassed them round, as that they flould be flain after fuch a manner, like Beally caught in a Pie, without any hopes or possibility, of being revenged upon their Enemies ; their Wrath hereupon, wa turned into fuch Rage, that they ran up against the Rock, and there enforced themselves by taking hold, and by heaving up of one another, to mount up to their Enemies But when they had caught hold of some outward part, and thereby laboured to ascend; by force of so many hands that fastened to it at once, they pulled in sunder that pan of the Rock they held by, and fo fell down all together; in this Case they could neither remain, go forwards, nor yet defend themselves, by any device they could make with their Targets, seeing the Stones were of such weight, that were thrown down upon them: Alexander was in great trouble of mind, not only for the Grief he received by the Destruction of his Men; but much more for shame, that he had so rashly brought his men into such a danger ous straight; he had been invincible till that day, and never before attempted any thing in vain; he had passed the Streights W.

ains, from

ights

with high

the

pre-

the

país

rew

ads.

rea

ling

ana

ige,

of

not '

1 of

har .

after ing

PAS

ks.

by es.

nd

ids

art

in

yet

th

ht,

in

ed

ıe,

er.

16-

he

ts.

Streights of Cilicia, without damage, and opened to himfelfa new way by Sea, into Pamphilia, which felicity of his feemed to be now at a flay, nor could he perceive any other remedy, than to return by the way he came. He caused the retreat therefore to be sounded, and gave order to his Souldiers to go close together; and by casting their Targets over their Heads, to return the same way they came, having then Marched thirty Furlongs within the Streights. When he had dis-intangled himfelf, and came to plant his Army in an open place, and began to consult what measures to take, and which way to move, such a Superstition invaded his mind, that he called for the Priests and Diviners to help the matter by their Invocations; but Aristander (to whom he gave most considence) could do nothing in this case: Alexander therefore condemning their Sacrifices which he thought then unseasonably made, called for such as knew the Country; they shewed him another way, that was plain and open enough, but yet he liked it not, he was fo ashamed to leave his Souldiers unburied that were slain; for amongst all other Ceremonies observed in the Discipline of their Wars, there was not any more religiously kept than the Burying of the Dead; he cansed therefore such Prisoners as were lately taken to be called before him, amongst whom there was one (expert both of the Greek and Persian Tongue) who demonstrated to the King, that he laboured in vain if he thought to convey his Army over the tops of those Mountains, which (he said) began at Mount Caucasus, and closed in the one side of Persia by the space of fixteen hundred Furlongs in length, and one hundred and forty in breadth, till such time as they descended to the Red-sea, which makes another fence, where the Mountains terminated the Country lying at the foot of the Mounrains, he described to be plain, fruitful, and replenished with many fair Cities and Villages, and that the River of Araxes running through it, falls into another River called Medus, bringing with it the Tributes of many smaller Streams, which Medus being a much less River than that which

144

which it receives, runs from thence towards the South No place could be more abundant of Grafs, the Riveren where cloathing with Flowers, what it hath beden with its Waters: The River was shadowed over with Por lar and Plantain Leaves, which by reason they stand some what high, and the Water runs low in a deep Channel feem to fuch as are a far off, to be Woods adjoyning to Mountains. He accounted no Country in Afia to be min wholesome, or to have a more temperate Air than the both by reason of shadowy Mountains that evermore ken off the heat, and the Neighbourhood of Sea on the off hand, which with a constant temperature does nourish Ground.

When the Prisoner had made a description of the Comtry after this manner; the King enquired of him whether he knew those things by report, or else had seen the with his eyes. He replyed, he had been a Herdiman, and knew the Country very well, and all the Paffages, and that he had been twice taken Prisoner, once by the Pers ans in Lycia, and now the fecond time by him. Uponthe words, Alexander called an Oracle to Memory ; it was in nified to him, that a Lycian should be his Guide into Pa sia; wherefore promising to him such Rewards as the profent necessary required, and were fit for a person of his Condition to receive, he ordered him to be armed after the Macedons manner, and to be their Guide to fhew then the way; which way though he had declared to be fireight and difficult, yet Alexander made no doubt to pass it with a small number, thinking it no difficult matter to pass the place for his Glory, which the Herdiman had passed of ten times for the profit of Pasture. Then the Guide continued to alledge the difficulties of the way, especially for fuch as wear Arms. But the King answered him, taken for furety, not one of them that are appointed thee hall refuse to follow where thou shalt lead.

That done, he left Craterus with the charge of his Camp and he himself passed forwards with such Footmen as were accustomed to his Person with those Bands, of whom Me

South.

CIGI

CWO

Pop

fone.

Hanne

tothe

More

this

ken othe

hthe

Coun-

ether them

and Perf

chese

s fig.

Pa.

pre-

after

hem

ight

with that

l of-

confor

me

hall

mp, rere

Me

iget

leaser had charge, and with a thousand Archers on Horsebacks leaving first order with Craterus that he should keep his Camp in the same form it had been used before, and cased many Fires to be made on purpose that the Enemies might rather think the King to be there still present. He dviled him farther, that if he perceived Ariobarganes to per knowledge of his enterprize, and fo to fend power to the stopping of his passage, that then by pretending of an Affailt upon the remaining part of the Enemy, he should mike all the Terrour he could into his Enemies, and thereby draw them back to the defence of their Party. But that the himself should deceive his Enemies and recover the Hill upon them, that then, upon the hearing of the Alarm in the Camp of the Persians, preparing themselves to refifthim, he should not doubt to pass that way from whence they were repulsed the day before, judging they should find no refistance, the Enemies power being then all united against him; in the third Watch he set forward in great filence without founding of Trumper, and paffed on by fuch a way as was fhewed him: By the way, every Souldier that was light arm'd carrying three days Provision. But when he was on his way befides the wild Rocks, and rough Stones that caused them oft to fail their footing, the Show (driven by the Wind) much incommoded them in their Journey, for they fell divers times into Pits, and fuch as endeavoured to pull them out were often times themfelves drawn after. The Night alfo, with the Country unknown, and the Guide, of whose truth they doubted, increased much their fear, confidering, that if they should not deceive their Enemies Watch, they should be taken and perish like Beasts. They considered also, that both their fafety and the Kings depended on the Fidelity of a Priloner.

At length they came to a Mountain where the way to Ariobarzanes lay on the right hand, where he sent before, under the guiding of fuch as he had taken Prisoners, Philoton, Conus, Amyntas, and Polypercon, with a Band of the lightest armed, whom he advised, That for as much as they

1

O

m

of

W

th

ye

of

fin

had both Horsemen and Footmen, and the Country serile and abundant in Forrage, that they should make no haste but pass forwards fair and eafily; and he with the Esquire of his Body, and the Band of Horsemen, whom they called Agema, was guided by another By-path far off from the place where his Enemies kept their Watch; but the Pa fage was fo streight, and fo hollow, that they suffered green trouble and vexation in passing through: It was now Midday, and they were so wearied, that of necessity, they must take rest, having sofar to go as they had travelled already only that the way was not altogether fo difficult and rough he refreshed therefore his Men with Meat and Sleep, and in the second Watch rose up and passed the rest of his Journey without any great difficulty faving in that pur where the Mountain began to make a descent towards the Plain; their Passage was there suddenly stopped by a great Gulph occasioned by the violence of the Stream that m down the Mountains, which had worn away the earth; and besides, the Trees standing so thick, and the Boughs being entangled one within another, appeared before them &: continual Hedge. When they saw themselves stayed after this manner, such desperation fell amongst them that they could scarcely abstain from Tears, the darkness being great increase of their Terrour, seeing they could not enjoy any benefit of the Stars; for what light foever they gave was intercepted by the thickness and shadow of the Trees; and the use of the Ear could not serve for one to receive counsel and comfort from another, the Wind whirling among the Leaves, and the shaking of the Boughs making an amazing noise. But at length the approach of day difmist the Terrour that the darkness of the Night had made: Then by fetching a little compass about, they passed the hollow Gulph, and every man began to be a Guide to himfelf: At last they got upon the top of the Hill from whence they might behold their Enemies in their Camp. Then the Macedons shewed themselves stoutly in their Armour, appearing suddenly on their Backs, when they mistrusted no fuch thing. All fuch as durst make any opposition were instantly

tile

ffe,

led

the

Paf.

eat

10-

wit

dy, gh,

his

art he

eat

an nd

ng

1

er

ey

Ŋ.

re

e

g

Ĉ

C

intendy cut to pieces, fo that on one part the cries of the Dring, and on the other, the miserable Shrieks of such as reft to flight without making any refistance: When the Alarm was once heard in the Camp where Craterus lay, the Army instantly moved forward to pass the Streights in the which they were repulsed the day before. Philotos also with Polypercon, Canus, and Amyntos, who were gone the other way, arrived at the same time, and gave a new Terrour to their Enemies : When the Persians faw their Advetfaries affailing them from all parts at once, though her were so opprest with their sudden Invasion, that ar the first they stood staggering between doubt and confusion, yet at length they roused up their fainting Spirits, neceffity giving new Edges to their Courage, and fought manfully; for oftentimes despair is the cause of good hope, they being unarmed closed with those that were armed, and with the weight of their Bodies pulled their Enemies to the Earth, and killed divers with their own Weapons. Ariobarzanes with forty Horsemen and five thousand Foormen that kept about his Person, brake through the Battle of the Macedons to the great flaughter of his own Men and his Enemies, and by making hafte recovered Persepolis the chief Giry, of the Country; but being denied entrance by those that kept the City, rallying his flying Companions, and making once more head against the Enemy he fell, and ded fighting.

By that time Craterus, that made all the speed he could, was come up with them: Alexander sortified his Camp in the same place, where he had beaten his Enemies; for though they were all sled, and he certain of the Victory, yet because he sound his way stopped in many places with greabland deep Ditches, he thought good to use circumfection, and not to pursue too rashly, not so much by sear of his Enemies force, as of any Ambush, into which the difficulty of his passage might instance him. As he was passing forwards, he received Letters from Tyridates the Keeper of Darius's Treasure, signifying that the Inhabitants of

11

Perferolis

i

.

1

2 0 10

,

Persepolis hearing of his coming, were about to spoil he Treasure, and that therefore he should prevent to, forth way was ready enough norwithstanding the River Aram interposed. There was no Vertue in Alexander morecom mendable than his Celerity, which he shewed especially in this, for leaving his Footmen behind, he travelled Night with his Horsemen, and by day light came to the River of Araxes, where he found many Villages and How fes, whose Timber being taken down, a Bridge was mild in a moment by the help of Stones which were found inthe bottom of the River. When Alexander had passed the liver, and came near to the City, a Company met him h miserable, as the cruelty of Fortune scarce ever match? They were Greeks, to the number of four Thou fand, whom the Persians heretofore had taken Prisoners and afflicted with divers kinds of Torments; for fome of them had their Feet cut off, fome their Hands, fome their Ears, but all were marked in the fielh with hor Iron The Persians having maimed and deformed them after this manner, kept, and preserved them still, as a Barbarous Trophy both of their Victory and Dispute against that Na tion. But when they faw they should come under the obdience of another Prince, they fuffered the Greeks to men Alexander; they seemed rather to be Spectres than men; fcarce any thing of humanity could be difcern'd or known but their Voices. The Compassion of their wretched elast caused the Beholders to let fall no fewer Tears than they did themselves. They were all so hideously mangled, this though they were so many different marks of outrage and inhumanity; yet it could scarce be diffinguished which of them were most miserable: But when they had crye out before Alexander, that Jupiter the Revenger of Great had opened their Eyes in beholding him that should delive them, they judged then all their Griefs as one: Alexandr wiped the Tears from his Eyes, and bad them be of good cheer, for that they should both see their Country and their Friends; and then he encamped at the same place, where Fx mer them, being two furlongs from Perfepolis. The Greeks

the

th

ain OTH

y in

all

the

low ifed

the

Bi-

n fo bit

100

CIS,

e of

veir

ORS. this

eus

Nabe-

cet

CII;

OW

ate hey

hát

and ich

red

ect

ver det

box

eir

ere he

eks

Mall

Greeks drew themselves together, to consult what was best for them to demand of Alexander, and when some were of opinion to ask dwelling places within Asia, and others had more mind to return into their Countries: Euctemon the Cymaan spake thus to them, We that even now were ahamed to put our heads out of the Prison, and Darkness we were in, even to beg the very Charity, and Bread that kept us fom starving, are guilty of such simplicity, that we presently define to carry, and expose to Greece, as an Objest of their Mirth and Derision, our Maims and Deformities, whereof we have as much cause to be ashamed as to be grieved, those bear their miseries bost, who can find the means to hide them most, and there is no Country so familiar to men that be unfortunate as solitariness, and a total Oblivion of what they have been before: For they that fet a value upon the Pity and Compassion of Friends, know not how soon their Tears may dry up, and no man can faithfully love those he contemns, for acalamity of her own Nature is full of complaint, so Felicity it always proud, and every one covets his own Fortune, when be Judges of his Neighbours; for except we had all of us been equal sharers in Miseries, there is scarce one here amongst us that had not long ere this been weary of each other: What marvel wit then, that Men in Felicity seek always their Equals? my Opinion is therefore, that we (who as Men long ago were dead in this Life) feek us a place wherein we may hide our maimed Members, and where exile may conceal our borrid Deformities; if we shall return into our Country in this deplorable State. bow can we be but unwelcome to our Wives, whom we married young? or shall our Children, or our Brethren now acknowledge m, being the Vomits of fo many Prisons? and though all things fould there succeed as we could wish, yet how small a number of is are able to travel through so many Countries? how is it possible for us, that are here banished into the uttermost bounds of the Orient, being aged, impotent, and maimed, to endure those Travels which have wearied Men, who have been both Armed and Conquerours? It is farther to be considered, What hall become of our Wives, whom chance and necessity hath here procured us, for the only comfort of our Imprisonment? What

H 2

Thall we do with our Children? Shall we take them with we or leave them behind us? if we return with such as we have here, none of those in Greece will acknowledge us; and sall we then be so mad to leave those Comforts we have alread, being uncertain whether we shall arrive at those which we do sire or not; verily, much better it were for us to conceal or selves amongst them who began their acquaintance with us in

BOOK

our Mifery.

These were Euglemon his words; but Theatus the Aire. nian reasoned to the contrary: There is no Honest, or Wife man (quoth he) that will efteem us by our out ward shape, seeing that our Calamity is not the worked Nature, but the Cruelty of our Enemies; such as area fhamed of the injuries of Fortune, are well worthy to he fer those wrongs they blush at: They give a grievous Sentence upon the State of Mans Mortality, and dispair much of Mercy, who deny their Compassion to men in misery. Now therefore, fince the Gods have offered you -what you durst never have wisht; for that is your Country, your Wives and your Children; the very thing which men esteem more than Life, and redeem oftentimes with Death, Why do you remain in doubt or dispute, for the enjoyment of those Blessings, to break out of this Imprisonment? I judge the Air of our own Country, most natural to us, where there is another manner of Living other Customs, other Religion, and another Tongue; which for the pleasantness of it, is Covered of the Barba rous Nations: What great things then be those, which you would willingly leave the want of, which only is the cause of your Misery. My opinion is plain, that we visit our Country, and our home, and to refuse so great ahe nifit, as Alexander has proffered us; if any be detained with the love of fuch Wives and Children, as they have gotten here in Servitude; let such be no impediment w others that fet a higher, and juster value on their natural

There were but few of this Opinion, for Custom, that isd greater force than Nature, prevailed in that point; they

agreed

th us

have I shall

read.

re de

el our

Athe.

t, or

Out-

rkof

rea-

fuf-

VOUS

pair

n in

YOU,

oun-

hich

vith

for

Im-

hon

ing,

ue;

ba-

ich

the

he-

ed

PC

to ral

of

agreed therefore to demand of Alexander, the Gift of some place to inhabit in, and chose out a hundred to be Petitioners to him, in that behalf; when Alexander perceived them coming towards him, thinking that they would have required, what he had conceived, he said unto them:

I have appointed to every one of you, Beafts to carry you, and to each man a Thousand Deneirs; and when you shall come to Greece, I will so well provide for you, that, excepting your missortune, no man shall think his

Condition better than yours.

To this profer of the Kings, they returned no answer, but with Tears in their eyes, kept their dejected looks won the Ground; which moved Alexander to enquire the cause of that heaviness; then Eutlemon rehearsed again those words, in effect, which he had spoken before in Council: The King therefore pitying no less their demand, than he dd their misfortune, commanded three thousand Deneirs begiven to every one of them; and Ten fuits of Apparel, with Cattle, and Corn; whereby they might Till, and Sowe the Land, that should be appointed to them-The next day he affembled, all the Captains of his Army mether; and represented to them, that there was no City more Enemy to the Greeks, than that which was the dief Seat of the Antient Kings of Persia; from whence all the great Enemies had been sent for into Greece: How Darius first, and after him Xerxes, had come out of that place, to move their unjust War against Europe, with the estruction of which City, he thought good to revenge the Blood of his Predecessours; the Inhabitants had abandond that City, and fled where their fear had driven them. Whereupon the King straightway brought in all the Phato the Spoil of it: He had before that time won many Cities, some by force, and some by Composition, that were full of Riches, and Princely Treasure; but the abundance of that City, exceeded all the rest, as being the place where the Persians had laid up all their substance: Gold and Silver was found in heaps, and rich Habiliments,

H

and

and Furniture of Houses; not only for necessity, but for excess and oftentation; which was so great, that it gave theConquerours occasion to fight for it amongst themselve each taking other for their Enemies that had gotten the richeft Spoil. The abundance there was such, that they could not imploy the Riches which they found; but when they faw things of value, they esteemed them, rather than took them away. At last every one of them covering to have a part of every thing; tore and rent a funder the Princely Robes, and the precious Plate of curious workmanship, with the Images of Gold and Silver, which were plucked in pieces, as every one caught hold, nothing was left untoucht, nor nothing carried away whole, cruely bearing no less rule than Covetousness; every one was fo laden with Gold and Silver, that they esteemed their Prisoners not worth the keeping, but killed such as at find they spared in hope of gain. There were many therefore that prevented their Enemies by a voluntary death, and divers Cloathing themselves in their precious Appare leaped down from the Walls, with their Wives and Children; certain there were that fet their own Houses on Fire, which they foon expected their Enemies would do, and burned themselves and Family together. At length the King forbid any violence to be offered to Women, and that no Man should meddle with any thing perraining to The Sum of Money taken within the City, was greater than Humane Faith can well Credit; but either we must doubt with others, or else believe what hath been recorded to posterity, That the Treasure there found, amounted to One hundred and twenty thousand Talents; which Treature Alexander defign'd to imploy in his Wars: He caus'd Horses and Camels to be brought from Susa and Babylon, to convey it away. The taking of the City of Persagadis; wherein was found, Six thousand Talents, was an Increase to this Sum; which City being built by Cyrus, was yielded up by Gobates, who had the Government thereof.

at for

gave lves

the

they

hen

ther

ting

the

ork-

cre

Was

elev

6

icir irft

r

d

0

ls

r

MONTH OF NE

Alexander left in the Castle of Persepolis, Three thousand Maredons in Garrison, under Nicarides, Captain of the ime, and referv'd to Tyridates that deliver'd him the Treaare the same Honour that he injoy'd with Darius; leavin this City, the greater part of his Army, with his Carires, under the Command of Parmenie and Craterus. with a Thousand Horse-men, and a select Band of Footmen, without any Baggage, went to visit, in the Winter seaon the inward parts of Persia, in which expedition he much incommoded by Storms and Tempests, that were in a manner involerable; but yet he advanced forand in his enterprize to the place defign'd. In his March became into a Country that was cover'd with Snow, and Frozen by the violence of the great Cold. The Melandoly fight of formuch solitude, and so unpassable a Wildemels, put the Souldiers that were wearied with Trael into such a Terrour, that they imagined they had the uttermost bounds of the World, for when they held all things wafte, and no fign appearing of the Habiation of Men, they were amazed, and supplicated Alexade to return again. The King would not chaffife them. bring in this Terrour, but leaped from his Horse, and marchdon Foot before them on the Snow and the Ice; which thing when his Friends saw, they could not chuse but follow: Then the Captains did the like, and finally the Souldiers. The King was the first that made himself a wey, by breaking the Ice with a Pick-axe, whose example, the rest did follow; at length having passed the deloate Woods, they found here and there, some appearance of Habitation, and discovered flocks of Sheep; when the Inhabitants, who dwelled in the Cottages, dispersed thereabouts, saw Armed men advancing, whom they indged to be their Enemies; thinking they had been inclosed about, they flew such as were not able to follow them, and fled themselves to the Mountains that were full of Snow. But at length, by their Communication with such as they took Prisoners, their wildness was somewhat: mitigated, and they yielded themselves to Alexander, who

H 4

0

Do be had be

thi

6

ot

at

CI

1

hi

W

tt

2

did them no hurt at all. When he had conquered all the part of Persia, and brought the Towns under his Obedience he came into the Country of the Warlike Mardians, who did differ much from the rest of the other Persians in their manner of living. They with their Wives and Children di themselves Caves in the Mountains, and feed upon the fel of Sheep, and wild Beafts. Nor had the Women any Ap pearance or Disposition, more gentle or mild than the Men, their shagged Hair hung down before upon their Faces, and their Garments reacht but to their Kneess the Bands of their Slings were Fillets for their Fore-heads which they used both for Ornament and Defence. This Nation for all their uncivility, could not escape from be ing subdued, with the same force of Fortune that other were; so that on the Thirtieth day after he depand from Persepolis, he returned to it again: Then he gave rewards to his Friends, and to all the rest according to their deservings, distributing in a manner all the riche which he found within that City. But all the excellent Vertues of his mind, his Princely Qualities, wherein he excelled all Kings; that confiancy in all dangers; that deterity in contriving and performing all enterprizes, the keeping of his promise with those that submitted, his Cle mency to Captives, and temperance in lawful and acces flomary pleasures, were all defaced through the intolerable defire, and delight he had in rest and drinking; for not withstanding that his Enemy, which contended with him for Empire, did make then great Levies to renew the War, and with all Application imaginable was go thering his power together, and although the People newly conquered were not yet in a quiet subjection, yet he gave himself continually to Feasting and Banqueting where Women were ever present, not such to whose vertue and Chastity men paid an observance and veneration; but Harlots who had in the Camp, more liberty than befeemed the Discipline of men of War.

Amongst the rest, there was one Thais, who one day in her Drunkenness, affirmed to Alexander; that he should

that nce, who heir dig hehe the

ads, This

be

ners red ave to hes ent

ihe ile

ot-ich

WIL

et

gi r-

6-

d

thars

wonderfully win the favour of the Greeks, if he would command the Palace of Persepolis to be set on Fire; the Destruction whereof (she said) they greatly defired, as being the Seat of the Kings of Persia; which in times past, had destroyed so many of their Cities. When the Drunken Harlot had given her Sentence, a second, and a third (they being likewise Drunk) confirmed her words. Alexander, who then had in him more inclination to heat than Patience, fild, why do we not then revenge Greece, and fet this City or Fire? They were all high with Wine, and rose immediately upon those words to burn that City in their Drunkenness, which in their Arms, and the very fury of War hey had spared. The King himself first, and after him his Guests, his Servants, and his Concubines, set Fire on the Palace, which being built for the most part of Cedar, was fuddainly on a flame; when the Army that was encamped near the City beheld the Fire, which they thought had been kindled by some casuality, they came running to quench it: But when they approach'd, and faw the King himself there present, lighting and cherishing the Fire, they poured out the Water which they brought, and addressed themselves to hasten the Constagration.

Thus the Palace that was the head of the whole Orient, from whence so many Nations before had setched their laws, the Seat of fo many Kings, once the only terrour of Greece, that had fet forth a Navy of ten thousand Ships, and Armies that over-run Europe; who made Bridges over the Sea, and undermined Mountains to let in Scas, was confumed, and had his end, and never rose again in all. the Ages that did enfue; for the Kings of Macedonia made choice of other Cities, which are now in the hands of the Parthians. The Destruction of this City was such, that the Foundation thereof at this day cannot be found, but that the River of Araxes shews where it stood, which was distant from Persepolis twenty furlongs, as the Inhabitants rather do believe than know. The Macedons were afficmed that so noble a City was destroyed by their King in his Drunkenness; yet at length, it was reputed a works

H. 5

E

per

cit

L

H

M

m

60

pa

that carried gravity in the performance, and they were content to think it expedient that the City should have been so destroyed. But it is certain, that when Alexander had taken his rest, and was better advised; he repented him of this deed, and said, That the Greeks had suffered more barbarity from the Persians, had Alexander reigned in Xerxes stead. The next day he gave thirty Talents for a reward to him that was his guide into Persia, and from thence he advanced sorwards into Media, where a new supply of Souldiers, of whom Plato of Athens had the Conduct, came to him out of Cilicia, being five hundred

Foot-men, and a thousand Horse-men.

When he had by this means increased his Power, he determined to pursue Darius, who was come to Echatana. the head City of Media, which City is now in the Pollellion of the Parthians, and defigned from thence to have passed into Ballria; but searing to be prevented by the speed which his Enemies made, he altered his purpole and his Journey. Alexander was not come near by fifty hundred furlongs, but he could not think any distance fulficient to defend him against his celerity, and therefore prepared himself rather to fight than to fly. He had with him thirty thousand Foot-men, amongst whom there were four thousand Greeks, whose fidelity never failed even in his worst of Fortune. He had also four thousand Arches and Slingers, besides thirry three hundred Baltrian Hosle men which were under Beffus's Charge, being Governour both of the City of Baltria and the Country. with those Forces withdrew a little from the high way, and commanded such as had charge of the Carriage, to pass on before: He called a Council, where he spoke to If Fortune had matched me with Gowards, and with fuch as preferred a Vile Life before an Honourable Death, I would rather have held my Peace, than at this instant consume Words in vain; But I have had greater Experience than I could wish, both of your Valour and Fidelity towards me, so that for my part, oight rather to pride my felf in being Worthy to have such Friends as you are, than to doubt whether you it remail

re re

M.

W.

he ed

he

14.

VC.

he ofe ity

re.

th

re in

TS

M.

W

ly,

to

to

nd

b,

eld

tl

main the same Men towards me you were before: For of so thousands that were under my Empire, you only have foland adhered to me. Though I have been twice overthrown be Field, and twice inforced to By; your Fidelity and Constancy makes me think that I still remain a King, Trayters and Fugitives do reign in my Cities; not that they are thought worthy of such Honour, but that you might be allured by their Rewards to be corrupted into their revolt against me. Notwithflanding you have chosen rather to follow me in my Misfortime, than be partakers of the Felicity of the Conquerours. You me Worthy, whom the Gods hall reward if I do not, as undoubtedly they will. There can no Posterity be so silent, nor Fame fo Ungrateful, which (ball not with due Commendations Extol you to the Stars. Though I had entertained some thoughts of flight, to which my heart never agreed; yet I have now conaned such a Considence of your Vertue and Manhood, that I' perpose to advance against my Enemy: How long shall I remain: as banished Man within my own Dominion, and fly from a. brange and foreign Prince, within the bounds of my own Kingdon? When may I by hazarding the Battle, either recover what I have lost, or else die an Honourab'e Death? Except? peradventure it seems better to some Men, that I should submit. my felf to my Enemies Pleasure, and by the Example of Mazzus and Mithrenes, receive by Petition the Dominion of some me Nation; wherein I judge that Alexander had rather follow. the Inclination of his Glory, than of his Revenge. No, letthe Gods never grant, that it may lie in the power of Man, wher to take away, or give me this Diadem upon my head.,. m that I lose this Empire, so long as I have breath. For this: I am resolved, That my Life and my Kingdom shall end both together. If this Mind, if this Resolution remain in you, there: is none of you that can want Liberty, there is none that shall be compelled to endure the Arrogancy of your Enemies. Every: Man's right hand (hall give to himself either a revenge, or an end of his Evils. I my self am an Example of Fortunes Inconstancy; and therefore it is not without Cause that I look for abetter change. And if the worst fall out, that the Gods take part against the Righteous side, even in our Wars that are law

fill

ful and honest, yet this cannot be denied; but that the how and valiant may honourably die. I require and conjure you, if the Honour of our Predecessors, who with such Fame and the ry, have possessed the Kingdoms of the whole Orient; by this went to whom Macedon sometimes was Tributary, by so man Naries of Ships sent into Greece, and by so many Victories must hat we will assume such Courage, as may seem Worthy of you not not be extrast and Original; and that with the same Constancy of mind wherewith you have endured things past, you attempt what soever Fortune shall produce hereafter. I am rest wed for my part, to purchase to my self a perpetual Fame, in ther by Victory, or by some notable adventure in the sight.

When Darius had spoken these Words, the Representation of the present danger so amazed them all, that they were not able, either to declare their advice, or so speak a word, till such time as Artabasus, the most ancient of his Friends (who formerly had been with King Philip)

began to declare his Resolution.

We are come into the Field (quoth he) adorned with all our most precious Apparel, and richest Armour, to follow on Prince to War and Victory, and as we neither despair of Con-

quest, so do me not refuse to die.

To those Words all the rest with one Voice seemed to agree, faving Nabarzanes, who being present in that Councel with Bessus, and of his Opinion conspired a Treason To Prodigious, that the like hath feldom been heard of: Their Determination was by force of the Souldiers they had under their Charge, to put their King in hold; with this purpose, That if Alexander pursued them, to deliver him then slive into his hands; thereby to ingratiate his favour as a Service which they judged would be highly at ceptable. But if they could escape conveniently, then they were in the mind to kill Darius, and dividing the Kingdem betwixt them, renew again the War against the Macedons. This Frecrable parricide having been long fince defigned between them, Nabarzanes thought this an Occasion to make a preparative to his wicked Intent, by these Sentiments which he uttered. Iam

TAVE

66

ebele

many

MOH.

PORT

ftan-

u at.

reful-

ei-

en-

that

r to

ent

lip)

all

OUT

on-

to.

unloa

of:

ich

rer fa-

IC.

en he

n

m

I am confident (faid he) that what I have to fay at the appearance will not be grateful to your, Ears: but Phylici-Medicines: and Ship-Masters, when they fear a Ship-mrack, hally redeem such things, as may be saved, with the Defrustion and lois of the rest; yet the Persuasions I intend to we are not to your detriment, but an Expedient by what means nu may preserve your self and Kingdom. We make a War wherein the Gods feem manifestly to be armed against us, and Fortune ceases not obstinately to pursue us: it is requisite therefore that we lay new Foundations, and feek out new Measures. My Opinion is, that you deliver up your Kingdom into some Man's bands who shall have the name of King, so long as your Enemies continue in Asia, but when by his Prowess he shall have repulfed 'em from thence, (which reason tells us will be in a short time) when once Victorious, he shall restore you your Kingdom again. The Country of Bactria is get untouched; the Indians and Sacans continue their Allegiance: So many Prople, 6 many Armies, fo many Thousands of Horse-men and Foot-men have their Forces in Readiness to renew this War: So that a much greater force remains, than that which the War has consumed. Why do we then like Beasts, wilfully run to a Defruction that is not Necessary? It is the Principle of Men of Courage, rather to despise Death, than to hate Life; and after too long suffering even Cowards themselves sometimes take heart; but Vertue leaving nothing unproved, and Death being the end of all things, it is sufficient if we go not to it like Sluggards: Therefore if we shall go into Bactria, which is now our next and safest refuge, Let us, for the present, make Bessus our King, who is already ruler of that Country; and when the Affairs are once brought to a period, he shall resign up his great Trust, and restore you your Empire again as his rightful Sove-

Although Darius perceived nor the greatness of the Mischief that lay hidden under his wicked Words, yet it was to wonder he could not suppress his Indignation; for turning towards him, he said, Thou vile Slave, hast thou now found out the proper time to disclose thy Treason and Parricide;

And

and the ch

And thereupon he drew out his Sword to have flain him. if Bellus, and the other Baltrians about him, had nothing dred his purpole: Who pretended to be forry for the occasion, though really their design was to have seizh

him, had he continued in his Determination.

In the mean feafon, Nabarganes, escaped away, and Bessus followed after; who immediately separate the Bands they had charge of from the reft of the Army, with on intent to put their defign in Execution. When they were departed, Artabasus framed his discourse according to the Estate of the time then present, and began to pacifie Darius with words; putting him in mind, that at this juncture it behoved him to bear with patience the fimplicity, or rather the errour of his own men, for as much as Alexander was at hand, too formidable an Enemy, tho' his whole Forces had continued in their Obedience: But if we shall be at variance (said he) when he pursues us, our affairs will be in a very ill posture. Thereupon Darius inclined somewhat to Artabasus's advice; and though his intention was to remove, yet because he perceived every Person to be distatisfied, he kept still in the But he himself was so astonished with forsame station. row and desperation, that he kept himself close, and came not forth of his Pavillion: Whereupon the Camp being without Government, the Heads not confulting together as they did before, there arose among them a great diversity of Opinions, and motions of mind: Which thing when Patron faw, that was Captain of the Greek Souldiers, he ordered his men to put on their Armour, to be in a readiness to act according to Command: The Persians incamped by themselves, and Bessus remained amongst the Baltrians, practifing to carry away the Persians into Baliria, and to leave Darius; signifying to them the riches of that Region yet untouched, and the peril they were in if they remained there; but they were all in a manner of one Opinion, that it was an over-great Offence for them to defert their Prince.

In the mean time Artabafus executed the Kings Office. and visited the Persians in their lodgings, admonishing and chorring them, formetimes apart, and otherwhiles all togeher, and would never leave them, before he had wrought em up to an entire Resignation, and resolution to obey heir Prince. That done, with great pain and difficulty, he perswaded Darius to be chearful, and once more resume the courage of a King.

D.

d

c

h

2

But Bellis and Nabarzanes were so eager to get the Government into their hands, that they resolved to put in execution the Plot they had long conspired betwixt them; for fo fong as Darius was in fafety, they could not hope w compass nor attain so great Authority. The Majesty of King is had in great Veneration amongst those Narions, at whose Name only they assemble together; and the Reverence used to them in their prosperity, ingagesmen to pay the like obedience in advertity: The greatness and power of those Countries, whereof Bessus and Naburganes had the command, not being inferiour to any other Nations in that part of the World, either in men. in furniture, or largeness of their Territory, gave a great incouragement to their wicked dispositions, and perfidious defigns: For they possessing the third part of Afia, were able to make as great a number of men as Darius before had loft. In confidence whereof they not only difpiled Darius, but Alexander himself; purposing, when they were once become Lords of that Country, to revanquish from thence again the power of the Empire, and maintain the Wars against the Macedons.

When they had long debated on these things, they determined to take Darius by the Battrian Souldiers, that were intirely devoted to their Obedience; and then to fend word to Alexander, that they referved him alive, to deliver him into his hands: And if so be that Alexander hould not accept it, which indeed they doubted, then their purpose was to kill Darius, and with their Army to retire into Balfria. Because they saw that Darius could not be taken openly, feeing there were fo many thousand

Persians

Ressians ready to aid him; and fearing also the fidelity of the Greeks, they determined to work by slight, what they could not effect by force. The Plot was laid, to Countersens repentance for their Deserting their Prince, in excusing to the King the fear they were in; and in the mean season, they sent certain to practise with the Persians, and to sound their Inclinations. The Souldiers were tossed to and fro with hope and fear; sometime they thought, that by leaving of their King, they should expose themselves to manifest ruine and destruction: And again, they remembered what entertainment was promised them in Ba-Bria, that lay open for them, where they should be received with such Rewards and Riches, as exceeded even their

very Imaginations.

Whilest the Agents of Bessus and Nabarzanes were in. fusing these Notions into the Souldiers heads, Artabasu came to them, declaring how Darius was well pacified and that they might, if they would, be in the same Estare and Degree with him that they were before. Thereupon they fell to weeping, and purging themselves; requesting Artabasus, that he would take upon him the defence of their Cause, and carry their Prayers and Submissions to the King. The Night was confumed in debates of this kind: And when it was day, Nabarzanes, with the Ba-Etrian Souldiers, stood at the Entry of the Kings Apartment. colouring his privy Treason with the solemn pretence of doing his duty: Darius caused warning to be given for his remove; and so mounted upon his Charior, after his accustomed manner. Nabarganes, and the other Traytors, fell upon the Ground to Worship him, and shed tears in token of repentance; notwithstanding that they determined shortly after to put him in Fetters; so prone is the nature of man to dissimulation. Their tears and supplications, fo wrought upon the easy and gentle Disposit on of Darius, as to make him not only to believe what they pretended, but also to weep for joy; yet that could not cause the Traytors to alter their purpose, when they perceived what kind of Person, and what manner of Prince they. v of

hev

enta

fing

OR.

to

to

har

res

re-

Be-

iv-

eir

in.

fus

d,

ire

p-

of

to

is-

4.

it,

15

·

S,

n

1

5

des went about to deceive. Darius nothing suspecting the danger that threatned him, made all the hast he could mescape Alexander, whom he only doubted. Patron that was Captain of the Grecians, commanded his Souldiers to put on their Harness, which they carried before in Truses, and to be ready, and attent to the Command they should receive: For he understanding the Treason that was contrived, followed the Kings Chariot, seeking

m opportunity to speak with him.

And Bessus doubting the same thing, would not depart from the Chariot, but sollowed rather for a Watch than a Waiter. Patron therefore having tarried long, and being interrupted of tentimes as he was about to speak, stood in a stay, betwixt sear and sidelity, with concern in his Countenance looking sull in the Face of the King. When Daim perceived that he beheld him after that manner, it commanded Bubace, his Eunuch, that rode next him, no enquire of Patron is he had any thing to say to him; baron said, Tes; but his business was such, that it only returned his Ear in private. Then he was ordered to come near; and (without any Interpreter) Daims unterstanding somewhat of the Greek Tongue, Patron spoke is this manner:

Sir, of Fifty thousand Greeks that served you, there is a small number of us remaining, which have continually followed you in all Fortunes, bearing you the same Loyalty and Affection that we did in your most shourishing Estate: And we were determined, wheresoever you were, to take that for our Country and home; but Prosperity and Adversity hath so bound us to you: By which Invincible Fidelity that is in us, I be seech and implore you, that you would vouch set to lodge within our Camp, and suffer us to be the Guard of your Person. We have lost Greece, we have no Bactria to go to; all our hope is in you, and the Gods grant that all other men may do the like. It is not neglary I should speak any more; nor would I demand the custody of your Person, being an Alien and a Stranger, if I know that others were as well-minded towards you.

Although

Although Beffis were ignorant of the Greek Tongue, yet his Conscience pricked him to believe, that Patron had disclosed something; and therefore carrying away some part of his words, by a Greek Interpreter, he foon pur himself out of doubt : Darius nothing afraid, as it appear ed by his Countenance, enquired of Patron, what moved him to give fuch Advice? Whereupon, he thought not good to defer it any longer, but faid ; Beffus and Nabarzanes work Treason against you, so that your Life and your Estate stand in extreme peril, and this day shall be the last, either to the Traytors, or to you. Whose words, if Darius had well weighed and regarded, Patron had received the glory of the preservation of the Prince. But let them continue their Foolish error, who say that the state of men is governed by Chance: I do believe every man runneth his Race by an Immutable Decree and Necessity, and by Concatenation of hidden causes, long before pre-ordained Darius's answer was:

"That although the fidelity of the Greek Souldiers was ful"ficiently known unto him, yet he was determined never
to depart from his own Nation, by whom though he
"might be deceived, yet it was hard for him to mistrast
"them: What soever should be fall him, he faid, he was
"minded rather to suffer it amongst his own Subjects, than
"to part away from them; not desiring to live, if his

" own Souldiers defired not his Safeguard.

Whereupon Patron despairing of the Kings welfare, returned to them, of whom he had the charge, being resolved and prepared to sacrifice all things to his fidelity. Bessus, in the mean season, had absolutely determined to slay Darius; but fearing that he could not win Alexander's Favour, except he delivered his Enemy into his hands alive, deferred his purpose to the Night sollowing.

In the mean season, he came to Darius, and gave him thanks that he had so warily, and with such wisdom, a voided the Treason of that false Grecian, who being corrupted by Alexander, sought nothing but how to make a Present of his Head; whereat (he said) He could not man

lue,

ome

Put carved

boo

pork

in

the

vell

of

iuc

gohis

1

d

4

he

eft

4

an is

e-

y.

0

.

n

ŀ

1

without a Mercenary man should leave any thing undone for Mon, being without any Pledge of his Honesty, without House at home, Banished out of the World; a fair Friend, and a labeled Enemy, by als'd and turned to every side, at the beck of dimenthat would corrupt him. And then he fell to purging of himself, called the Gods of his Country to Witness his

own Integrity and Allegiance.

Darius, by his countenance, seemed to believe him; we he doubted not of the truth of what Patron had told in: but he was come to fuch a point, that it was as directous for him not to believe his own men, as to be deceived. There were thirty thousand, whose lightness was feared to have confented to this Conspiracy; and Paron had but four thousand, to whom if he had committed his fafety, and thereby condemned the fidelity of his own Subjects, he faw that then they might have had a god colour, and pretence to perform their Enterprize; and therefore chose rather to be killed Innocently, than to give any occasion whereby he should seem to have derved death: And yet when Beffus purged himself, he inswered, That he knew that there was no less Justice in Alerander, than Manhood; and that they were deceived that booked for any Rewards of Treason at his hands; knowin there was none a severer Punisher or Revenger of the breach of Fidelity. When the night drew near, the Persians after their accustomed manner, put off their Amour, and repaired to the next Villages, to get Provisions: But the Ballrians, as Bessus had commanded them, continued in Arms. In the mean season, Darius had sent for Artabasus, and shewed him what Patron had declared: Whereupon Artabasus made no doubt, but that he would fraightways commit himself to the protection of the Greeks; thinking that the Persians, when the Kings peril should be published abroad, would joyn with the Grecians: Yet Darius, predestinate to his ill Fare, could not hear that laving Counfel, nor fought for any help in that case, but imbraced Artabasus, as though he should never see him more; and being wet with the Tears that one of them let fall

中中心心理中心

th

Ti

10

Ca

10

m

lo

E

to Ti

to

h

16

were.

fall upon the other, he caused Artabasus to be removed from him; and because he would not see his sorrow in departing from him, he covered his Face and sell flat upon the Ground: Then such as were accustomed to the Guard of his Person, who should have been his Defence in all perils, sled away, thinking themselves over-weak so such a number of Armed men as they supposed to be coning: There was a great solitariness within Darius his lodging; for none remained about the King but a few Eunuchs, that had no place to repair to: Then ruminating and debating with himself alone, sometime one thing, and sometime another; till grown weary of that solitariness, in which before he took a comfort, he called Bubasu unto him, whom he beheld, and said;

Go, provide for your selves, who, according to your duies, have been true to your Prince till the last hour; here I wantou the fatal Law of my destiny: Peradventure you wonder that I do not end mine own life! No, I had rather die through other

mens wickedness than by mine own.

After these words, Bubave filled both the Kings lodging and the whole Camp with mourning and lamentation; and divers broke into the place where Darius was, and tearing their Cloaths, bewailed his deplorable condition with all the loudest voice of Sorrow. When the creame to the Persians, they were so struck with sear and amazement, that they durst neither put on their Armou, lest they might give occasion to the Bastrians to set upon them; nor could they remain quiet, least in so rame as Edleness they might appear guilty of so barbarous an impiery as Deserting their King.

Then were clamours heard throughout the Camp in all the different cries of Desperation, with no Head nor Chief to govern 'em. Such as pertained to Nabarzanes and Bessus, deceived by such lamentation as they heard, brought tydings to the rest, that the King had kill'd himself: Whereupon, they repaired thither so saft as they could gallop; and such followed 'after; as were chosen to be the Instruments of their infernal purpose. When they

red

in

upthe

100

for

m.

his

u.

ing ng,

ri-

ace

es.

for hat

ber

10

18

on

TY nd

u,

00

an

ef

nd

1,

m.

ey

ey

re.

declared that he was alive, they commanded him to be

Thus he, who before was carried in a Charior, and benoused with the universal adoration of a God, was now made a Prisoner; not by any Foreign power, but by his own fervants; and disrobed of all Glory and Magnificoce, was put into a vile Cart, and covered over with the fordid skins of Beafts. Whilft all his Treasure and Riches were all seized and torn to peices, with greater foil and rapine, than if taken in the Wars by the hands dhismost mortal Enemies; when they had thus laden themselves with their ill-gotten prey, they conveyed memselves into their Countries: But Artabasus, with those of whom he had the charge, and with the Greek Souldiers, took their way towards Parthina; thinking all Places and all Conditions fafer, than in the Fellowship of Inytors. The Persians, whom Bessus had overcome with 6 many fair Promises, specially because they had no other men to follow, joyned themselves to the Baltrians, and the third day overtook them. But to the intent Darius hould have some honour payed him, Bessus eaused him to be bound with Golden Fetters; to such despites did the cruelty of Fortune subject him: And for that he hould not be known by his Apparel, they covered the Cart with foul Hides of Beafts, and caused unknown men odrive it forwards; and left by inquiry in the Army he might be discovered, such as had the charge of him followed afar off.

When Alexander heard that Darius was removed to Ethatana, he left the way that he was in, and with all the feed he could make followed after Darius, who was faid to be gone into Media. But when Alexander was come to Taba, which is the chief City of Paratacene, it was there told him by Fugitives that came out of Darius's Camp, how he was fled with all speed into Bastria; but soon after he received more certain Intelligence from Bagophanes of Bathon, who could not say directly, that Darius was used as a

Pri-

Prisoner; but faid, that either he was in danger of deth. or of captivity. Alexander, upon this advertisement of led his Captains together, and shewed them that he hade great Enterprize, but fuch as a fhort Labour would accomplish. Darius (he faid) was not far off, forfaken of his own men; and either taken as a Prisoner, or else flain: whose person he told them the whole Victory confisted and the greatness of the undertaking will be an ample reward of the great hafte that was required to perform it. They all cryed with one voice, That they were ready to followhim wherefoever he should go; and that he should not spare their labour, nor their peril: Whereupon he convered his Army forwards with marvellous speed, rather following Poft, then after the common order of Marching; neither refting day nor night, till they paffed five hundred furlong, and came to the Village where Beffus first seized Darius; There Melon Darius's Interpreter, who by reason of his side ness could not follow the Army, was taken by Alexanders celerity; who feigning that he fled from his Mafter, decis red the whole matter. But how great foever his defirem to overtake his Enemies, it was necessary for him to give his men rest in their travel: So that determining to lear the rest of his Army behind, he chose out fix thousand Horsemen, and added to them three hundred, called Dimichae, that were Foot-men, heavy harnasted, but yet siding on Horse-back; and when the occasion required, + lighted and fought on Foot. When Alexander was taking order about this Expedition, Orfillus and Mithracene, who for the harred they bare to Bellus for his Treater fled from him, declared to the King, that the Perlim were but five hundred furlongs off, and proffered to gulde him by a nearer way. Their coming was grateful to the King; for by their Conduct, in the beginning of the Night, he took his journey with a select Party of Horse, ordering his Foot-Battle to follow after with all speed possible. He marched forwards in a square Battle, and kept such a order, that the first might joyn with the last, and sich as came behind relieve them that went before.

When

eth.

calhada con-

l, and ward y all him pare yed wing

ther mgs, inchesions inches was easier was and

Di

aing

nes, on, mide he him He

ch

en

when they had passed three hundred furlongs on their Breculus, the Son of Mazaus, that sometime had been ernour of Syrin, who also had deserted Bessus, met Alexder, and declared, that Beffus was within two hundred rlongs, marching with his men out of all order, as bewholly out of all doubts or fears: It feemed to him fefaid) That they went towards Hircania; wherefore, haste were made, they might soon be overtaken, and and dispersed our of all Array. And by reason he affred alfo, that Darius was yet alive, Alexander that was by before in the pursuit, was now but more inflamed to posecute his Defign; so that he caused them to put Spurs n their Horses, and in a gallop followed so fast, that they might hear the noise of their Enemies as they marched: or the dust that arose, obscured their fight; and therehe he stayed a while, till the dust was laid again: Then beh Beffus perceived the Macedons, and they law the Perfast as they fled; notwithstanding, they had been utterly mable to march, if Bessus had had as great Courage to fift, as he had to betray his Master: For besides, that they exceeded the Macedons in number and power, the Macedons fore-wearied and over-travelled, were to endenter with them that were lusty and fresh. But alass, dere wanted no more than the very Name and Fame of Alexander, fufficient of themselves alone to carry Victory with them, and put them all into Disorder, Flight, and Confusion.

Then Besses, and others that were Partners in this Confirmery, came to the Cart where Darins was, and perswaded him to leap on Horse-back, and fly from his Enemies that were at hand: But he cryed out, That the Gods were ome to his Revenge; and calling for the Assistance of denander, told them, He distance to go with Traytors and Paricides: at which they were so incensed, that they threw their Darts at him, and left him wounded in many paces of his Body: They thrust the Beasts into their Bods that drew the Cart, to the intent they should not be the to pass forwards; and slew his two Servants that artended

m

gran god fhe Pl

rended upon him. When they had committed this as creable Fact, they thought it expedient to difperfe then felves in their flying; and fo Nabarganes rook his wayn Hircania, and Beffus to Battria, with a few Horfe-menth

each of them had in their Company.

When their Souldiers were thus forfaken of their Cap tains, they were scattered here and there, having nown other Leaders but their hope or their fear: There were only five hundred Horse-men who affembled themselve together, and flood in a doubt, whether it were bettern relift, or to fly. Alexander understanding the sear his Enemies were in, fent Nicanor before with part of his Horse-men to keep them on work, and he with theref followed after. There were flain to the number of three thousand of such as stood on their defence, and the rel were driven in flocks like Beafts, Alexander having commanded his Souldiers to abstain from farther Slaugher Amongst all the Prisoners, there were none that wereable to shew the Cart that carried Darius; for every one was fo defirous to find him, that as they faw any Cart, they fought him therein, and yet they could not learn any lo telligence what was become of him. Alexander made fuch hafte, that scarcely three thousand Horse-men followed him of all his Cavalry; but great numbers of the Pas fians fell into their Hands that followed behind. It is fcarcely to be believed, that there should be more Prife ners taken, than there were men to take them . But Fortune in that fear had so taken away their sense, that they could not confider their own multitude, nor the small number of their Enemies. In the mean season, the Bealts which drew Darius's Waggon, having no man to govern them, were strayed out of the high way, and wanding here and there, had drawn Darius four furlongs from the place where he was wounded, into a Valley, where they fainted, by reason of their heat and their hurs There was a Spring at hand, which certain that knew the Country had shewed to Polistratus a Macedon, that was overcome with thirst: and while he was drinking the

lt-

.

10 lat.

166

20

DO

ere

ra

10

his his

relt

ree reft

on-

ter.

able

Was

hey

In-

ade

OW-

Per-

t is

ifo-

For-

hey

mall

afts

vern

ring

rom

here

urts.

new

that

king the Water out of his Helmet, he espied the Beasts that e thrust in with Darts; and marvelling that they were rather carried away, than hurt after that manner, he wed, and found in the Waggon the body of a man half live; and at length perceived it was Darius that lay there melly wounded, and drawing his last breath: Then Po-Mratus brought to him a Persian, whom he had taken Primer; whom when Darius knew by his voice to be of his Country, he said, That he took it for some Comfort in hi refent Fortune, that he should speak before he died to one be under stood bim, and not utter his last Words in vain.

He required him to declare to Alexander, that though he had war deserved any thing at his hands, yet it was his chance to he highly his Debtor, as being obliged to return no common Toanks ad Acknowledgement, for the favour and goodness that he had hewed towards his Mother, his Wife, and his Children, to whom he had not only granted Life, but also the Reverence due to their former Estate and Dignity; whereas he, of his own Kinsmen and Friends, to whom he had given both Life and Linds, was now by them bereaved of all. He prayed therefore, the be might always be Conquerour, and that the Empire of the whole World might devolve into his hands; conjuring him, that he would not neglet to take revenge of so foul an Att, not only for in sake; but for an Example, and Terrour to Regicides, and Windication of the Cause and Honour of Kings; an Ast wholly worthy of him, and profitable to all succeeding Princes:

When he had spoke these words, he fainted; and calling for water, after he had drunk, said to Polistratus that presented it to him: What soever thou art, this is to me the last misery in all my adverse Fortune, that I am not able to reque this benefit; but Alexander shall reward thee, and the and shall requite him for his great Humanity and Clemency hewed towards mine; to whom thou shalt give my hand as a

Pleage of a Kings Promile.

Having thus spoken, and given Polistratus his hand, he ded. When his dying words were reported to Alexander. he repaired where the dead Body lay, and with tears lamented, that it was his chance to die a death fo unworthy

da

D D O D O

P

of so great a personage; and taking off his own Cloak in cover the body, he adorned it with all the Royal or naments suitable to the greatness of Darius, and serve to his Mother Sysigambis, to be interred with the Magnificence, as the Persians accustom to bury their King, and to be said amongst the rest of his Predecessours.

THE

SIXTH BOOK.

of Macedon.

A great part of the Sixth Book is defective; where in was contained the Cause of the War betwing the Lacedæmonians and Macedons, with the preparation of both Nations to the Battel that was fought betwixt Antipater, Alexander's Lieutenant in Macedonia, and the Kings of the Lacedæmonians.

rous, and put the greater part of his Enemies to flight: Then such as were Conquerours before began to fly, till they had drawn their Enemies, greedily following them, out of the streight, into a more plain ground: In the Retreat many of them were slain; but when they had once recovered such a convenient Ground where they might make a stand, and fall into order again, the Battle joyned

be

be

0

0

2

C

When

wined equal on both fides. Amongst them all, the King of the Lacedamonians appeared most remarkable in all mens eyes, not so much by the beauty of his Armour and goodly Personage, as through the greatness of his courage, whereinonly he could not be overcome. He was affailed on all paris, both near at hand, and afar off: Yet nevertheless, becontinued long in Arms against his Enemies, avoiding their Brokes, part with his Target, and part with his Body, till fuch time as he was thrust through both Thighs with a Spear, when by great effusion of blood, he was not able any longer to endure the fight: Then the Esquires of his body took him up upon his Target, and conveyed him into their Camp, when with great pain he indured the flirring of his wounds. The Lacedamonians, for all their Kings departure, gave not over the fight; but as foon as they could recover any ground of advantage, they rallied themselves, and received stoutly their Enemies that came full There is not found in Records, or Hiltory, a upon them. Battle more vehemently fought than that, where the Armies of two Nations that were most excellent in the Wars, conmided together for the Victory, not yet inclining to any part: The Lacedamonians called to mind their Ancient Manhood and Prowefs, and the Macedons confidered their present Renown they had in the world: The Lacedamonians lought for their liberty, and the Macedons for the Soveraignty; those wanted a Captain, and these room to fight in. The manifold adventures and chances that fell that day, encreased both the hope and fear of both parties; fortune, as it were of purpole, bringing fuch valiant men to fight together, neither of them prevailing upon other: But the streightness of the place where they fought, did not fuffer them to joyn with their whole force at once, for more were beholders than fighters; and fuch as flood withon danger, encouraged the others with their cry. At length the Laced amonians began to faint, and scarcely able for sweating to sustain their Armour, began to draw back, whave the more liberty to flee from their Enemies that prefled so hard upon them.

1 2

When they were once broken and scattered abroad, the Conquerors more eagerly press'd uponthem; and passing the place whereupon the Lacedemonians Battle was first arranged, made a strong pursuit upon Agis: who seeing his men flying, and his Enemies approach at hand, ordered his men to fet him down; where stretching himself, tofeel if the force of his Body could answer his Heart, when he found himself unable to stand, remaining upon his knees, he put on his Helmet; and covering his body with his Target, shook his Spear, and dared his Enemies to draw near, if any were defirous of his spoil: but there was not one that pressed near him, but cast Darts afar off, which he took, and threw back at his Enemies, till fuch time as the was thrust into the bare breast with a Spear: But when the same was pulled out of the wound, he fainted, and bowing himself upon his Target, shortly after fell down dead, his blood and life failing both together. There were flain of the Lacedamonians 5340, and of the Macedonians not above three hundred; but there was scarcely any of them that escaped unwounded. This Victory not only brake the hearts of the Lacedamonians, and of their Confederates; but also all those who waited the success of that War.

Antipater was not ignorant how the countenances of such as congratulated his Victory, differed much from the intents of their hearts: but desirous to finish the Wars that were begun, he perceived it necessary for him to dissemble, and suffer himself to be deceived: And though he rejoyced much in the Fortune of the Battle, yet he seared the envy that might ensue, it being a greater Victory than a Lieutenant was thought worthy to win. For Alexander was of such a Nature, that he desired his Enemies had rether won the day; shewing manifestly, that he was not contented with Antipater's good success; thinking that whatsoever succeeded to another man, was a derogation to his own glory. Antipater therefore, who very well knew his Spirit and Pride, durst not use the Victory according to his Will, but assembled a Councel of Greeks,

m

the

an-

his

ed

eel

he

es,

his

T

ot

ch

25

d

ı

of

madvise what they thought expedient: The Lacedeminimade no other request, but that they might fend E. besidours to Alexander, who upon their Address to him and their fuit made, obtained a General Pardon for all men, fiving for such as were the Authors of the Rebellion. The Mecapolitans, whose City stood the Siege, were compelled to pay; as a Fine for their Rebellion, twenty Talents to the Athenians and the Atolians. This was the end of the War, which being suddenly begun, was ended before A. lexander had overthrown Darius at Arbela. As foon as his mind was delivered of those present Cares, as one that could bear better the Wars than Quietness, he gave himfelf up to Pleasures, by the vices whereof he was overcome, whom no power of the Persians, or any other, were able to subdue. He was given to banqueting to an Excess, and to a fond delight of drinking, and watching and revelling whole Nights, whilft Plays and Concubines, depraved, and drew him into strange manners and cufloms: which he following, as things more pleasing than his own Country Cuftoms, offended thereby greatly both the Eves and Hearts of his Nation; and caused many that loved him before entirely, to hate him then as an Enemy: For the Macedons, that were obstinate in keeping their own Discipline, and unaccustomed to be curious, being so penurious in their Diet as might suffice Nature only, when they faw him go about to bring in amongst them the Vices of those Nations which they had subdued, Conspitacies began to be made against him, Mutinies arose amongst the Souldiers, and every one complaining to another, freely uttered their griefs, whereby he was provoked to wrath, to suspicion, and sudden fear; divers other inconveniencies insuing thereupon, which shall be declared

Alexander being given, as hath been said before, to unreasonable banqueting, wherein he consumed both day and night; when he was satisfied with eating and drinking, he passed the rest of the time in Plays and Passimes: And not contented with such Musicians as he brought out

of Greece, caused the Women, that were Captives, to fing before him fuch Lascivious Songs as abhorred the ears of the Macedons, not accustomed to such things. A. mongst those Women, Alexander espied one more sad than the rest, who with a certain shamefac'dness did strive with them that brought her forth: She was of excellent Beauty, and by her Modesty her Beauty was much augmented And because she did cast her Eyes towards the Earth, and covered her face so much as she might, she gave suspicion for him to think that the was descended of Noble Parentage: And therefore being demanded what she was, she declared her felf to be the Niece of Occhus that lately reigned in Persia, and the Wife of Histaspis, who was Darius's Kinsman, and had been his General over many great Armies. There yet remained in the King's hear some small sparks of his former Vertue; for in respect of her Estate, being descended of the Blood of Kings, and in Reverence he bare to fuch a Name as the Niece of 06 chus, he commanded her not only to be fet free, but allo to have all her Goods and Jewels restored her, and seath to be made to find her Husband, to whom he would return her.

The next day he appointed Ephestion to bring all the Prisoners to the Court, where inquiring of the Nobility of every one, he commanded them who were descended of Noble Blood, to be separated from the rest; among whom they found Oxatres, Brother to Darius, a Prince to less Noble of mind than of blood: There were maded the last spoil twenty fix thousand Talents, whereof twelve thousand were consumed in rewards amongst the Men of War; and the fum amounted to no less value, that we conveyed away by them that had the Charge of the Tra-There was one Oxidates, a Noble-man of Refus that was imprisoned by Davius, and appointed to later death, whom Alexander delivered, and gave him the Seigniory of Media, and received Darius's Brother amount the number of his Friends, referving to him all the acreflomed Honour of his Noble Extract and Original. Then they

to he

1.

th

in-

nd

on

n-

he

ely

125

ny

urt

of

nd

10.

160

ch

18.

he

of

of ft 10

of

re

of

8

ŀ

4,

1

.

they came to the Country of Parthenia, being then bur offeure and unknown, but now the Head of all those Countries which lie upon Tygris and Euphrates, and bounwith the Red Sea. This Country being fruitful and abundant in all things, was conquered by the Scythians, who possessing part of Asia and Europe, are troublesome

Neighbours to them both.

The Scythians, who inhabit upon the Bospheron Sea, are acribed to be in Afia; and those in Europe possess the Countries lying on the left part of Thrace, reach as far as Boryfthenes; and from thence right forth; so far as the Rirer Tanais, that divides Europe and Alia. It is certain, that the Scythians of whom the Persians are descended, came not from Bospheron, but out of Europe. There was a Noble City, in those days called Hecatonphylos, founded by the Greeks, where Alexander remained with his Army, conwying Provisions thither from all parts. Among the Souldiers lying in Idleness, there arose suddenly a rumour, which entred into their heads without any certain Author beginning, which was; That Alexander farisfied with the Acts he had done, purposed immediately to return into Macedon. This Fame was not fo foon blown abroad, be that they ran like mad-men to their Lodgings, and tuffed up their Baggage, making fuch preparation to depart, as if already they had had warning to remove, and ack up their Goods. The tumult that arose in the Camp by lading of Carriage, and by the calling which one made to another, came to the King's Ears. This rumour obtained the sooner credit, by the dispatch of certain Greek Souldiers, whom Alexander had dismissed into their Counby, with the gift of fix thousand Deneirs to every Horse-Thereupon occasion was given to think that the War had been at an end. Alexander, whose Defign was man's into India, and the uttermost bounds of the Orient, wino less displeased at this rumour than the Occasion resired: And therefore calling before him the Captains of he Army, with tears in his Eyes, he made a great comthint to them, that in the middle course of his glory he should !

I 4 -

mould thus be pulled back, and compelled to return im his Country, rather as a man vanquished, than as a Conqueror: which Misfortune, he faid, he could not impur to his Souldiers, nor judge that their Cowardice gave a impediment to his proceedings, but that it was only the envy of the Gods that put fo sudden a defire of their Country into the minds of valiant Men, who within awhile should have returned with greater glory and fame. Thereupon they all promised to reform this Errour with all Zeal and Diligence, offering themselves in all things (were they never fo difficult) intirely to follow and obey him: And they promifed also the obedience of the Souldiers, if so be that he would make some gentle and apt Oration to pacifie them, who were never yet seen to depart from him in any desperation or disturbance of mind, if they once beheld the chearfulness of his Countenance, and heard the Resolutions of so great a Courage. He promised so to do, and required in the multitude an inclination to give a to him. When all things were prepared which were thought expedient for this purpose, he assembled all his Army together, and made this Oration to them:

When ye consider (my Souldiers) the greatness of the Alli which ye have done, and the manifold Conquests that ye have made, B's no marvel at all that ye be inclined to quietness, and ful ly satisfied with Fame and Glory: For not to speak of the Illyrians and Tribals, of Bæotia, Thracia, and Sparta, of the Achaians and Peloponnesians, whom I have subdued, part in person, and the rest by my Influence and Command; I will not make rehearfal of the War, we began at Hellespont, and how we delivered from (ervitude the Barbarous Nations, the Ionians and Aolides, and got into our Possession Caria, Lydla, Cappadocia, Phrygia, Paphlagonia, Pamphylia, Pyldia, Celicia, Syria, Phœnicia, Armenia, Persia, Media, and Parthenia. We have gotten more Provinces and Kingdoms, than others have taken Cities; and yet (I am fure) the number of them have caused me to leave some of them wire hearsed. If I could think that the Possession of these Lands that we have conquered in so short time could remain firm and faitbful into

Con-

Pute

ean

the

heir

hile

ere-

all

ere

in:

, if

1 to

im

nce

the

do.

ear

ere

his

H

de,

Į.

be

n

1

d

K

.

dier ss

about to as, then (my Souldiers) I would, though it were asand your wills, break from you to visit my house and my home. Mother, my Sifters, and my Country-men, to enjoy has the Land and Glory that I have gotten with you; where the boful Conversation of our Wives, our Children and Parent ... reace and quietnes, and a fure possession of things gotten throughour valour, do varry for us, as large rewards of Visio. But if we will confess the truth, this new Empire which we have not yet fully at Commandment, but is lept, as it me, by way of intreaty, doth require a time that this fiffmiled people may learn to bear our yoke; and by framing their finions to more Humanity, bring their cruel nature to a more mil conversation. Do me not see that the Corn in the field asketh atime for its ripering; and though the same be without seife, ababit its course and season to be brought to maturity and refedien? Do you believe that so many Nations not agreeing nibus in Religion, in Custom, nor in one use of Language, acalomed to the Empire and Name of another Man, will be conquered and brought to subjection with the winning of one Batthe? No, trust me, they are kept under with fear of our Powa, and do not obey us by the inclination of their own wills: And they which shew you obedience when you be here among it them. when you be absent will be your Enemies: You mil think that subave to do with Wild Beafts, which being fierce of Nature: when they be first taken, must be stut up and tanced by them. Huberto I have reasoned with you, as though we had Conquerof the whole Dominion that pertained to Darius, which is nothing fo; for Nabarzanes possesses Hyrcania, and the Traitor Beffus not only enjoys Bactria, but also threatens us. The Sogdans, Dahans, Massageres, Sagans, and the Indians, remain yet in their own Liberty and Jurisdiction, who shall not see our Backs so soon turned, but they will follow in our Rear: They all have a certain Friendship and Amity one with another, but we are all Strangers and Foreigners to them: There is no Creature but that will more gladly be obedient to Rulers of his own Nation, than to Foreigners, be their Government never for terrible. We are driven therefore of necessity to purchase that me have not, or elfe to lofe that we have already gain'd: Soul-

L 5.

B

H

01

ei

15

81

G

n

-

f

4

n.14-

diers must follow the Example of Physicians, that in find & dies will leave no humour that may burt; fo likewife we mit cut away what soever shall be an impediment to the Establishmen of our Empire: Have you not feen great Fires to arise fin small Sparks not regarded? We may not neglett any thing in our Enemies, whom the more we dispise, the more strong we make them. And because you should not think it such an in reffibility for Bessus to make himself King, where a King is wanting, you shall understand that Darius came not to be Empire by Inheritance, but got into the Seat of Cyrus by thek nefit of Bagoas, his Eunuch. We commit an beinous offene (my Souldiers) if we make War against Darius, and dented him with an intent to give his Kingdom to his Servants; w. and to such a one as attempted so detestable an All against his Master, at such a time as he had most need of help, and whom even we his very Enemies, would have spared: He, though his own Subject put him into Chains like a Subject, and at lat most Barbarousty Murder'd him, because he shou'd not be preferved by us. Shall you suffer such a man as this to reign! No, let us make all the speed we may to see him bang'd upon a Crofs, and to them to all Kings and Nations an exemplay Justice and Punishment done upon one that so vilely falsified his faith. If the report should come to you in your own Countries, that this very Traytor and Villain was destroying of the Greek Cities about Hellespont, how forry would you then be, and how much would you lament that Bessus should enjoy that which you have got, and usurp the rewards of your Victory? Then would you make hafte to recover your own; then would you bendyou felves to the Wars: But how much better is it now to opposit him while he remains in such fear, and is uncertain what man take? Shall we forbear to spend four days to come to him, that have marched over such Snows, that have passed so many Rivers, that have climbed so many Mountains; we have min none of our forepast Difficulties, no Raging Seas to impede w Journey, nor the Streights of Cilicia to that up our way? No all thing; are mad: p'ain and open, and we stand in the entry of our Victory: There are but a few Eugitines and Butchen of their Royal Mifter that renain un anguisht. What mer

muft mest

from

ų ir

g me

m

g is

his

e be

fence what was but

bom bugh laft

pre-

in a

his iet,

OW

uld

M

efs to

m,

m

W)

10

15

The month campon leave to your Posterity, to be registred by the mount perpetually long, than to revenge such as were Trayto Dairus? Tou shall thereby shew, that though you were senses to bim, yet your hatred ended with his death, and his wicked man can escape your bands: Which when once have performed, bow much more obedient do you think the leave will be to you, when they see you engaged in a Just and that it was not with Bessus's Name hat ye are offended, but with his Sins and Treache-

His Oration was received of the Souldiers with fuch dames, that they straightways defired him to lead them hither he would: And he that knew well enough how whake use of this opportunity, immediately advanced in Parthenia, and came to the bounds of Hyreamin, leavin Craterus with those Regiments whereof he had the lile, and fix thousand Horsemen, of whom Amint as had mechange, with the like number of Archers, to defend Pathenia from the incursion of the Barbarous Nations. Rappointed Erigonus, with a small power, to attend upon his Carriages; ordering him to pass with them through the plain Country, and he himself with his Footmen, and with the rest of his Horsemen, marched forwards a hunded and fifty furlongs, and incamped in a Valley at the entry into Hyrcania. In the same place are great Woods fill of high and thick Trees, and the bottom of the Valley avery fruitful, by reason of the Springs that Islue forth from the Rocks. Out of the Foot of the Mountains there tries a River called Zioberis, which within three Eurlongs : of the Head, is divided by a Rock standing in the midst of the Stream, caufing the Water to run in two feveral Currents; which afterwards uniting again into one Channel, runs more violently than before, by reason of the fall & from the Rocks: And fuddenly it finks into the Ground, and forums hidden, by the space of three hundred Furlongs; and then cometh forth again, as it were, out of a new w Spring, being then in breadth thirteen Furlongs; and as it & tuns forwards, grows more narrow, and falls into anotherer ffream:

Throat!

fiream, named Rhydago. The Inhabitants of the Comtry affirm, that any thing cast in where the stream subinto the Ground, will appear and rise up again at the next Mouth of the River. For the trying of which Experiment, Alexander caused two Bulls to be cast in, where the water sank down, whose Bodies where found by such as where appointed to watch for their rising, to appear where the stream brake out again. In this place he resteled his Army sour days, during which time Nabarrane (who was Consederate with Bessus in killing of the King)

wrote Letters to him to this effect :

How that he was no Enemy to Darius, but always eace frim such Counsel as conduced to his safety and interest; and for his faithful Counsel, was put in danger of his life by him, who against all reason intended to commit the custody of his persons Strangers, condemning thereby the fidelity of his own Nation. which they had kept unspotted towards their Kings the spaced two hundred and thirty years: Therefore feeing himself inthe evident peril, he only took Counsel of the present necessity. No was it any new thing in Darius, who when he had flain Bagons. gave it out to his People that he had only punisht a Tranty; under these unhappy Circumstances, he alledged, that nothing was more dear to miserable Mortality than Life, for the low whereof be was driven to this extremity, in committing an All which necessity rather compelled him to do, than his own difpolition: For in a general Calamity, every man feels after his own Fortune. If he would command him to come to his presence, he faid, he would not refuse to do it; for he could not fear that To great a King would violate his promifes feeing one God is not used to decrived another. But if he should seem unworthy of his assurance, there were many Countries for him to fly to; for all men that are Masters of Vertue and Valour, count always that for their Country where they make their residence.

Alexander made no scruple to give him his word, after such screen as the Persians used to receive promise, which was, safely to come and go: Notwithstanding he marched in order of Batt'c, sending ever Scouts before to discover the Country: The light armed were appointed to

the-

the

cpe-

icre fuch dear elle-aner ing)

lave

l for

who mito

ion.

ee of

bat

Nor

Das. JF ;

ing

love

All

ofi-

his

nce, bat

not

y of

for

ays

ret

ich

ch-

he

wavard; the Phalanx followed after, and the Bagbehind: For by reason they were a warlike Nation, the Country hard to enter upon, it caused the king to be circumspect. The same Valley stretches to the Cafpian the Banks thereof resembling the Horns of the Moon. before it comes to the full, the Sea lying betwine them great Bay. Upon the left hand the people mhabir, the are called Cercetes, which lie open towards the With ; and upon the other part the Lencofrians, Mossines, and Chalibes; and the Plains of the Amazons lie towards the West.

The Sea, which some call the Caspian Sea, and some the Hyrcanian, being more sweet than any other, brings forth Serpents of a wonderful bigness, and Fishes differing incolour much from all others. There are divers of opinion, that the Lake of Maotis should run into this Sea, which they conjecture by the water, and as being much sweeter than that of other Seas, fancy that it receives its fweetness of the Lake. Towards the North, the Sea grows into a Breach, and shoots forth his waters far upon the Land, which rifing high, make many Mears and Plashes. And aby a constant course of the Planets they flow out, so ara certain time, by an ebb they return again, restoring the Ground to its former estate: Some believe these waters to be no part of the Caspian Sea, but that they come out of India, and run into Hyrcania, which lies low in the forefaid Valley.

The King being removed from that place, marched forwards twenty furlongs in a wild Defart, where great. Woods hung continually over their heads, and Brooks of Water, and the Dirt, gave great impediment to their journey. But at length, without any opposition of his Enemies, he passed those difficulties, and came to a fair Counby; wherein, besides other Victuals (wherewith it did abound) there grew great plenty of Apples, and the Ground was very apt for Vines. There were also plenty of a certain hind of Trees much like to Oaks, whose Leaves were coered with honey, which the Inhabitants gather before

the

the Sun-rifing; otherwise the moisture would be die

up with the heat.

When Alexander had passed thirty Furlongs further Phrataphernes met him, yielding both himself and see others as fled away after Davius's death; whom he receive ed gently, and came to a Town called Arnas: Thinher came Craterus and Erigonus, bringing with them Phrade tes, that had the rule of the Tapurians; his Friendly Reception and gentle entertainment, was cause that many followed his example, in committing themselves to Alexander's Mercy. Menape was there made Prince of Hyes. nia, who being a banished man in the time of Occhu. came to King Philip for Refuge; and Phradares also was

restored to the Office he held before.

When Alexander was come to the uttermost bounds of Hyrcania, Artabasus, who, as we declared, had alwaysgiv. en fignal proofs of his Fidelity to his Mafter, did meet him with Darius's Kinsmen and Children, and with a fmall Band of Greek Souldiers. The King at his coming proffered him his hand, because he had been entertained before by King Philip, when he was banished by Occhie But the chief cause that he received him so well was for the inviolable Allegiance he had observed towards his Prince. He being thus gently entertained by Alexander, faid to him; Sir, long may you flourish and reign in perpetual felicity: I that rejoyce in all other things, am grieved only at this, that by reason of mine old age, I shall not be able long to enjoy your gordness. He was Eighty five years of age, and brought with him Nine Sons, born of one Mother, whom he prefented to the King; praying God to continue their live, fo long as their Service might be acceptable to Alexander.

Alexander was accustomed much to travel on foot; but then left the old man might be ashamed to ride, himself going on Foot, he called for Horses for them both. When he was incamped, he fent for the Greeks that Artabalin brought; but they made request, that he would first give affurance of his Protection and Indulgence to the Laceds

monians.

ions that were amongst them, or else they would take vice amongst themselves what were best to do: ne were the Embassadours that the Lacedamonians had fent to Darius, which after the Battle, joyned themselves othe Greeks that were in pay with Darius. The King illed them not to infift upon Articles, or Affurances, but themselves and Fortunes to his Discretion and Dispo-they stood long in a doubt, varying in opinions; but length they agreed so to do, excepting Democrates of libens, who had always opposed the success of the Maceand despairing of pardon slew himself: But the oher, as they had determined, submitted themselves to Mexander's Will, being Ten thousand five hundred in number, befides Ninety of fuch as were fent Embasfadors to Darius. The greatest part of the Souldiers were di-Imbuted amongst the Bands, to fill up the numbers that wanted; and the rest were sent home, except the Lacedamonians, whom he commanded to be put in Prifon-

There was a Nation called Mardons, bounding next to Hircania, rude in their manners and usages, accustomed to live by theft: They neither fent Embassadours, nor give any fignification that they would be at Alexanle's Commandment : He took thereat great indignation, that any one people should give impediment to his Victom; and therefore leaving a Guard for his Carriages, he awanced against them with a strong power. He marched forwards in the Night; and by the time that the day appeared, his Enemies were in fight. But the matter came father to an Alarm, than to any Fight; for the Enemies were foon driven from the Hills, who flying away, left their Villages to be facked by the Macedons: But the Army could not pass into the inward parts of the Country without great Labour and Difficulty as being compassed about with high Mountains, great Woods, and defart Rocks; and the parts which were plain, were defended with a strange kind of fortification, that is to say, with Trees fet thick of purpose; the Boughs whereof, when they

d

of

2

che

they were young, were wreathed one within another. He tops bowed down were put into the ground again, from whence, as out of another root, there forung new branch es. They would not fuffer them to grow as Nature brought them forth, but knit them fo one within another, that when they were full of Leaves they covered the Earth The Trees thus wreathed one within another, inclosed in the Country, as it were with a continual hedge, and were as Snares to intangle fuch as would enter. There was no way could be devised for their marching forward, but only by cutting down the Wood that opposed their passage; and therein they found a great difficulty, and much travel, by reason that the wreathing and wrapping of the Boughs kept them off from the Bodies of the Trees; and the weakness of the Boughs so yielded to the strokes, the

they could not easily be cut asunder.

The Inhabitants of the Country were accustomed to creep amongst the under-wood like Wild Beasts, and by privy Sallies break out and annoy their Enemies. Alexan. der therefore caused his men, after the manner of Hunters, to feek out their lurking places, and kill'd many of them. But at length he invironed the Wood with his Sou'diers round about, to the intent they might break in at every place, where they should find an entry: In doing whereof, many wandred and loft their Company in places they knew not, and were thereby taken Priloners, and amongst them Bucephalus, Alexander's Horse, whom he more highly valued than all the other Beafts he ever had, for this Horse would not suffer any other manto back him: and when the King would ride, he would kneel down upon his knees to receive him; fo that he feemed to have the fenfeto understand whom he carried Alexander was more forrowful and incenfed for the loss of his Horse, than was expedient for such a cause : for search ing about to get the Horse again, he caused Proclamation to be made by an Interpreter, that except he were reflored, he would not leave one of the Country-men alive. When they heard this terrible threatning, amongst other gifrt, H

on

ch.

ghe

h.

in

re

no

17-

e;

2.

he id

at-

in, they presented to Alexander his Horse: Yet he was ortherewith pacified, but commanded the Woods to be ordown, and the ways to be levelled by Earth that was brought down from the Mountains. This work went fo well forward, that the Inhabitants despairing of ability to deend their Country, yeilded themselves to the King; who reciving their Pledges, committed them to the keeping d Phradates; and from thence, the fifth day he returned There having rewarded Artabasus gain to his Camp. with double those Honours he received from Darius, he

fent him home again into his Country.

After that he came to the City of Hyrcania, where Dain's Chief Seat was; Nabarganes, upon affurance given him, came thither, bringing with him great, gifts, aud amongst the rest, presented to Alexander an Eunuch called Bagon, of fingular Beauty, being in the first flower of his Youth, whom Darius used, and afterwards Alexander; by whose Prayers and Intercession chiefly he was reconcikd to pardon Nabarganes. The Nation of the Amazons being near to Hyrcania (as hath been faid before) did inhabit the Plains of Themyscire, about the River of Thermidon, and had a Queen reigning over them, called Thaleftris, which kept under her Dominion all the Countries between Mount Caucasus, and the River of Phasis: She inflamed with a Defire of seeing Alexander, travelled out of her own Country; and being come near where he was, lent certain before, to declare that a Queen was come with MAmbition to visit him, and enjoy his Company. When liberry was given her to come to his Presence, the caused all the rest of her Band to Stay, and she advanced forwards, attended only by three hundred Women. As foon the perceived Alexander, the leaped from her Horse, carying two Javelins in her Hand. The Amazons Apparel is fuch, that it doth not cover all their Bodies; for their breafts are bare on the left fide, and their Garments, which they use to knit up with a knot, reach not to their knees: One Breast they always reserve untouched, wherewith they nourish their Women-Children; but their right Ereasts they

they use to fear, that with the more ease they may dra their Bows, and cast their Darts. Thalestris looked upon Alexander with a bold Countenance; and observed in he beholding of him, that his Habit and Grandure was me answerable to the Fame of his greater Acts: For the Br barous Nations gave great Veneration to the Majesty of in Personage, thinking none to be sufficient for the person ance of great Deeds, but such as Nature had indued with the most Noble Aspects: It was demanded of her, if the had any request to make to Alexander: Whereat she about ed not to confess, that she was come thither to have Chidren by him, thinking her felf a Personage worthy of whom he should get Heirs to inherit his Kingdom: wherein he covenanted, that if it were a Woman, the would keep it still; and if it were a Man-Child, she would restore in the Father. Alexander enquired of her, if the would po forwards with him in his Wars: But therein the excuted her felf, that the had left no order for the defence of he Kingdom. But the continued still in declaration of the cause of her coming, and required that her Expedition therein might not be in vain. The Inclinations and Apperite to those Venereal Rites were something more hora the Woman than the King; nevertheless, she obtained of him to flay for that cause, and he consumed thirteen day in fatisfying her defire.

Which done, the departed to her own Kingdom, and Alexander marched into Parthenia. This was the place where first he gently manisfested those Vices that were a him. There he turned his Continency and Moderator, those brightest and noblest Vertues in the highest and most exalted Fortunes, into Pride and Voluptuousness; not esteeming his Country-Customs, nor the wholesome temper that was in the Discipline of the Kings of Macedon For he judged their civil usage and behaviour to be ore base for his greatness; and therefore he assected the height and pomp of the Kings of Persia, representing the granness of the Gods. He was content to suffer men there fall down flat upon the Ground, and worship him; and accustomed

ind

10 m

on, of

(X) 电点

世本の

with

lomed the Conquerors of fo many Nations, by little d little, to servile Offices, covering to reduce them degrees to the very state of his meanest Captives. e upon his Head a Diadem of Purple, interpaled with nice, like as Darius was accustomed; and fashioned his apparel after the manner of the Perfians, without ferurange his Habit into the fashion of him whom he had foils of his Enemies, yet with those spoils he put upon in their evil manners, and the insolency of the mind solwed the pride of the Apparel. Besides, although he feled fuch Letters as he fent into Europe with his accuomed Seal; yet all the Letters he sent abroad into Asia ere lealed with Darius's Ring: So it appeared, that one ind could not bear the greatness that appertained to two. Reapparelled also his Friends, his Captains, and his Horseen in Persian Attire; whereat though they grudged in our minds, yet they durst not refuse it for fear of his bleafure. His Court was replenished with Concubines; the still maintained three hundred and fixty that belongde Darius; and amongst them were Flocks of Franche inflomed to perform the natural use of Women.

The old Souldiers of Philip naturally abhorring such thans, openly distanced to be infected with such Voluptumes and strange Customs: Whereupon there rose a maral Opinion and Murmur throughout the Camp, that they had lost more by the Victory, than they had won by the War: For when they saw themselves overcome with ach excess, and Foreign Customs so to prevail amongst turn, they judged it a slender reward of their long being total, to return home in the habit of Prisoners. They wan to be assumed of their King, that was more like to the swere subdued, than to them that were Victorious; at that from a King of Macedon, he was now one of the cortiers of Darius. When he understood that the chief a his Friends, and his Men of War were much offended

this doings, he endeavoured to recover their favour again

BOOK W

alties ad ho

with gifts and liberality; but the rewards of fervitude ungrateful to free-Men: And therefore lest it might into a Sedition, he thought good to dissipate the Image tions contracted by Idleness, with the Exercise of watto which a new Occasion was offered: Bessus invested in felf as a King, took upon him the name of Artazon drawing to his part the Scythians, and others that were in Inhabitants of the River Thanais; which things weren ported to him by Nabarzanes, whom he had received it to his Favour, and given the Rule of the Country he habefore. When he had determined this new Expeditor he found his Army fo over-charged and laden with spo and other Furniture of Voluptuousness, that they coul fcarcely move: Wherefore he commanded the Bagga and Stuff of the whole Army to be brought together in one place, excepting only fuch things as were very need fary: The place was large and plain to which the Wagon were all brought laden; and when every one stood wai ing and musing what he would command them to do, he caused the Beasts to be removed first out of the way, in then set his own Fardels on fire, and after, all there Whilst these things were burning, the Owners were fire themselves to see them so consumed; for the sain of which, they had often quenched the flames in the cities of their Enemies: Yet no man duft lament the proof his own Blood, seeing they saw the fire consumed King's Riches as well as their own; and the rather top cifie them, the King cheared them up, and mitigate their trouble by a short Oration. Whereupon they the were ever inclined to the Wars, and ready to do all thing began to be joyful, that with the loss of their Baggage, the had preserved their martial Discipline. As they werekt ting forward towards Baltria, Nicanor, the Son of Panenio, died suddenly, whom every Man greatly lamened by chiefly the King, who defired to have stayed to celebrate his Funeral, but that want of Provisions forced him to he ften his March. Philotas therefore was left belind withten thousand fix hundred Souldiers, to perform the Ceremo

THE REPORT OF THE PROPERTY OF

appertaining to his Brothers Funeral, and Alexander def marched towards Bessus. In the way, Letters were were to Alexander from the Princes thereabout, that was advancing against him with a great Army; adthereto, that Satibarzanes, whom he had made Prince the Avians, was newly revolted; for that cause (not-Affinding he was come near to Bessus) he thought it to invade him fuddenly. His coming was not fo but Satibarzanes was advertised of it, and fled into with two thousand Horsemen; for by reason he for able to affemble any more in fo short a time, the

took the next Mountains for their refuge.

there was a Rock, which towards the West, was high fleep, but towards the East more low, and easie to dimbed, which part was full of Trees: The fame Rock in compass two and thirty furlongs, had a Fountain ming continually, and in the top a Green Plain, where defence, being to the number of thirteen thousand, themselves to the edges of the Rock, and there threw man fones and logs upon the Macedons that came to affail He left Crawus to befrege the Rock, and went in to pursue sazanes; and because he understood whe was fled too far to be over taken, he returned back to the fiege of them that were upon the Rock. First, raused all things to be taken away, that might be an rediment to his Men in the affault giving: But when grame to the bare and freep Rock, the labour feemed where Nature her felf stood armed against them. But that was of a disposition always to strive against diffilies, confidering how hard a matter it was to go forward, show dangerous to return back, cast in his head all ways that could be imagined, and now fanfied one and then another, as men are wont to do that contheir first thoughts. As he stood in a doubt what do, Fortune did minister to him a means, which nei-

情報

西

ther wit nor reason could invent: It chanced that the wan blew vehemently at the South-West, at what time the South-West, at the heat of the Sun had made the same dry. When the ander perceived the wind to blow so violently, and the wood lying in that place, he immediately commune more Trees to be cut down, and laid upon them, additionable thereto several combustible things that might kindle a nourish fire; so that Trees heaped upon Trees, were seed so Mountain high as to reach the top of the Rock: In being set on fire in all parts at once, the wind carried to flame into the saces of their Enemies, and the smook overed the Sky. The noise was then great that the see made, which burned not only the Trees that were seed of purpose, but also the rest of the Wood growing near thereabout.

The Enemies were so tormented with the slame and her of the fire, that they were insorced to sorsake the place of strength, and attempted to escape away to sub places as were not yet seized by the Fire: But where the sire gave place, the Macedons stood in a readiness to receive them; so that they were consumed and slain diess kind of ways: Some threw themselve when the Rock some ran into the midst of the fire, others sell into the hands of their Enemies, and a few half consumed with sire, were taken Prisoners. When Alexander had done this, he returned to Craterus, who besieged Attamas and having prepared all things in readiness, tarried only should be subject the King's coming, to give him the honour of winning the Circumstance.

When Alexander was come, he approached the Walk, with the Towers of Timber that he had prepared for the Affault; at the fight whereof the Inhabitants were so asial that they held up their hands from the Walls, requiring him to spare them, and execute his wrath upon Sanke ganes, who was the Author of their Rebellion. Alexand pardoned them freely; and not only raised the Siege, but

THE STATE OF THE S

reftored to the Inhabitants all things that pertained As he removed from this City, there came to new fupply of Souldiers: Zoilus brought out of the five hundred Horsemen, and three thousand Autipaent out of Illyria: There came a hundred and thirty Man Horsemen with Philip, who also brought Forers out of Licia, two thousand five hundred Footmen, firee hundred Horsemen. Alexander having thus inled his power, entred into the Country of the Dragans, were a warlike Nation, under the Government of Nawho was of Counsel with Bessus in the Treason he committed against his Prince. When he heard of ander's approach, for fear of the punishment he had leved, he fled into India. Here had they lain incamdine days, when Alexander being above all danger of tonics, and invincible against all Foreign Powers, was took in Peril by a Conspiracy amongst his own People: thanced that one Dimmus, a man of mean Beliaviour and mority with his Prince, was greatly inflamed with the of a young Man, called Nichomachus, with whom he much familiar Conversation. This Dimnus on a time in a Passion (as it well appeared by his Countenance) and this young Man into a Temple, where remaining ther, he declared, that he had certain Secrets to comcare to him, which in no wife were to be reported Whilst Nichomachus was big with Expectation of Discovery; before he would tell him, he conjured him all the Protestations of the love and familiarity betwixt an, that he would affure him first, by his Oath to keep thing fecret; who supposing the matter to be of no such this, that he ought with Perjury, or breaking of his to disclose the same again, swore accordingly by Gods there present. Then Dimmus opened unto him, more was a Treason conspired against the King, which three days should be put in Execution, to which fild) he himself was made privy, with divers men of when Nichomachus heard it, and and it to be of such moment, he constantly denied then

that this promise extended to conceal Treason, to which no Oath nor Religion could bind a man; which when Din. nus observed, being half diffracted betwixt love and feat clasped the young man by the hand, beseeching him win weeping Eyes, that he would not refuse to be a partake of this Conspiracy; or at the least, if his heart would not ferve him, that he would keep the counsel secret, in to fpect that he had found fuch a manifestation of love in him, as to commit his life into his hands, without any fire ther proof of his fidelity. But in Conclusion, when he perceived that Nichomachus would in no wife agree to his purpose, but manifestly abhorred the act, he used diven means to draw him to his intent; one while intreating him with fair Words, and another while threatning to kill him. calling him Coward, and Traytor to his Friend, commend. ing the Gallantness of the Enterprise, and put him in hope of great perferment, that he should be partaker of the Kingdom which they went about to purchase. When he had tryed all these ways, and yet he found him averle one while he held his Sword at Nicemachus's throat, and another while at his own; fo that at length, by threat ning, and fair speaking, he brought him to promise, both to keep his counsel secret, and also to be affistant to the deed. Yet nevertheless, as one of a constant mind, and a Soul resolved (a Soul not unworthy the Lodging ina Chafter Breast) he changed no part of his former purpole or Principle; tho at the present, as seeming conquered by the Law of Dimnus, he feigned an intire Refignation and Obedience to his Requests. This done, Nichomachus required to know what the men were that had confederated themselves in so weighty a matter, because the Persons (he faid) were much material that should take so great an En-

Then Dimnus, doubly infatuated both with his Implous Love, and Impious Defign, when he heard him ask the question, rejoyced, and thanked him greatly, that he would so freely affociate himself with men of such Courage and Resolution, as Demetrius of the Privy Chamber, Pewer and Resolution, as Demetrius of the Privy Chamber, Pewer and Resolution, as Demetrius of the Privy Chamber, Pewer and Resolution, as Demetrius of the Privy Chamber, Pewer and Resolution, as Demetrius of the Privy Chamber, Pewer and Resolution and Resolution

五百百三五百五

law

L

ch

m- at,

ich

KCT

100

16-

'n

W.

he

his

crs

in ind ope the hericand

eat-

the and in a

ose

l by

and

re-

red

(he En-

ous

the

he

rage

MCO-

lans

Wicanor, Aphabetus, Loceus, Diocenus, Archipolis, and This communication once ended betwint them, Mehamachus departed, and disclosed all which he had before, to a Brother of his, called Ceballinus, agreebetwixt them two, that Nichomachus should remain still fort in his Tent, left by his coming to the Kings Lodgnot using to have access to the King, the Conspirators meht perceive themselves betrayed. Ceballinus repaired whe Kings Lodging, tarrying before the gate, waiting for some man near about the King, to bring him to his befence. It fortuned, that among many which passed by, my Philotos the Son of Parmenio, demanded why he waitdthere? To whom Ceballinus, with a bashful Countemace, (well declaring the unquietness of his mind) reported all which he had heard of his Brother, imploring into make a speedy Discovery to the King; Philot as havine highly commended him, immediately enter'd in to the King. Philot as departed from him to the King, with whom that day he had much communication on other Affairs, and yet opened no part of that which was told him by Ceballinus. At night, as Philotas came forth, Ceballinus me him at the Court-gate, and inquired of him whether he had done his Meffage to the King or not: He excused the matter, that he could not find him at leifure. The next by Ceballinus met him again going to the King, and put him in remembrance of that he had told him before; to whom he answered. That he remembred it well, and would make it his particular business, yet for all that he disclosed not the least anof it to the King. Ceballinus then began to suspect him, and intended no longer to defer the Discovery, but openwhole matter to a noble Youth called Metron, Mafer of the Kings Armory, who immediately conveyed Cefilms into the Armory, and repaired fireight to the who was bathing, and informed him of all that he had heard.

Alexander then made no delay, but fent certain of his Gurd to fieze Dimnus, and after came himself into the Ar-Mory. As foon as Ceballinus faw the King, he ran unto

hi

61

cre

he

He

17

be

10

i

him with great rejoycing, and faid; I have preserved the from the hands of thy Enemies. Alexander examined hims all the circumstances, and he again answered to every point in order. The King was earnest to know how long it was fince Nichomachus had given him this information, and he confelled, that it was three days. Whereupon the King confidering, that he could not be Mafter of fo dangerous Secret, and have concealed it fo long with any honestintention, commanded to have him taken into Custody Then cryed he out, and declared, that at the same inflan when he knew of the Conspiracy first, he opened it to Philotas, of whom (he faid) he might enquire the truth Thereupon it was demanded of him, whether he hadre quired of Philotas to bring him to the Kings Presence, or not Which thing when the King by his confession perceived to be true, and that he flifly maintain'd what he faid, he litted up his hands to Heaven, the tears falling from his eyes, greatly complaining, that Philotas should require Lim with fuch unfaithfulness, whom he most of all trusted Dimnus, in the mean season, knowing for what cause he was fent for, fell upon his own Sword: but yet somewhat thindred by them that were fent to take him, he was brought alive before the King, whom as foon as he beheld, he will unto him, Dimnus, What have I offended thee, that the Thouldest think Philotas more worthy to be King of Macedonthan 1? At which words Dimnus became speechless; and casting forth a great figh, turned his face from the Kings fight, and fell down dead.

The King called Philotas before him, and said: This Ceballinus, whom thou here seeft, should have suffered death, if it could have been proved that he had concealed two day the Ireason intended against me, with which he hath charged that, Philotas; Thou to whom (as he saith) he gave knowledge in mediately thereof: The more near thou art about me, so much anore great is thy offence; and the fault had been more whe rable in him, than in thee: Howbeir, thou hast a favourable Judge; for if there be any thing that cannot be excused, yet at the

Least it may be pardoned.

VL

thee

nof

in

Was

he

ing ES 2 În-

dy.

t to

ich.

Te.

100

l to

he

his

inte

ed.

he

hat

ght aid

bou

ban

ing

ind

Ce-

, if

the

bee, in-uch

ible

To this Philot as nothing abashed (if the heart may be ideed by the countenance) made answer, That Ceballinus weed brought him a vain Report, the Reporter whereof was ner-light of credit to be believed, and that he feared, lest by in refenting of such a matter arising only from a Brabble bewist two persons of evil disposition, he might himself have been laust at to scorn: But afterwards, when he once knew that Dinnus had flain himself, how mean soever were the Relaters, be must be convinced of the Treason, and resolved no longer to bove concealed it. And so falling down before the King, bebusht him that he would rather have respect to his life mil than to his fault, which was only a concealment, and note done. It is hard to fay, whether the King believed him,or grounded his displeasure more deeply in his heart; nevertheless, in token of pardon, he gave him his hand, living. That it appeared that the Accusation was rather mismedited by him, than concealed of malice. Norwithstanding he called his Councel together, amongst whom Philot is we not admitted, but Nichomachus was brought in before den, where he repeated the whole Matter as he had before related to the King. There was one Craterus, at that imein special favour with Alexander, who for the envy he had to Philoton's advancement, bore him always a grudge: Heknew very well that the King had often been displeased with Philoton for the over-much advancing of his good ferinc, and valiant Acts: But yet for all that he was not fufeeded of Treason, but only noted for presumption and arrogency. Craterus thought that he could not have a better confion to oppress his Enemy, than by colouring his prirate hatred with a pretence of duty towards his Prince.

I mould to God (quach he) you had taken our counsel in the reinning of this business; for if you would needs have pardoned bin, you should have kept from him his knowledge how much be main danger, rather than have brought him in fear of his life; whereby you shall make bim more mindful of his own peril, than four goodness, for he may always imagine your death, but m shall not be always in a condition to pardon him. Never imatime that he who purposed so beingus a Treason, would change

BOOK VI

fe

0

W

OU de

10

(C

70 Th

A

IP Gd

do

his purpose for the Indulgence of a Pardon. You know well. that such as offend are often in dispair of mercy; and thoughte perchance, either with repentance of his fault, or remembrance of your goodness, would change his mind; yet I am sure that bis Father Parmenio, Captain-General of fo great an Arm, and of so grounded Authority among st your Souldiers (and beld in their Veneration and esteem but a little degree below the Great Alexander himself) would be ill content to be in me debt for his Sons life. There are certain benefits hatefult men, and it is a shame to confess to have deserved death: Therefore I conclude, that he had rather it should be though you had done him wrong, than that you had given him his Life. I cannot see therefore, but you shall be inforced to destroy them for your own necessary security: There are Enemies enough remaining, yet unconquered; against whom we are going; make your self sure from your Foes at bome, so shall ye have less needle

fear your Enemies abroad.

These were Craterus's words; and the residue of the Councel were of opinion, that Philotas would never have concealed this Conspiracy, except he had been either Principal, or privy thereunto : For they thought there was no true man, or honest heart, though none of the Kings Familiars but the meanest of his Vassals, hearing 6 much as Philot as heard, but would forthwith have opened the Conspiracy. But he being the Son of Parmento, Mather of the Kings Horse, and of his Privy Councel, did not fo much as a Stranger, who straightway made relation of what his Brother had told him. And whereas he pretended, that the King was not at leifure, they judged it to be done, to the intent the Accuser should not seek my other to whom he might divulge it; whereas Nichomachu, albeit he was bound by his Oath to the contrary, yet would he never rest till he had discharged his Conscience But Philotos, when he confumed, in a manner, the whole day in sport and pastime with the King, could not find in his Heart to cast forth a few words, especially in a matter fo much concerning the Kings safeguard. But admit (quoth they) he had given no credit to the matter through el.

he

TICE

hat my, reld

the

ON!

l to

th:

ebt

fe.

em

re-

lio

he

ve

er

re

6

led 12.

ot

of

e-

ny

lu,

e: ole

in ar-

対象が

he lightness of the Reporter, why should he have defer the Accuser two days, as though he had believed it For if he had misliked the Report, he might have dismised the party. It was also alledged, that every mans mind much misgives him, when the matter concerneth his own jeopardy; much more ought men to be credulos, when it toucheth the fafety of a Kings person, in which case every thing, tho of the most trivial moment, ought to be throughly examined: They all therefore determined, that Philotas should be inforced to disclose the Partners of this Conspiracy. The King commanding then to keep the matter fecret, departed; and to the ment that the Resolves of this Councel should not take theleast Air, he caused it to be proclaimed, that the Army should be set forward the next day. The same night he King called Philotas to a Banquet, with whom he whated not only to eat, but also familiarly to discourse, notwithstanding he had before in the Councel determined his death. After the second Watch of the night, Ephesti-Craterus, Coenus and Erygaus, who were of the Kings Councel, came privily into the Court without light; and othe Esquires, there came Perdiccas and Leonatus, by shom Commandment was given, that all fuch as lay near the Kings lodging should watch in Arms.

By this time Souldiers were appointed to all the Passates, and Horsemen were sent to keep the ways, that no man should pass privily to Parmenio, who was then Goremour of Media, and had under him a great power. Then Artaras came into the Court with Three hundred armed men, to whom there were appointed ten of those that had the charge of the Kings Person, every one of them accompanied with ten Esquires, who were divided into divers companies to take the other Conspirators. But Artaras, with his three hundred, was sent to Philotas's lodging, where with fifty of the most resolute, he brake to his Chamber door that was shut against them; the residue were commanded to beset the House, least he might cape by some secret way. Philotas, whether it were

K 2

411

" it

" 2

",M

" l

4

« t

HO.

M

an

YH

pr

61.

66

through the furety of his own Conscience, or through weariness of the travel of his mind, was in so profound? fleep, that Artaras brake in upon him before he waked. But at length, when he was rouzed, and come to himfelf perceiving they went about to bind him, he cryed out and faid; Oh Alexander, the Malice of my Enimies has prevailed above thy Mercy. Speaking these words, they covered his Face, and brought him into the Court. The next day the King gave Commandment, that certain of the Men of War should affemble in Arms, to the number of fix thousand: Besides these, there were a Rabble of the Black Guard that filled the Court, who being affembled together, the Armed men compassed in Philoras with their Band, to the intent he should not be seen by the people till such time as the King might speak to the Souldiers; for by an old Law of the Macedons, the Army was wontto enquire in matters of Treason; nor could the King's Anthority prevail to Condemnation, except it were confirmed by the consent of the Men of War : Therefore the Body of Dimnus was first brought into the place, the most part knowing not what he had done, or by what chance he was flain. Then came the King forth to speak to the multitude, who in his Countenance declared the trouble

spoke to them in this manner:

By the Treason of some Assassinates I was almost taken from you; but through the Mercy and Providence of the Gods, I am yet preserved. Your Honourable Presence does constrain me more vehemently to be moved against those Traytors, because the only comfort and fruit of my life is, that I remain to give thanks to so many brave and Gallant men, and to whom I am.

of his mind; and the sadness of such as were near about him, gave the rest of the Spectators a great expectation of the event. He cast his eyes down to the Earth, and in

a muse, till at length resuming his wonted boldness he

fo much obliged.

With speaking of these Words, the murmur and sights of the multitude interrupted his Speech, whilst the tears fell from their Eyes; then the King renewed his Difgourse. ngh

da

ed.

elf,

out.

has

hey

the

of the

ed

eir

le

:

to

Ď.

n-

o-A

ě

t

"How much more will you be moved, when I shall shew you the Authors of so horrible a Treason, which I yet instant, as one very loath to discover their Names? But I must recal the memory of my former Favours, and utter the Conspiracy of my unnatural Subjects; for how is it possible for me to hide so great a Treason? Parmenin, a man of that Age, so deeply in my debt, through the most ample benefits both of me and my Father, and whom I most esteemed of all my Friends, is the Capmain and Contriver of all this Mischief: His Minister Philias, has suborned Peucolaus, Demetrius, and this Diminus, (whose body you here see) with other Partners of their Wickedness, to conspire my Destruction.

As he spake these words, there arose throughout the multitude a great murmur and complaint, such as useth to be amongst Men of War, when they are moved with a medical or displeasure. With that, Nichomachus, Metron, and Ceballinus were brought forth, every one of them giving in Evidence of what they had spoken before; yet it appeared not by any mans Information, that Philotas was privy to the Conspiracy. But at the last, when the noise was ceased, and the Witnesses had said what they could,

the King proceeded in this manner:

"Of what mind think you was this man, who hearing "the whole Report, could find in his heart to conceal the "Treason, the truth whereof is sufficiently testified by the "death of Dimnus? Ceballinus that reported an uncertain "Story, for the certain tryal thereof, was afraid of no forment; and never delayed any moment of time, till "he had discharged himself, insomuch that he brake in-"to the place where I was barhing; but Philotas only "feared nothing, believed nothing. O how great a heart "had this man, who receiving knowledge of the danger "of his King, did never change countenance, nor take "fo much pains, as to hear out the Information of the "Accuser! But in this filence and concealment there is "Treafon hidden, and the Ambitious Defire he had to a-"fpire to Empire, drove him headlong to the blackeft of K.4.

"Wickedness. His Father is Governour of Media, and "bears such a Command amongst the Captains and Menos "War, through my Authority, that his hopes aspire to far more than what he possesses; and because I am with out Children, he esteemeth me not: But Philotas is de ceived, I have Children, Friends, and Kinsfolk amongst you: So long as you are in safety, I shall not recken my self without Heirs.

Then he produced an intercepted Letter, which Pannenio had written to his Sons, Nicanor and Philotas; where in there appeared no great proof of any express Treason intended. The Contents were these: "First take good hed to your selves, and then to those that belong to you; so fall we bring to pass what we have purposed. Which Letter the King enforced; saying, "It was written aftersuch a manner, that if it came to his Sons hands it might be understood by them that knew the design; but if it were taken by the way, it should deceive them that

" knew it not, Then proceeded be. " Now will Philotas perhaps fav, that when Dimnus named all that were partakers of his Conspiracy, hem-" med not him. As for that, it is no proof of his Inno-"cency, but a token of his Power and Authority, because " he was feared even of them that might betray him, " who though discovering themselves, durst not speak of "him: But what manner of man he hath been, his life doth shew: He was Fellow and Companion to Amputas " my Kiniman, who conspired High-Treason against my " Person in Macedon: He gave his Sister in Marriage to At-" talus, than whom I had never greater Enemy. When "by reason of old Friendship and Familiarity, I wrote "to him of the Title given to me by the Oracle of Ju-"very glad that I was admitted into the number of the "Gods, howbeit very forry for those that should live m-" der fuch a one as would exceed the condition of man-"These were plain tokens that his heart was turned from " me, and that he despised my Glory: This I kept close , and

en of

re to

with-

is de-

ones

n my

trme.

here-

afon

heed

1 6

hich

fuch

ne be

fit

that

na-

na-

mo-

wie

im,

of

life

tas

ny

4

te

14.

25

he

n-

m

0

in my heart fo long as I might; for I thought it no lefs: than tearing out part of my own Bowels, if I flould! render them contemptible for whom I had done so much: But now it is not words that must be punished, for the: raffiness of their Tongues is turned to Swords, which (believe me) Philotas has wherted to my Destruction; whom if I should suffer to escape, alas, my Souldiers, whither should I go? To whom should I commit my "Person? He was the man that I made General of my Cavalry, of the greatest part of my Forces, and the Chief of the most Noble of the Youth of my Army: To his. muth and fidelity have I committed my Safeguard, my Hope, and Victory: His Father did I prefer even to the fame Estate and Dignity to which you have advanced me. Media, than which there is not a richer Country, with: many thousands of your Friends and Companions, I have put under his Governance and Authority. Where II "trusted of most Surety, there I have found most danger: How much more happy had I been to have died in Battel, and to have been flain by mine Enemies, than. "to be thus betrayed by my Subjects? For now being fa-"ved from the dangers which I most feared, I have fallen. "into those which I ought to have least doubted. You: "have been wont oftentimes to warn me, that Ishoulds regard my fafety; it is you that now may do that for me: which you have counselled me to: To your Arms, and "to your succour do I fly: I would not live, though I "might, against your wills, and though you would, yet: can I not, unless by you, I be delivered from my " Enemies.

Hereupon Philotas was brought forth in an old garment;, his hands bound behind him: It well appeared how much this miserable fight moved even their Hearts to look upon him with all the tenderness and pity, who so lately had theld him with all the Poyson of Envy. The day before they saw him General of the Horse, they knew that he was at Supper with the King, and suddenly they saw him, both a Prisoner bound like a Thief, and also condemned to die:

K. 5

マスト

« re

fron

u it

" h

4 21

40

64

4 8

40

0

THE POST

41

4

41

4

4

t raised no common compassion, to consider how Parmens, so Noble a man, so great a Captain, who late having lost two Sons, Hester and Nicanor, should be put to answer for the third, whom calamity had lest alive. The multitude being thus inclined to pity, Ammas, one of the Kings Officers, with a bitter invective, set them all against the Prisoner.

"We are all (quoth he) betrayed to the Barbarous Nations; not one of us shall return home to his Country, Wife, or Friends, but we shall be a maimed body
without a Head, without Honour, without Fame, and
in a strange Country shall be made the Scorn and Derison

" of our Enemies.

His Words were nothing pleasing to the King, because he put the Souldiers in remembrance of their Wives and Country, whereby he thought they would be the less willing to go forwards in his Wars. There was one Conus. who though he had married the Sifter of Philotas, yet did he more extreamly inveigh against him, than any other, reviling him with Traytor to bis King, bis Country, and to the whole Army: And thereupon took up a stone, that by chance lay at his feet, to have cast at Philotas; which he did (as some thought) to the end he might rid him from further torments: But the King kept back his hand, and faid, That the Prisoner should have liberty to speak for himself, and would not suffer him to be condemned otherwise. Then Philotas being admitted to speak, were it through the conscience of his offence, or through the greatness of his impending danger, as a man aftonished, and besides himfelf, durst neither look up, nor speak, but burst out in tears; whereupon his heart fainted, and he swooned down upon those that led him: But afterwards, when he had wiped his Eyes, and by little and little recovered his hear and tongue, he prepared to speak for himself. Then the King beheld him in the face, and faid; "The Maceum " shall be thy Judges; I would know therefore whether thou wilt speak to them in thy Country Language, or "not? To whom Philotas answered, There are divers Na-66 tions

205

nous here besides the Macedons, who I trust shall receive my words the better, if I speak in the same tongue that you have done, to the intent that it may be better understood by the generality of the People here preent.

Then said the King, Mark how this man hates his own Native Language; for there is none but he that will distain to speak it: But let him say what he will, do you member, that he not only contemns our Customs, but also our Language. And with that word the King departed.

from the Assembly. Then said Philotas:

neing

li.

he

nft

la undy od on

ife nd il-

u,

T,

by he m

ıf,

B

1-

İS

1

0

n

d

t

15

r

"It is easie for an Innocent to find words to speak; but: it is very hard for a man in misery, to keep a remper in "his Discourse. Thus standing betwixt a clear Conscience. and most unhappy Fortune, I know nor which way I "hall facisfie my felf, and the time, both together : For the that is the best and greatest Judge in my Cause is sone: What the reason is he would not hear me, I canou well imagine; fince upon the matter heard, it lies only in his Breaft, either to discharge me, or condemn : me: For the matter not heard, he cannot acquit me being absent, fince he condemned me when he was here present. Howsoever, the defence of a Prisoner is not only superfluous, but also hateful, which seems not to inform, but to reprove his Judge: Yet will I not forsake my felf, nor so demean me, that I may seem condemned by mine own default: I fee not of what Treason I should "be guilty: Amongst the Conspirators no man named me; "Michomachur said nothing of me; Ceballinus could not tell more of me than he heard: And yet does the King believe, that I should be the Head of this Conspiracy. Was it possible that Dimnus should forget to name him that was the Principal? Or is it likely that he would have over-flipped me, when the Names of the Conspirators were demanded of him? He would rather have named mefally, to allure the young man the sooner to his Party: Yet when he told the matter privily to Nichoma-"chus, whom he verily believed would have kept it fe-"cres, naming himself, and all the rest, of me only he

W

to

a h

4 V

" I

a u

" jt

46

" d

" D

"b

4

1

.

.

66

a

4

"

"

.

4

- 66

-

4

4

4

-

.

4

made no mention: It cannot be gathered, that he omitted me, because he would have spared me. I pray you (my Fellows) if no man had come to me, nor given me knowledge of this Design, should I this day have been put to answer, when no man could have accused me? But be it that Dimnus were alive, and would spare me, what think you by the other? Would they deter themselves, and sorbear me? Adversity is malicious and spiteful; an Offender, when he is punished himself, uses not to keep silence to spare another man: Commonly he that goes to Death will spare no man; nor will any spare him that is ready to die: Will not so many guilty Persons, as are put to terments, consess the truth?

"But now I must answer to the Crime of which I stand " accused, if indeed, there can be found any Crime a wall? Why did I conceal Treason? Why did I hear it " with so little regard? This fault, if it were a fault, thou " hast pardoned me (O Alexander!') whatsoever thou are " by giving me thy hand, and bidding me to Supper with "thee: If thou didst believe me, I am clear; if thou " didft forgive me, I am acquitted: Stand at the leaft to "thy own Judgement. Alas, what have I done, fince " this last night I went from your Table? What new reoport has changed your mind? I was in a found steep, "when my Enemies, by their binding, waked me, who was fleeping in mine own misfortune: Offenders canto not fleep through their unquiet Conscience, and are flung with secret torments, not only when their mis-" chief is intended, but also when it is performed. But " this calm Repose and Quietness came to me first through " mine own Innocency, and then by the King's Pardon, " figned and fealed by that facred hand he gave me; life " tle feared that my Enemies cruelty should over-power " my Sovereigns Mercy. But that it may not repent them " to have believed me, you shall understand, that this " Conspiracy was first shewed me by a light Fellow, who " could not bring any Witnesses or Warrant of his words; 66. which which if I had disclosed, it would have put many men to trouble. O unhappy that I am! I thought mine ears had been seduced with the falling out of two Infamous Wretches guilty of the most unnatural Beastiality; and "I suspected the truth of the Party, because he did not utter the matter himself, but procured his Brother to do "it; I was in fear, that the one should have denied whatever the other affirmed; and so I should have only been "drawn in by their groundless Villainy to have created "much trouble to many of the King's Friends: So that because I would have offended none, I have found some more defirous to procure my death, than to fave my "life: What hatred, suppose ye, should I have gotten, if "I had accused Innocents? But Dimnus flew himself; "could I therefore divine before, that he would fo do? "No furely, this his death being that which only gave cre-" dit to the Accusation, could not move me to utter it.

"being prevented by another.

"And if I had been a Conspirator with Dimnus of so "great a Treason, is it likely that I would have dissem-"bled it, by the space of two days, after it was discover-"ed? As for Ceballinus, it had been an easie matter to "have dispatched him out of the way after the thing dis-" closed; wherefore should I have delayed the wicked De-"fign? I entred into the King's Chamber alone, having "my Weapons about me; why deferred I my purpose? Durst I not attempt it without Dimnus? But perchance "ye will fay, Because he was the chief Conspirator: How "then stands it together, that I should be his Underling, "who aspired to no less than to be King of Macedon? Which " of you all have I corrupted with Bribes? What Cap-" rain, what Officer have I inclined to more than another? "It is laid to my Charge, that I abhor the speaking of my "Country Language, and that I disdain the Manners of "the Macedons. What? Do I despise the Kingdom that "I covet?" Ye know that our Natural Tongue, through "our Conversation with other Nations, is gone out of use; as well those that be Conquerors, as they that be subdu-

4

663

4

-

"

ed auft learn a foreign Language. But furely these thing make no more against me, than did the Treason that A. " myntas, the Son of Perdiccas, intended against the King; with him I had Friendship; I will not deny, exceptive " will make it a thing unlawful to love the King's Brother: "But it was our Duty to honour a man called to that de-" gree of Fortune; I befeech you, am I guilty because ! eould not guess before that he would offend? Is the "Law fuch, that the Friends of Offenders must suffer be-" ing Innocents? If that be the reason, why live I so long! " If it be no reason, why am I condemned to die? But "I am charged, that I had pity of them that should live " under such a one as believed himself to be the Son of " Jupiter. O faith of friendship, and dangerous liberty of true Counsel! it was you that deceived me, it was you " that compelled me to utter those thoughts which other " wise I should have ever kept buried in filence: I confes " I wrote so to the King, but not of the King. I did it " not for spire, but for my duty sake: I thought it more "expedient for Alexander to have acknowledged the Kin-"dred of Jupiter with filence, than to have published and proclaimed it with Ostentation. But because the " truth of God's Oracle is certain, let God be witness in " my Cause. Retain me in Prison, till ye may know ?" " pirer's answer concerning this Conspiracy; and in the mean season, he that hath youchsafed our King to be his "Son, will fuffer none of them that have conspired against " his Off-spring, to remain unknown and undetected: If " you suppose torments more effectual than Oracles, I will or not defire to be faved from them in tryal of truth. There " is an old use, that such as be put to answer upon Life " and Death, are accustomed to bring their Parents and "Kinsmen before you: Two Brothers of late have I lost; "my Father I neither can bring forth, nor dare I call for, because he is accused of this Treason with me. It is a " fmall thing for him that is the Father of many Children, " and having but one Son left in whom to take Pleasure, "not only to lofe him, but also to lose his own life with 66 him:

85

ij

re

.

L

1

It

c

Y

1

whim: Therefore, my most dear Father, shalt thou die for me, and with me: It is I that do take thy life from thee: Teis I that put a period to thy old days: Why didft thou beger me, unhappy Wretch, in hatred of the "Gods? Was it to receive fuch fruit from me as is prewared for thee? I am in doubt, whether my Youth be more unhappy, or thine Age! For I in the flower of my "years am plucked away, and the Executioner shall be-Frave thee of thy Life; which if Fortune would have "fuffered to continue, yet Nature would have asked it "e're it had been long. The remembrance of my Father "doth put me in mind how loath and timorous I ought to have been to the report of Informations: For when my Father was advertised that Philip the Phylician had "prepared Poyfon for Alexander, he wrote a Letter to "warn the King, that he should not receive the Medicine "which his Physician had prepared: Was my Father be-"lieved? Was his Letter of any Authority? I my felf, " when I have reported fuch things as I heard, how often "have I been repulfed and laught at for my overlight cre-"dulity? So that when we tell things, we are hated; "and when we hold our peace, we are suspected? What "would you have us to do?

Then one of the Company that flood by, cryed our That none ought to be Traytors to them from whom they have

received Obligations.

Thou sayest well (quoth Philotas) whosever thou art: And therefore, if I have committed Treason, I require no rehite of my pain. And here will I make an end of feaking, because my last Words seem tedious and ungrateful to your ears.

As he was speaking these words, his Keepers led him There was amongst the Captains one Belon, a hardy man, but one very rude, and void of all civility; who being an old Souldier, was promoted from a low eflare, to the degree of Captain: This Belon, presuming upon a foolish audacity, (when all others kept silence) began to tell them, that when divers had taken up their lodg-

BOOK VE

H

hi

lodgings in the Camp, how they were thrust out by the Servants of Philotos, who would take his quarters where other men were placed before; and how all the Streets were full of his Wagons, laden with Gold and Silver. He added further, that Philotas would fuffer none to lodge near unto him, but always appointed certain to wait whiles he flept, least his effeminate ease should be disquie. ted with any noise; not so much for wakening of him. as for diffurbing his reft; and that he was so haughty, that he despised the plain men of Phrygia and Paphlagoma, and tho being a Macedon born, was not ashamed to hear men of his own Speech and Nation by an Interpreter: And whereas he had heretofore moved to have the Oracle of Jupiter enquired after, he said. it was meant thereby to make Jupiter a lyer, for acknowledging Alexander to be his Son; as if any man should envy the King for that Title which the Gods had given him : But why (faidhe) did he not ask counsel of Jupiter before he arrem pred the Life both of his Patron and his King? For now he would have fent to the Oracle, that in the mean feafon his Father, who rules in Media, might raise a power; and with the Money trusted in his Custody assemble others more defperate Conforts in his impious Defigns. Nevertheless, we shall (said he) send to Jupiter, not to inquire of any thing that concern'd the King, being in that already too well fatisfied, but to give him thanks, and to facrifice to him for the prefervation of fo good a King. Then all the Company was moved, and among them there began a cry, That the Traytor should be rent in pieces; which Doom Philotas (who feared more grievous punishment) was content to hear.

The King returning, deferred the Councel till the next day; either to commit Philotas to Prison, to be there Racked, or else, in the mean season, to get further knowledge of the Treason: yet albeit it drew towards night he called together some of his particular Friends.

Some of them thought it best, that Philotas should be Stoned to death, after the Macedons Laws : Ephestion, Cra-

terus,

G

the

ere

ets

He

ait

ic-

m,

ar

nd

ar

11

le

by

be i-

e)

d

terus and Canus, advised to have him put to the Rack to extort the whole Truth by Torments; and then they who perswaded the contrary, turned also to their Opinion : Therefore when the Councel was broken up, Epbestion, with Craterus and Conus arose, to haste Philotas to the examination. The King called Craterus to him; and commanding the reft to avoid, had fecret communication with him in the innermost part of his Lodging, the Subject whereof came not to any mans knowledge. He tarried there till the night was far past, to hear the end of the deremination: The Executioners fet forthall forts of crueltorments in the fight of Philotas, at the appearance of which, he thus uttered himself:

Why defer you to kill such a man as hath confessed himself the Kings Enemy, and a Traytor? What needs more Exami-

nation? It was my intent, it was my will.

Craterus's intention was, that whatfoever was confessed before, should be confessed by Philotas again upon the" lack. Whilest he was tyed to the Rack, his Body naked, his Eyes bound, he cryed out upon the Law of Nature, and the Gods of the Country; but all was in vain to their deaf ears, Finally, as a condemned man, to gratifie the lings Humour and Pleasure, he was torn by his Enemies with the utmost Extremity of Torments: And notwithfanding both Fire and Scourges where ministred unto him, more to afflict him, than to examine him; yet he had power of himself, both to refrain from speaking and groaning. But after that his Body began to be swoln with stripes, and that he could not abide the Scourges, which pierced to the bare bones; he promised, if they would torment him no more, he would confess whatsoeter they should require of him: But first he would have them to swear by the Life of Alexander, that they should teafe their torments, and fet the Rack afide. being obtained, he said to Craterus, Tell me what ye will have me to confess: Thereat Craterus was displeased, thinking by those words that he had mocked him; and alled the Executioners to renew his Torments. Philotas

had provide

of h

dert

ka

Day

able

adv

Dan fire dis

too

ici

all

no ga

had

Philotas befought him to have a time of respite, whiles he might take his breath, and then he would utter all that ever he knew. In the mean season, the chief of the men at Arms, and especially such as were near to Parmenia in any degree of Kindred, after that the Fame was spread that Philotas was tormented, fearing the Macedons Law, (wherein it was ordained, that the Kinssolk of such as had committed Treason against the King, should be put to death with the Traytors) some slew themselves, some sled into wild Mountains, and wast Wildernesses; and great dread and sear fell through all the Host, till such time as the King being advertised of it, made Proclamation, that he would pardon the rigour of the Law to the Kinssolk of the Traytors.

In conclusion Philotas made his Confession; but whether it were to deliver himself out of pain, by accusing himselffalsly, or not, it is to be doubted; seeing that it is commonly seen, that both those that truly confess, and falfly deny, come all to one end: You are not ignorant (quoth he) how familiar my Father was with Egilocus, I mean the same that was slain in the Field; he was the canse of all our Miseries: For when the King took upon him the Title of Jupiter's Son; he discained thereat: Shall we acknowledge him (quoth he) to be our King, who takes it in scorn that Philip was his Father? We are all undone, if we can fiffer this: He doth not only despise men, but the Gods also, who will himself be reputed a God. We have lost Alexander; me have lost our King ; he is fallen to Presumption, neither tolerable to the Gods with whom he exalts himself, nor to men whom he disdains: Have we with our Blood made him a God who now dispises us? Who scorns to be rank'd in the number and State of men? Trust me, that we also, if we be men, shall be adopted of the Gods. Who hath revenged the deaths of Alexander his Grand-father, or of Archelaus, or Perdiccas? For this man bath forgiven even his own Fathers Murderens. These were the Words that Egilocus spoke about suppertime, and on the morrow early my Father sent for me: He himself was heavy, and saw me also sad, for we both

nat

en

in

ad

W,

25

ut ne

nd

ill

0-

to

e-

it

nd

nt

1

fe le

p.

ut

f.

10

e .

d

1

1, f

he heard what had given us disquiet: Therefore to whether he uttered these words through excess of wine, or premeditation, we thought good to fend for and feeking occasion to renew the former discourse, this own accord he added further; That if we durft unlenake the Adventure, he would not shrink from us; or if our harts ferved not, be would keep our Counsel: Yet so long as Dains was living, my Father thought the defign unfeatonble, because the death of Alexander should be to the dvantage of our Enemies, and not of our selves: But Dains once rid out of the way, then he that could demy the King, should obtain the Empire of Asia, and all orient for his reward: Which counsel being approv-A Faith and Engagement was given; but concerning Dimnus, I know nothing.

When he had confessed all this; I perceive (quoth he) that it does not availme, that I am utterly guiltless of this Trea-Then they renewed his forments, and beat his Face ad Eyes with their Truncheons and Spears, till they infreed him, not only to betray himself, but also to declare hecircumstance of the whole Treason pretended : Because (moth he) it seemed that the King would continue long arong the Ballrians, I was afraid, left my Father, that had foreat a power in his hands, and the keeping of fo much heafure (being seventy years of age) should happen to die the mean season; and then being disarmed of so great thength, I should not get opportunity to kill the King; herefore I hasted the matter, whilest the prey was in and. Thus discovered he the Conspiracy, whereof if they believed his Father to be Author (he faid) that for histryal he refused not to be tormented again, tho it were 100 grievous for him to endure. The Officers then whifkring together, thought the examination fufficient, and returned with it to the King, who on the morrow caused all the Confession to be openly recited before Philoton, whom he caused to be led into the place, because he was or able to go: and there he confessed all the Treason again: Then Demetrius was brought forth, who was counBut he with great protestations and incredible stoumes, both of Heart and Countenance, denied that he ever intended any evil against the King; and for his tryal, de-

fired to be tormented.

Then Philotas casting his eyes about, espied one Calis standing by, and made a sign to him to draw near; who being abashed, and refusing to come forwards; Wilt thous (quoth he) suffer Demetrius to bye, and me to be racked again? With those words Calis became speechless and changed colour. Then the Macedons began to suspect that he would accuse Innocents, because the same Calis was neither named by Nichomachus, nor by Philotas himself in his Torments: But finally Philotas, before the Kings Officers that stood round him, confessed, that the Treason was conspired by himself, and Demetrius; wherefore as many as were impeached by Nichomachus, upon a token given, were stoned to death according to the Macedons Law.

Thus was Alexander delivered from great peril, not only of his safety, but also of his life: For Parmeno and Philotas being of such power, if they had not openly been sound culpable, could not have been condemned without the Resentment and Murmur of the whole Army. So long therefore as Philotas denied the Fast, the matter seemed doubtful, and many men thought him cruelly handled. But after he had confessed the circumstances, no man, not so much as his nearest Friends, took any pity of him.

th

BOOK VI

s: s, n-

lis

no ou

o- ld er

is

fi-

25

ns

ito

1

t,

ıt

e

THE

SEVENTH BOOK.

of the Acts of Alexander the Great, KING of Macedon.

A S the Men of War thought Philotas justly put to death, whileft his offence was fresh in memory seven so, after hewas gone, their hate was turned into pity: The Nobleof the Young Man moved them much; so did the number of the Old Years and Desolation of his Childless fuher. He was the first that made the way open for Alexander into Asia, always partaker of his perils, the Leader of the other Wing of his Army, and chief in Councel with the King his Father; and fo trusty to Alexander himself, that in oppressing of Attalus, his Enemy, he would use no other mans service. The remembrance of befe things was fresh among all the Souldiers, and seditous words came to the Kings ears, who being moved therewith, did wifely with travel avoid the evil occasions rifing from idleness: wherefore he caused it to be prodaimed, that all men should be in a readiness before the Court-gate, where they being once affembled, he came forth to speak to them. And as it was before contrived, herequired the Band of the Agrians to bring forth one Alexander Lyncestes, which long before Philotas had conspired the Kings Death. This Man being accused of two Witnelles (as before faid) had remained in Prison Three Years together; against whom it was proved, that he was Con-

Confederate with Paulanias in the Murder of King Philip! But because he saluted first Alexander by the Name of King. his punishment was deferred, rather than his offence forgiven : For at the intercession of Antipater, his Fatherinlaw, the King had respited his just indignation for the time. But the old festered fore brake out again, and the confideration of his peril present, recalled the remembrance of his danger passed: Therefore when he was brought forth of Prifon, and commanded to plead for himfelf, albeit he had three years leifure to devise his answer, yet stammering and trembling, could bring forth but little of that which he purposed to say; and finally, both his heart and his memory failed him: wherefore there was none that doubted, but that his fearfulness was a roken of a guilty Conscience, and no default of memory: So that whilft he was flammering and faultring in his tale, they that flood next thrust him through with their Pikes; whose body conveyed out of the place, the King commanded A. mynt as and Simmias to be brought forth; for Palemon, their youngest Brother, after he had knowledge of Philotas's torment, fled away. Of all Philotas's friends, these two were most dear to him, and through his commendation, advanced to high and honourable Offices: The King remembring with what earnestness and labour Philotas had brought them into his favour, doubted not but they were privy to his last Conspiracy. Whereupon he declared to the multitude, that he had occasion of suspicion against those men long ago by his Mothers Letters, whereby he had warning to beware of them; and that now fearing the fequel of worfer inconveniencies, had fecured them, inforced thereunto by apparent prefumptions. First, he said, the day before Philotas's Treason came to light, it was well known, that they had much conference with him in fecret: And also their Brother; who fled away when Philotas was on the Rack, had declared, by the absenting of himself, the guilty cause of his flying. He shewed also, what of late, contrary to their accustomed manner of waiting, without any cause moving them thereunto, but only by pretence

l.

10

g, T-

innat

he

m.

vas

m-

er, tle

his

25

of

nat ofe

1.

cir

916

id.

m. the

to ul-

en

ng of

re.

ay

m,

nd

on he

tċ,

out

of

diligence, they preffed next about the King of all other; mercat marvelling that they were so officious in what was efruit of their herding to near him, that he returned inme Train of the Gentlemen that followed him: He dedred beside, that when Antiphanes, Clerk of the Stable, he day before Philotas's Treason came to light, according whis accustomed manner, gave knowledge to Amyntas, he hould deliver of his Horse, to such as had lost their own; he proudly answered again, that except he would conun himself, he should know shortly what manner of man he Which violence of rongue, and rashness of words his launche out (quoth he) was nothing else, but a dediration and token of his trayterous heart. These things being true (he faid) they had no less deserved than Philoin; and if they were otherwise, he defired they might answer to the points, alledged against them: Thereupon, Aniphanes was brought in to give Evidence of the Horse me delivered, and of his proud answer given with threating. When Amyntas had gotten liberty to speak, he defred of the King, that whiles they answered for themselves, their Bands might be loosed: which thing obtained, he, made fuit to have his garment to be restored him; which Mexander not only granted, but ordered a Lance to be debered into his hands, as the rest of his Esquires then bore. Which when he had received, avoiding a little the place where just before the body of Lyncestes lay, he utered himself in this manner.

Whatsoever shall become of us (O King) If our chance be good, we must impute it to your Favour, and if bad we must lay the fault on Fortune, seeing you suffer us to plead our cause without prejudice, setting our minds fice, and our bodies at large, with the same apparel responded us, wherein we were wont to follow you: Our cause is such, that we cannot doubt of it, and we are passed the sear of Fortune; therefore, with your permission, I will answer sirst those points wherewith you charged us last. We know most assuredly, that we are

" innocent of any kind of words spoken to the derogation of " your Majefty; and durft affirm, that you had overcome " all envy of men, but that peradventure you would think " that I went about with our present fair Language to ex-" cufe any former words that may have maliciously sipe of from us: Though it were fo, that harsh words sometime " did escape us, either when we were faint, or wearied a in marching, hazarding our selves in fighting; or else " when we were fick, or dreffing of our Wounds: Our " honest doings otherwise do deserve, that ye should n-"ther impute it to the time, than to any evil disposition " in us: For it is commonly seen, where any thing chan-" ces amis, all men in a manner become guilty of the fault " We do violence sometime to our own Bodies, which we " hate not: Nay, sometimes the very Visits of Parents to their own Children, is both ungrateful, and also hateful, "But on the other fide, when we receive rewards or gifts, " or when we come laden home with Spoil, Who can then " flay us? Who can restrain our chearfulness? or, Who " can refift our courage in fighting? The Nature of Man, " is neither to keep measure in displeasure, nor in glador ness. Thus are we driven by the violence of affection, es we loath, we praise, we pity, we hate, and all this " change as the diversity of our present passion guides us. "One while we are in the mind to pass through India, as as the Ocean Sea; and by and by, the memory of our Wives, and Children, and Country, alters our purpofe: But as foon as the Trumper founds, ftraight all thefe " imaginations vanish, and every man then runs into his « Rank, revenging upon their Enemies the displeasures conceived within their own Tents. I would Philiai " had offended but only in words; I would pass over that, " and return to the other point whereof we are accused: "The friendship that was betwixt Philotas and us, I will " not only not deny, but also confess, that was a great part " of our own feeking and Ambition, and from whence we "received great Advantages. Do you marvel that we " paid honour and esteem to the Son of Parmento, whom

ď

k

Ot

C d

íc-

ır

.

n

t

ie 0

1.

8.

n

0

n,

D, 15

3.

15 ıŕ

:

îe

is

25

ıs i,

ŀ

1

rt

ie

ie

m

chose to be next about your Person, and advanced whore all other your Friends? You your felf (if you tale to hear the truth) are the cause of this our prelene peril. What other thing moved us to covet Phi-Friendship, than that we defired to please you? by this preferment we are exalted to your favour: He food in fuch height with you, that it behoved us as well in fue for his benevolence, as to fear his displeasure: The not we fworn that we would repute your Enemies our Enemies, and honour your Friends as our own? Sould we have been found disobedient in this Bond of our Duty; and especially towards him, whom ye preferred above all men? If this be a fault, ye have few Innocents, or furely none at all: All men defired Philo-Friendship, though all that defired it could not atminit. So if ye will make no difference between the Parmers of his Treason, and such as were his Friends; then so many are Offenders, as would have been his Friends. What presumption have you now that we fould offend? What, because yesterday Philotos talkd with us familiarly alone? If in fo doing I had acted my new or accustomed thing, I should be the less able o clear my felf; but if so be we used every day to do he like, then Custom must needs make it to be no Offence. But it may be faid, The Horses were not deliwered to Antiphanes; and the day before Philotas was detected, this difference was betwixt Antiphanes and ne: If that be a just cause of suspicion, that I would not then deliver my Horses, there shall arise a doubtful Plea between the Denier and the Demander, faving that his Cause is better that keeps still his own, than his that requires another mans. I had ten Horfes, of which Anti-Manes had distributed eight to such as had lost their own; fo there only remained two, which when he would proudly and wrongfully have taken away, I was infored to keep them still, except I would have served on foot. I cannot indeed deny, but in this dispute, my felf a Person of Integrity and Honour condescended to

hold communication with such an inconsiderable wrent which could do no manner of fervice, but take away mens "Hories, and give them to others. What mischiel is this, that at one time I must purge my self both more "King, and to Antiphanes? But to the other point, the "your Mother did write to you of us, as of your Enemis "I would to God the had more wifely been careful of her "Son's safeguard, then have imagined such groundless ies "Iousies and phantoms. But why does she not also express
the cause of her fear? Besides, she shews not her Author " nor yet fignifies one word whereby the was moved to " write to you fuch Letters of fear. O wretched efface " mine, which stands in no less hazard to hold my peare " than to speak! Yet howsoever the event shall be, That "rather my discourse should displease you, then my Cause " If you remember when you fent me to fetch new Souldi "ers out of Macedon, even when you rold me, that is " your Mothers house there lurked many lufty young Gen " tlemen; you commanded me, that in executing you "Commission, I should spare none, but bring with me " perforce all fuch as refused the Wars: which Commit fion I performed and executed your command therein " more largely then was expedient for me; for I brough "to you Gorgeus, Heccateus, and Gorgata, which now to der you very acceptable service. What Creature there " fore is more wretched then I, who if I had not fulfilled "your will, should rightfully have suffered; and now perish, because I obeyed you? For truly there was no cause that moved your Mother to persecute us, that "that we preferred your Command before a Womansfa " vour: I brought to you of Mrcedons fix thousand and eight hundred Horsemen, of the which the greatest par would not have followed me: It is reason therefore, that " in as much as your Mother is displeased with us for you "Cause, that ye mitigate her in whose displeasure you have put us.

tch.

nens of is other than

ies; her

jeaprels

hor

d to

are had

ow

me mil-

ein Ight

en

ere

lled

W.

no

fa

ind

ar

ha

DU

101

Whiles Amint as was thus pleading his Cause, they that pursued his Brother Palemon (of whom we spake) one leading him bound into the place. Then the rage of the people could scarcely be pacified; but as the manter was in such cases, they would have stoned Palemon to teath; yet with an undaunted Aspect he spoke to them, and said:

I desire no favour for my self, so that my stying be not hurtlite the Innocency of my Brethren, whom if you cannot think day, let the fault be laid to me: For their Cause appeared

better, because I which fled away am suspected.

As foon as he had spoken these words, the whole Aslembly were inclined to his favour, and dissolved to tears; being so suddenly and so contrary turned, that now they were all on his part, who a little before were against him: He was in the prime flower of his Youth, and through oher mens fear fled away amongst those Horsemen, who were amazed at Philator's rorments: His company had left him behind; and whilft he was in doubt whether he night turn again, or fly further forwards, he was taken by them which purfued after him. He then began to weep, and beat himself about the face, not so much lamenting his own chance, as the condition of his Brethren, being in dinger for his cause; with which behaviour of his, he mored the King, and all the company there present; only Brother Amintas could not be pacified, but beheld him with a fierce countenance, and faid:

O mad Creature! Then oughtest thou to have wept when thu didst put thy Spurs to thy Horse as a Trastor to the Brethren, and a Companion to Traytors: Thou Wretch! whither, and from whence didst thou sly? Thou hast now brought me to that state, that not only my Innocence must be thought worthy of Death, but

felf also must become thy Accuser.

Palemon thereupon confeded himself to have offended in that point, but more grieviously against his Brethren, then towards himself. Then the multitude could not ablain from weeping and shouting, those usual Tokens by which the multitude declare their affections, and with one

L 2 con-

consent they cryed to the King, That he should spare Innocents, and men of Service. His Friends, laying hold of this savourable occasion for Mercy, rose up, and with weeping Eyes implored the King's Pardon. Then he commanded

filence, and faid:

By mine own judgment, I do pardon both you, Amyntas, and your Brethren, desirous that ye should rather forget my clemency, then remember your own jeopardy: Come in favour again with me, with that fidelity by which I am reconciled to you. Except these things which were brought in Evidence had been tryed to the uttermost, my dissimulation might have been suspected: Better it is therefore to be declared, then to remain in jeal susse, and think that no man can be acquitted, except he be first detected: Thou Amyntas, pardon thy Brother, and let that

be a token of thy hearts being reconciled unto me.

This done, the King dismissed the Assembly, and sent for Polidamus, whom of all men Parmenio loved best, accustomed always to stand next him in Battel: And though the clearness of his conscience made him boldly enter the Pallace; yet after he was commanded to bring forth his Brethren, being but young, and unknown to the King, his considence was turned into sear, and he began to doubt, imagining in his mind rather such things as might hurt him than by what means he was circumvented. In the mean stason, the Guard as commanded, brought forth his Brethren. When the King saw Polidamus pale for sear, he commanding all men to retire, he said to him:

Torough Parmenio's Treason, we were all in danger, but cliefly I and thou, whom under colour of friendship he deceived most: In the pursuing and punishment of whom, see how much I trust thy sidelity, for I am determined to use thee as a Minister of my Justice; and whilest thou goest about it, thy Brethmashall be thy pledges. Thou shalt go to Media, and bear my Letters to my Officers, written with mine own hand: It is mecessary haste be made, that thou may st not slie the Fame of it: I will, that ye come thither in the Night, and that the renown of my writing be executed the day after. To shall carry Letters likewise to Parmenio, one from me, and another written

when in the name of Philotas: I have his Signet in months: So that when Parmenio shall see both you, and the lange sealed with his Sons Ring, he will be without any suf-

Polidamus being thus delivered of fear, promised his digence a great deal more earnestly then was required. When Alexander saw his promptness in the matter, he with commended his good will, and rewarded him acordingly: And Polidamus changed his own Apparel, and nok other, after the fashion of the Arabians, with two the same Country to be his Guides; for whose truth, heir Wives and Children were pledges in the mean scain: And so they passed on Camels through such places swere Defart for lack of moisture, and within Eleven dy's reach'd to their journeys end, before any Advertifement of their coming. Polidamus then took again his Macedons Apparel, and in the dead time of the Night me to Cleanders Lodging, who had the chief Authority here, next to Parmemo. When Cleander, by his Letters, derstood the Kings pleasure, Polidamus having more letters from the Kingto deliver likewise to others, agreed by the break of day to go together to Parmenio.

As they were going, tidings came to Parmenio of PolidaMarival, who rejoycing, both for the coming of his
Friend, and for the defire he had to know of the Kings EMarival, because he had received no Lettes from
Min a long space) commanded Polidamus to come to him.
The Houses of that Country have large Back-fides, and
Marional Princes and great Lords there. The Captains which
Marional Research Commandment by the Kings Letters to kill
Min, came to Parmenio, walking under the shadow of
the Trees, being agreed among themselves to Execute
the Slaughter, when he should begin to read his Let-

ters.

nohis

ne cd

ind

th-

øų.

en

e.

4.

be

at

nt

100

is

15

So foon as Parmenio had espied Polidamus coming afar of, with a semblance of joy (as appeared by his counternance) he ran to imbrace him, and after Salutation given:

L 3

to each other, he delivered the Kings Letter: As he was unclosing it, he demanded of Polidanus what the King intended to do? Toushall know that, said he, by the Contents of our Letters: Which when he had read, I perceive (quoth Parmenio) that the King purposes a Voyage against the Arachosians; Surely he is a painful Prince, and never in idlenes: But now, after so much glory won, it were time for him to take his ease, and have consideration of his health and safey. And then he read the other Letter, written in the Name of Philotas; whereat he was joyful, as appeared by his countenance: With that Cleander stabbed him with his Sword in his side, and after wounding him in the Throat, the rest of his Companions thrust him in as he lay gasping

and dying.

But Parmenio's men, who flood near at hand, and faw the murder, whereof they knew not the cause, ran into the Camp, and with their hideous out-cry fet all the Souldiers in an uproar: They ran straight to Arms, and crowding together about the place where the murder was done they made an exclamation, that except Polidamus, and the other Actors in that deed, were delivered to their hands, they would overthrow the Wall, and make factfice to their dead Captain with the blood of the Offer-Cleander ordered the chief of them to be let in and recited the Kings Letters, wherein was contained the Treason of Parmenio invended against him, with his Request to him to assist him in his revenge: Then immediarely, upon the Kings pleasure known, the Sedition was appealed, tho' the grudge was stiffled in their hears: The most part departed, saving a few, who instantly required, that at the least they might be suffered to bury the Body. It was denied them long, by reason of Cleander, who dreaded the Kings displeasure: but because they began to be more earnest, intending to avoid matter of Sedition, he cut off the Head, which he fent to the King, and left them the Body to bury.

This was the end of Parmenio, a Person truly Eminent both in Wars and Peace; many things had he done with-

11.

be

ing

201

eive

the

dle.

bim

ety.

me

his

his

ing

w

ito

4

Ĺ

ı,

me King, but the King no great Action without him: referved and pleafed, in all Affairs, a King most happen and fortunate; and being threescore and ten years of a executed the Office of a Captain as lively, as though had been young in years, and pretermitted not oftenment the parts of a common Souldier: He was quick in the barts of a common fort of Souldiers: Yer mether those things moved him to aspire to the Empire, a else caused him to be suspected thereof, it is yet to edoubted. For whether the words that Philitas spoke, and he was overcome with the pains of his last torments, are true or false, or else that he sought an end of his an by accusing himself falsy, it was much doubtful, seems there was no such thing proved at such time as the

atter was most fresh in memory.

Such as Alexander perceived to murmur at the death of Philotas, were separated from the rest of the Army, and at into one Cohort under Leonidas their Captain, who times past was of near familiarity with Parmenio: The ing bore a private displeasure against them; and thereore willing to prove the disposition of every man, he gave arning throughout the Army, that all fuch as would rite into Macedonia, and have their Letters fafely conveyshould bring them to be carried with such as he would d: Whereupon, all men wrote frankly to their Friends chthings as were in their hearts: Some shewed themves to be offended with the long Wars, and some seemto be well pleased; but all their Letters were interpted, as well of fuch as commended the King, as of those at disliked his Actions. Wherefore he ordered such, as by their Letters disclosed themselves to be weary of the ravel of the Wars, for their reproach, to be put in a Regiment apart from the rest; whereby he both gave nem occasion to shew their hardness, and besides, rewed the liberty of their Tongues from the credulous ears of the rest. Which rash device; as all other things, purned to the Advancement of the Kings felicity; for in all

all extremities, they shewed themselves the readiest, and the most forward; and whilst they covered to redeem the reproach, their valiant doings could not be hidden in to

small a number, being separated by themselves.

These things being ordered after this manner, he appointed a Ruler over the Arrians, and proclaimed his lowney against the Araspians, who by changing of their name, were called Evergitans, fixce the time that they relieved Cyrus Army with Lodging and Provisions, being afflicted with cold and want. It was the fifth day before he entred into their Country, where he understood, that Sarribar. Zanes, who took Bessus part, was with a power of Hostemen broken in again upon the Arrians: He fent against him Caranus and Erigius, and in their aid Artabasus and Andremachus, with fix thousand Greek Footmen, and fix hundred Horsemen. Alexander continued threescore days in fetting order amongst the Evergitans, upon whom he be flowed a great fum of Money, for the notable fidelity they shewed towards Cyrus: and leaving Amenides to be their Governour (who was Darius Secretary) he went to subdue the Arachofians, who border upon the Sea of Pontus.

The Men of War, who were late under Parmeno his Command, came then to Alexander, being fix thousand Macedons, with two hundred of the Nobility, five thousand Greek Footmen, and two hundred Horsemen, which were the chief force of their power. To these Arachosians, Memnon was appointed Lieutenant, with four thousand

Footmen, and fix hundred Horsemen.

Alexander from thence entred with his Army into a Comtrey unknown even to such as bordered upon it, for the Inhabitants would not have conversation with any other people: They were called Paramisadans, being a very restricted kind of men, and most rude amongst all the Barbarous Nations, the hardness of the Countrey had even obdurated the Dispositions of the People: They lie most towards the cold North-Pole, joyning with the Ballrians upon the West, and bending towards the Indian Sea upon the South. They used to build their houses of Brick; and because the Land hei

in fo

ont-

Des.

ved

Aced

red

ber-

rfe-

im

dro-

12.12

be-ey eir ue

d

ì

follof barren Mountains, and void of Timber, they make: whole Houses of the same, which beginning broad beath, rife up narrower towards the top; and like the keel Skip, where the holes are made above to receive : Such of their Vines and Trees that bring forth fruit, can subfift under such violent extremity of cold, they wer with earth during the Winter-feafon; and when the ow is vanished away, they restore them again to the Air,, to the Sun: The earth was there covered with Snow, frozen fo hard, that there remained no print or fign of. Bird or Beaft within the Country: The Air besides was dek, that little light appeared; but the earth being comed as it were with a dim shadow, men could searcely dif-

m things very near at hand.

The Army being brought into this Country destinate of lage, suffered all the discommodities and miseries that the be endured, both of hunger, cold, weariness and spair: There were many of them that died for cold, and Snow destroyed their feet, but especially it took away efight of many. When they were wearied, and not able; mavel any further, they laid themselves down upon the ozen Snow, and having once left the motion of their bos, which stirred in them their natural heat, they were aightways so benumbed with cold, that they could not again, till they were lifted up by their Companions ; there was no remedy for it, but to compel them to go wards; for then by ftirring of themselves, their natural t was revived, and they recovered again some strength. th as found out any of the Cottages wherein the Couney-men dwelled, were very well refreshed; but the darkwas fo great, that the houses could not be otherwise: cerned, then by the smoak.

The Inhabitants that had never feen Strangers before longs them, when they beheld the armed men coming denly upon them, were half dead for fear, and brought th whatfoever they had, befeeching them nor to do any. mence to their Bodies. Alexander marched on foot a-songst his men, raising such as were down, and relieving

L: 5

fuch as he saw afflicted with the cold with his own cloads He was seen one while in the Van, another while in the midst, and sometime in the Rereward, with indestigable Exercise and Labour. At length they came to places bent manured, where he refreshed his Army with pleaty of Victuals, and there remained in Camp till such time as the Souldiers that were lest behind did overtake their Fellows. Then he went forwards with his Army to the Mount Cances such which divides all Asia into two parts: For on the one side it stretches towards the Sea of Cilicia, and on the other side to the Caspian Sea, to the River of Araxes, and

the Defarts of Scythia.

To this Mount Caucass there joyns another Mountain, called Tanrus, next to it in bigness; which rises from Capadocia, and passing by Cilicia, closes with the Mountains of Armenia. Out of these Mountains joyning thus together, as it were in one continual ridge, all the Rivers in Asia do descend, some of them running into the Red Sea, some into the Caspian and Hircanian Seas, and other into the Seas Pontus. In seventeen days, Alexander, with his Armies, passed Mount Caucasus; where, in a Rock that is ten surfaces in compass, and more then sour in height, Antiquity sained that Prometheus lay bound. At the soot of this Mountain Alexander chose out a place to build a City, where in he placed seven thousand of the most superanuated Macedons, and such others whose service he would not use any more in the Wars, and called the same Alexandria.

But Bessia (whom the celerity of Alexander's Expedition had put into sear) made sacrifice to the Gods of his Country; and according to the eustom of those, in the midst of his Banquets, he consulted with his friends and his Captains, for the maintenance of the Wars: And when they were well charged with Wine, they extolled greatly their own power, despiting the rashness of their Enemies, and their small number: But chiefly Bessia was most anogant in his words; who pussed up with pride, by reason of the Kingdom he had newly got by Treason, began to declare, How that Darius by his folly had increased his Enemies

Earne,

the the able

y of the ows.

ains ner, do

10 ics,

Va-

iti-

nd en

ely es, o

of

eies

who would needs fight with them in the Streights of Ciwhen by retiring back, he might have drawn them before (had been aware) into Defart place, and there have put ers and Mountains between his Enemies and him, and aof the same soinclised them, that they could by no possibility fled away, and much less make any resistance: Wherefore faid) he was resolved to retire back aming it the Sogdions, we the River of Oxus flould be as a Wall betwixt him and Enemies, till such time as he might assemble a strong power the Nations thereabout; knowing very well, that the Chorisons, the Dahans the Sacans, the Indians and Scythians, dabiting beyond the River of Tanais, would come to his affinee; of whom there was none fo low, but that his very Shoulm were higher than any of the Macedons heads. They all in. er drunkenness affented to him, affirming that only to the wifest way: whereupon Bessus caused the Wine to dealt about plentifully, as if he intended to have overpower'd Alexander by a Deluge of Drink.

There was at that Feast one Cobares a Median, who in the Art Magick (if it be an Art, and not rather a deceit of time vain man) was more notable by his profession than this knowledge, but otherwise a moderate and an honest man; he making a preamble before his discourse, said:

It was not ignorant how much better it were to be obedient to others counsel, than to be a counsel giver: For such as are followers to the mens judgments, are sure to have no worse fortune than threst: but such as are Authors and perswadars of any matter, womonly prepare their own peril; and therewith delivered

he Cup he had in his hand, and proceeded thus:

The Nature of Man, in this respect, may be called perverse, transe every one can see better into other mens assairs than into shown: Their counsels must needs be always full of perturbation, who take their own advice; for fear is an impediment to man, desire to others, and to many, a self-love of the thing that have devised. I will not speak of pride, nor impute it to any may be have seen by experience how every one does esteem that may only to be best, which he himself has invented: The Diadem of King that you wear upon your head, is a great burther, which

which though it be born moderately, the weight thereof will a press the bearer. It is not fury can awail in this case, but mile

BOOK VII

and prudent counsel.

When he had spoken those words, he rehearsed a Proverb commonly used amongst the Bastrians, which is, That a fearful Dog doth bark more than bite; and that the deepst Rivers do run with least noise; which things I have rehearsed, to make appear what prudence remain'd even amongst the Barbarous. As he talked after this manner, such as heard him, wondred to what end his discourse would tend: Then he began to shew his advice, which was more profitable to

Beffin than grateful.

Alexander's celerity (quoth he) is fuch, that he is come is a manner to the entry of your Court; he can remove his Arm before you can remove this Table : You say that you will draw your affistance from the River of Tanais, and that you will me Rivers between you and your Enemies; I would know, if he be not able to follow wheresoever you shall fly. If the way be indifferent, it must needs be most easie and assured to the Conque rour: And though you think fear does make much speed, yet hope more fwift. It were therefore methinks expedient, to procure the favour of him that is the Mightieft, and yield your felf to the Stronger: Howsoever be shall accept it, your Fortune is mine like to be better that way, than by continuing his Enemy. Comsider, that you possess another mans Kingdom, and therefore you may the better and more willingly resign it: For ye cannot be a just King, till ye receive the Kingdom of him that is able to give it, and take it away. This is faithful counsel, wherefore it is not necessary to delay the execution thereof: The Horse that is of Noble courage, will be governed by the (hadow of a Rod; butthe dull bealt is not pricked forwards with the Spur.

Bessus, that was fierce of nature, and now inflamed with Wine, became in such a sury at his words, that he could scarcely be withheld by his Friend from slaying Cobares, for he drew his Sword to have done the deed, and departed out of the Feast in a great rage: But Cobares in the cumult escaped away, and came to Alexander. Bessus had cight thousand Battrians armed attending upon him, who solong

I

robat beft ed, the trd

en

to

me

m) an lat be

in-

He-

ure the

ore on-

you e a

of

ich

uld

for

to the second

they judged by the intemperateness of the Air in these the Macedons would rather have marcht into India han into Battria, were very obedient to his Commandment: But when they understood that Alexander was coming towards them, every one shrunk away, and forsook Then he with a Band of his own Family, who were refaithful to him, passed the River of Oxus, burning such logs as carried him over, because they should not serve his Enemy in following him, and affembled a new power amongst the Sogdians. Alexander, as it has been said before, palled Mount Caucasus; but for want of Corn, his Army was brought to the extremity of hunger: Instead of Oyl, mey were fain to anoint themselves with a juice, which they wrung out of Seseman, every measure whereof was alled Amphora, and fold for Two hundred and forty Demers; every like measure of honey for three hundred and mety, and of wine for three hundred, and of Wheat litdeor none was to be found. They have in that Countrey certain Vessels called Siry, which the Inhabitants do use to lide so privily, that they cannot be found except they be agged for within the earth. The Countrey-men bury there heir Corn after that manner, for want whereof the Souldiers were forced to live with Herbs, and fuch Fish as they aught in the Rivers: But that kind of food failing also, the were inforced to kill their Carriage-Beafts, and lived with the flesh of them till they came into Ballria; the nature of the foil of which Countrey, is of fundry kinds. Some places are plentiful of Wood and Vines, and abundant of pleasant fruit; the ground is fat, well watered, and full of Springs, and some as barren.

Those parts which be most temperate, are sowed with corn, and the rest are reserved for seeding of Beasts: But the greater part of that Countrey is covered over with barren Sands, and withered up for want of moisture, nou-nishing neither man, nor bringing forth fruit, occasion'd by certain Winds that come from the Sea of Pontus, by which the Sand in the Plains is blown together in heaps, which seem afar off like great Hills; whereby the accustomed ways

be so shut up, that no sign of them can appear? Therefore such as do posses those plains, use to observe the stars in the night, as they do who sail on the Seas, by the course of them directing their journey: The nights, for the most part, be brighter than the days; wherefore in the day-time the Country is wild and unpassable, when they can neither find any tract, nor any way to go in, nor mark nor sign whereby to pass, the Stars being hidden by the Miss. If the same wind chance to come, during the time that men be passing, it overwhelms them with Sand.

BOOK VII

Where the Countrey is temperate, it brings forth great plenty both of men and horse; so that the Bastrians may make thirty thousand Horsemen. Bastria, which is the head City of that Region, stands under a Mountain called Parapanijus: The River called Bastria runs by the Walls, from whence both the City and the Countrey take their

names.

Alexander being there in Camp, received Letters out of Greece, how the Lacedemonians, and the whole Countrevol Peliponnesus, had rebelled against him; For they had not loft the Battel at fuch a time as the Messengers were difpatched, that brought the news of their revolt. Upon the back of these evil tidings, there came another present terrour, which was, that the Scythians inhabiting beyond the River of Tanais, were coming to aid Beffus. At the fame time also, intelligence came to him of the Battel that that Caranus and Erigius had fought with the Arrians, where Satribarzanes, that was newly revolted, being Chief of the Countrey feeing the Battel to remain equal on both fides. rid into the forefront, and plucked off his Helmer, forbidding any of his fide, either to cast dart, or strike a stroke; and there made a challenge to fight hand to hand, if any man durst come forth and prove his strength.

Erigius, Captain to the Macedons, was a man stricken in years, but yet not inseriour to any young man in stourness of Heart, or strength of body; who could not bear the proud arrogancy of Satribarzanes, but stepping forwards, and plucking off his Helmet, shewed his hoary hair: The

T

re

rie

off:

ly-

an

or.

1

en.

at.

24

ic d

S.

r

of

of

6

h

it d

e

t

C

y

n

e

U:

in is come (quoth he) that I will either by the riliory, or by bonourable death, make tryal what kind of men Alexander as to his Friends and Souldiers; and without more words he made towards his Enemy. It could not be judged, but that both Armies had stayed their hands by appointment, for they gave back immediately on both fides, to let them have free scope, each party standing in expectation, not so much of the Fortune of their Champion, as their own; heir own fate feeming wholly to depend on his fuccoss. Satribarzanes first charged his Staff, which Erigius avoided by bending his head afide; but he in the midft of his Race, fruck the other with his Spear through the throat, fo that icame forth again at his neck. Satribarzanes, upon that froak, fell down from his Horse; but yet made resistance, all fuch time as Erigius plucked the Spear out of the wound, and thrust it again into his mouth; who to rid himself out of pain, furthered his Enemies stroke: Then the Arrians feeing their Captain flain, whom they had followed rather of necessity, than of their own free wills, called to remembrance Alexander's benefits, and yielded themselves to Erieius.

Alexander rejoyced much at the good success of this Enterprise, doubting greatly the Lacedemonians; but he didbear out their Rebellion stoutly, saying, That they durst never disclose their meaning, until they knew he was come to the Confines of India. Alexander having removed his Camp, and going forwards in the pursuit of Bessus, Erigius met him, presenting the spoil of his Enemy, as a memorial of his victory. Thereupon he committed the Rule of Bastria to Artabasus, where with a Garrison he lest his Carriage and Baggage; whilst with a light power, and sit for travel, he carred into the Desarts of Sustans, conveying his Army

by night.

In the want of water (that hath been declared before) desparation moved them to thirst, before they had desire a drink: For by the space of four hundred surlongs, they bund no water at all. The vapours of the Sun, in the summer-season, did so burn the Land, that when it began

to:

to wax hot, it scorched all things, as it had been with a continual fire: And then the light being somewhat observed by the Mist that rose out of the earth by the immoderate heat, caused the Plains to have an appearance of the Main Sea.

Their journey in the night seemed tolerable, because their bodies were somewhat refreshed with the Dew, and the cold of the morning: But when the day came, and the heat rose, then the drought drying up all their natural he mours, both their mouths and their bowels were inflamed with hear: Then their hearts failed, and their bodies fainted, being in fuch a condition, that they could neither stand still, nor pass forwards. A few that were (who by the diligence and industry of such) knew the Countrey. had gotten water, which refreshed them somewhat; but as the heat increased, so their desire of drinking renewed. There was no remedy, but to give amongst the Souldien all the Wine and Oyl that remained in store; for drink was fo fweet to them, that it took away the fear of any thirst to come: But such as had greedily, and too larger drank off the water that they got, became so heavy, that they were neither able to bear their Armour, nor go forwards: fo that they feemed most happy who had gotten no water at all; for such as had taken of it inordinately. were inforced by vomit to disgorge it again.

As Alexander carefully in this calamity stood with his Friends that were persuading him to have respect to himself, for that he only, and the greatness of his hear, should be their only relief and support in all adversity; there came two Souldiers, who going before with such a had taken up the Camp, had sound water, and were carrying of it in Bottles to their Sons, which were fore afflicted for want of drink behind in the Army: When they saw the King, one of them opened his Bottle, and filling a Cup, presented the water to the King, who receiving a at his hand, demanded to whom they carried that water; they said, to their Sons: Then he restored the Cup again fulls, as it was given him, and said: I will not drink alone;

14

せらせ

ile nd

1000

D-

er

Ŋ

Y

13

k y by the la

١,

h

15

ā

y i

1

V 1

fittle cannot be divided amongst us all: Make you haste factocarry to your Sons what you have gotten for them with

b Labour. Alexander travelled fo long, that before night he me to the River of Oxus: The greater part of the Army, wable to follow for feebleness, were left far behind; to mintent therefore that such as halted in the Reer, might where the Camp was, he caused a fire to be made the top of an hill, and gave order, that when the Van refreshed themselves with meat and drink, they should heir Bottels with water, and go back with them to retheir fellows. The breath of such as drank intemmely closed up, and they dyed immediately: The numof these men was greater, then ever Alexander lost in Battle; but he would neither put off his Arms, refresh fielf with meat or drink, nor take any repole, but flood the way where his Army passed, not departing till the man was come into the Camp. He watched all that t, and passed it over in great trouble of mind; nor the following day any ways lessen his Care; for there e neither Boats to pass the River withal, nor could he he any Bridge, seeing there was no Wood growing night and. But at length he found out a device, to which by necessity did inforce him: They took several Bottles of Leather, and stuffed them full of Straw, wherethey laid themselves, and so swam over the River. as first recovered the further Bank, stood in order of nel till the rest were passed over; by which means, in days, he conveyed over his whole Army.

thiving passed the River of Oxus, his purpose was to go that in the pursuit of Bessius, till he received intelligate of what Transactions had past among the Sustants. Here was one Spitamenes, whom Bessius chiefly honoured all his Friends: But there are no benefits that can stay man given up to perjury, which in him was the more toluble, because he judged no mischief too great for him to had slain his Prince; for the revenge of Darius was a accolour to his offence: But it is to be thought, that his

present

present fortune was more envied, then his past actions were hated.

When it was known that Alexander had advanced ore the River of Oxus, Spitamenes did allociate with him in counsel for his enterprise Dataphernes, and Catenes, whom Bessus specially trusted: They agreed to the Design more readily than he would desire them; and taking to then eight young men of great personal strength and Couragused this kind of Policy. Spitamenes repaired to Bessus, and getting him alone, informed him, that he had found on how Dataphernes and Catenes had conspired to deliver him into Alexander's hands; whereas (he said) he had prevented them, while they were about their purpose, having seiz'd them both, and put them saft in prison.

Bessure then thinking himself much bound to him for a great a good turn, gave him many thanks; and for the defire he had to be revenged of his Enemies, ordered of the menes to bring them to his presence: He caused their hand to be bound behind their backs, and to be brought by such as were privy to their Confederacy. When they came in Bessure's presence, he beheld them with a very stern Consecuance, and rosen to have struck at them; But then the left their counterseiting, and straightways inclosing Bessure about, bound him; he strugling in vain; and pulled the Diadem from his Head, tearing the Royal Robes from his

back, the spoyls of his late murdered King.

When he saw himself in this condition, he consessed that the gods had righteously punish this Treason, and perceived by the Plague they sent him, that they were not ally the Avengers of Darius, but friends to Alexander, whose Enemies evermore were the Instruments of his Victory, it is uncertain whether the multitude would have affished befus or not, but that Spitamenes had given forth, that it was done by Alexander's appointment; whereby he put them into a sear, being yet doubtful of mind, and set Bessel on an horse, on the which he brought him to Alexander, who in the mean season had chosen out 900, such as by reason of their Agewere no farther serviceable for the Wars, and gave

corry Horseman two Talents, and to every Footman three colond Deniers. That done, he dispatched them home, agave thanks to the rest, because they promised to tarry

him till he had brought his Wars to an end.

cre

Tellis was presented to him at a little Town, whereof the bitants are called Branchidans, being a Colony who in s past, by the Commandment of Xerxes, when he out of Greece, were brought from Miletum, and plathere, because that in his favour they had violated a aple called Didyma. They had not alrogether forgottheir Countrey Customs, but had mixed their tongue, by little and little degenerated from their own Lange, and had not yet attained fully that Countrey speech. v received the King with great joy, yielding themselves their City to his Will and Pleasure: Whereupon he ed to him the Milesians that served him in his Wars bare an ancient hatred against this Generation of the chidans) and left it to them to determine, whether would fave them for the Country fake, or else destroy for the injury they had done them in times past. But enche Milesians could not agree in Opinion, he said he ald order the matter himself. .

The next day, when the Brandichans came to meet him, returned them all again into the City, and commanded Footmen to inclose the City round, and entred with as he had appointed for that purpose; and by a token en, he put all to the Sword, and razed the City as a Retacle of Traytors, they being all unarmed for any Refise: Neither the Affinity of their Tongue, nor any prayintercession could mitigate their Enemies cruelty, who or the destruction of the Town, threw down the Walls the ground, so that no memory of them does remain. hat done, they did not only cut down the Woods, wherethey used their Sacrifice, but also plucked up the Trees the Roots, that the ground might be left barren and blate. If this severity had been exercised against the cry Offenders, the revenge might have been thought rightous: But to lay the fault of the Predecessors upon their

Posterity

Posterity, it is judged as a cruel act, being there were a any of them then present, that had ever seen Miletum, or done to Xerxes any kind of pleasure. As Alexander remo ved from thence, rowards the River of Tanais, Bellis brought before him, disrobed of all his Garments, who Spitamenes led in a Chain put about his Neck; a please fight to behold, as well to the Barbarous, as to the Man dons. When spit amenes was come with him into Alexander presence, he said:

I have brought here to you the Killer of his own Master, of ter the same manner that he himself gave the example; where I have both revenged Darius that was my King, and you all that now have gained the Soveraignty. Let Darius open his eyes, and rife from Death, to behold this fight, who was no worthy of such an end, and worthy to behold and receive such

Spectacle as this.

After Alexander had given Spiramenes thanks, he rurned

himself to Bessus, and said :

What beastly fury moved thee to take thine own Prince Prife ner, and afterwards to murder him, having fo well deferred thee ? For which Parricide, thou shalt receive a sufficient re ward, as well as for thy Arrogant Usurpation of the Name of

King.

He had no heart to make answer, or to excuse his of fence, only that he faid : He took upon him the Title of a Kh only to enable him to deliver up the Empire to Alexander, whi if he had not done, some other, he said, would have usure the Kingdom. Then Alexander called for Oxatres, Danis Brother, whom he had placed about his person, and com mitted Bessies to his keeping, to the intent he should cut of his Ears and Nose, and hang him upon a Cross, causing his own men to shoot him through with Arrows, and fo preferve his Body that Birds should not rouch him. Oxame promifed to perform all the reft, except the keeping away the Birds; which for the defire he had to publish the skill of Cratenes, he affirmed that none could fo well keep them away as he, who shot with that certainty, and that Ain, that he could strike the Birds flying in the Air: And though it was a cunning not fo much to be marvelled at in on fo expert in shooting, yet it was greatly admired sch as did behold him, and it was great honour to the mer. He gave rewards to fuch as were the Apprees of Beffus; but he deferred his punishment, because folved to put him to death in the same place where he Darius.

the mean feafon, the Macedons going a forraging four order, were overthrown by the Enemies that running down the next Mountains: They took more they killed, and driving their prisoners before them, ed again into the Mountains. There were of them he number of twenty thousand, who accustomed to live Theft, using Slings and Bows in their Fight, whom Alexander did befiege, and in a Skirmish pressed upthe foremost, he was shot with an Arrow in the midst is Leg, where the Head fluck fast. The Macedons that reforrowful and amazed for their Kings hurt, carried into his Tent; of whose departure out of the Field Enemies were not ignorant, for they might behold things from the Mountains. The next day they fent defiadours to Alexander, whom he admitted to his premble the greatness thereof) he shewed his Leg to them: in they were commanded to fit down, they faid, That of his hurt, they were as forrowful for it as his own the person that did the deed, he should be delivered into his 1: They could not (they faid) but judge them facrilegirsons, who would fight with Gods, of whose number they d him to be; and therefore being vanquisht by his Virtue de ermined to yield themselves. Thereupon he gave affurance, and receiving again his men that were ta-Prisoners, he admitted them to be his own Subjects.

that done, he removed his Camp, and was carried in ter, for the bearing whereof, the Horsemen and Footcontended together; the Horsemen alledged it to be cir Office, because the King used to fight amongst them;

and

and the Footmen alledged, that in as much as they used carry the wounded Souldiers, they thought no reason them. Office should be taken from them, chiefly when the king was unhappily one of that number. Alexander therefore so great contention of both parties, thought it a difficult matter for him to give sentence, because the judgment should be grievious to them that should be put by their office; and therefore ordered that they should carry him by course.

From thence, the fourth day, he came to a City called Maracanda, the Walls whereof were threefcore and to furlongs about, but the Castile was without any Wall. He fet a Garrison in the City, and then burned and destroyed the Countrey round about. Embassadours came to him the ther from those Scythians which are called Avians, who had been free since the time that Cyrus was among them, but yet they shewed themselves then ready to be at his Commandment. They were known to be the most righteous people of all the barbarous Nations, as men that never use to make War, but when they were provoked; whose moderation and temperance in using of their liberty, made the Inferiours equal to their very Princes.

Alexander received them gently, and fent Penida, Friend of his, to those Scythians that inhabited within a rope, to forbid them to pass the River of Tanais without his special order: He had also a secret Commission to view the scituation of that Countrey, and to visit those Scythians that inhabit about Bosphorus. He willed him besides, to chuse out a place upon the brink of Tanais, where he might byild a City, to remain as a Fortress, for the subduing of

the people that he intended to vifit.

But this design was delayed by the Rebellion of the Se dians, who had also drawn the Bastrians to their par. There were of them seven thousand Horsenen, who Authority the rest followed: For the subduing of whom Alexander caused Spitamenes and Catenes (the Betrayers a Bessus) to be sent for, thinking by their means to reduce the Countrey again to his obedience, and to suppress that

En-his the had pulce ghe

Sog are doing of the color of t

had made this stir: But they who were judged the Instruments to put a stop to the Rebellion, and were for to that intent, were the chief Authors of that Refor they caused it to be noised abroad, that Alexanfest for the Ballrian Horiemen of purpose to dewhem all; which Committion (they faid) being apnred to them, they would not execute, because they ught it too foul an act to commit against their Counmen; and for that cause they could as ill bear Alex-'s cruelty then, as in times past Bessus's Treason.

Bythis means, when the fear of death was put into to heads, they were easily flirred to Arms, to which were they were sufficiently inclined of their own minds. When Alexander was advertised of the treathery of the nagades, he ordered Craterus to Beliege Cyropolis, and himself won another City of that Country, by an assault he he gave to it on all parts at once; and by a fign gien caused all the Children to be put to death, making rest a prey for the Souldiers. This done the City ted to the ground, to the intent, that others by their simple might be kept in obedience. There were a Vaant people, called Memacenans, who were determined abide the Siege, not only as judging it more honourabut also that they thought it most for their security: for the mitigating of their oblinacy, the King sent to them fifty Horsemen, to declare his Clemency towards in as submitted themselves, and how inexorable he was in such as he overcome by force: Their answer was, That they neither doubted the Kings promise, nor his Power: by after their answer given, they lodged them without Walls; where entertaining them with great Chear till was mid-night, they fet upon them, and Maffacred bem all.

Alexander was no less moved with this Act, than the me required: He therefore made an affault upon the y on all parts at once; which he found fo fortified. the could not take it at the first attempt: Wherefore kappointed Meleager and Perdicas to continue the Siege

of

BOOK VI

of it, who then lay before the City Cyropolis, which now he resolved to spare, in consideration that it was Built by Cyrus; for he had not fo great admiration of any lim that had Reigned in those parts, as of him and Semiranis, whole magnanimity of mind, and great atchivement feemed tohing to exceed the reft : But the obstinate will fulness of the Inhabitants stirred up his wrath; for when he had taken the City, he commanded the Macedons to pillage it, who had enough cause to be moved against them; and fo returned to Meleager and Perdicas. There was not one City that did more valiantly abide the Siege. than the same did; for both the hardiest of the Soulden that were flain, and the King was brought in great day ger, being ftruck with a ftone, so that his fight failed him; and he was felled to the Earth, and for the present los his sense. The Army lamented, thinking he had been dead: But he was invincible against those things which put other men in most fear; for without tarrying, he dreffed his wound, returning to the Fight, and after an ger had ftirred up his natural Violence, he renewed the affault more fiercely than before. At length a great piece of the Wall was overthrown by a Mine, at which he broke in, and put the whole City to Sack and Ruin. He fent from thence Menedemus with 3000 Footmen, and 800 Horsemen, to the City of Maracanda, which Spitamenes had newly taken, having expelled from thence the former Garrison of the Macedons, the Citizens not consenting to it : But when they faw they could not withstand him, it was of necessity for them to submit to his will.

Alexander, in the mean season, came to the River of Tanais, where he inclosed about with a Wall so much ground as his Camp did contain, extending in compass so Furlongs, and named the same City Alexandria. This was done with such expedition, that within sevented days after the walls were raised, the houses also were Builded, and the whole work was performed in a very small season, through the contention amongst the Souldiers, who should perform his work first, when the same

7

ne

125

divided into portions amongst them. The Prisoners hofe Ransoms Alexander paid to their Takers) were inted to inhabit this City; the descent of whom, fo long time, are not worn out, fuch favour hath thewed them in the memory of Alexander. The King Serbia, whose Empire was then beyond the River of Judging that the fortifying upon the Rivers fide be as a Yoke to his Neck, fent his Brother Carcawith a great power of Horfemen to beat down the Formion, and to remove away the Macedons from the hers fide That River divides the Pattrians from the bians of Europe, and is the limit which parteth Afia Europe asunder: But the Countries that the Scythians inhabit, do stretch as far as Thracia, and lye betwixe North and the East, joyning with Sarmatia, and pofpart of it. The Country also that lies beyond the er of Ifther is Inhabited by them; their utmost bounds etching to Balhia, and to the furthest bounds of Asia nlwards, where are wonderful great Woods, and wilde nts: But such of them as bounded near to Tanais and bia, wanted not n uch of the Civility of other Na-

This being the first time that Alexander had to do with epeople, when he faw that he had to enter into a for the which he was not provided, his Enemies ing up and down in his fight, and he difeased of his fonds, especially not having the use of his speech, hich failed much by reason of his long abstirence, and pain in his Neck, he called together his Friends to infel, and declared to them, that he was not troubled hany apprehension of his Eremics, but with the inity of the time : the Ballians rebelling and the Sothians broking him, when he was neither able to fland upon ground, nor fire gerough to ride on Forfeb.ck, nor meale to give advice or exhort tion to his men: In ideration therefore of the doubtful danger in which he thimself involved, he accused the gods; complaining, M that

that he was then inforced to lye ftill, whole swiftness he

fore that time none was at le-to escape.

The danger grew so great, that his own men believe the had connected his sickness for fear: And thereis he, who since the overthrow of Danius had less Consideration with the Diviners and Prophets, returned again a that idle vanity, of humane minds, superstition, orders Aristin der (to whom he was addicted most) that is should try out by Sacrifice what his success should be The Custom of them who were called Aruspices, was a consider the Entrails of the Beasts without the king, as ito make report of the signification. In the mean see fon, while they were searching secrets that way, he willow Ephestion Craterus, Eigins, and others of his Friends, a draw near about him, less by straining his voice, he might break out his Wound again, and said thus nature in a

The danger I am in, bath caused the time to serve be ter for mine Enemies, than for me : Necessity, fee, chiefly in the Wars, does go before Reason; for it feldom given to men to chuje their own time: The Bactrians a revolted, upon whose Shoulders yet we stand, purposing to a what courage we are of by our behaviour towards the Scythings. If we leave off with doubtful Fortune, and retire from behaviour Enemy who daily of their own mind provoke and firmt we shall, at our return, be had in contempt of them whom we intend to wifit: But if we shall pass the River of Tank and by the destruction of the Scythians, shew our selves into cible every where, who will then doubt but Furope mills open and give Obedience to us as Universally Villarious & H ti deceived, that measures by any distance the bounds of we intend to pass: There is but one River that hinders want from bringing of our Power over into Europe; which if Mall effest, what an estimation shall it be for us, whiles are fubduing of Alia, to fet up the Monuments of our Vidon as it were, in a new World, joyning so soon together with m a distance? But if we shall retreat never so little, and en grown

be to the better the b

grea grea

rouni

the Sychians will then come after us, and pursue us Bear. Are there no more but we who have paffed Ri-There are many Inventions yet remaining amongst our whereby we have gotten many Victories: But Fortune War does teach policy to such as are overcome; we have President of late, to swim over Rivers upon Bottles; sting if the Scythians cannot do, the Bactrians that! shem: It is but the Power of one Nation that now adas against you; all the others stand yet in a stay, to take Measures from the progress and success of our Arms: So by eschewing a Battle, we shall nourish War, and be comde receive those blows, which lye in us to give to others. reason of my advice is manifest: But whether the Macewill suffer me to use my own disposition, I much doubt; befince I received this Wound, I have not ridden on Horfenor gone on Foot. If ou will follow me, my Friends, I recovered. I have strength enough to endure all things; lif the end of my life be at hand, wherein can I dye more mably.

These words that he spoke. were uttered with a brovoice, so that they could scarcely be heard of such as enext him: But when his meaning was perceived, the were present went about to divert him from so an Enterprise: But Erigius wrought chiefly in the mer, who perceiving that his Authority could not preseainst the Kings obstinate mind, attempted to work by Religion, which he judged of greater force: For clared, that the Gods were against his determinariwho had fignified great peril to enfue, if he passed River: All which Prognosticks, he said, he had unfood by Aristander, who told him at his coming into rillion, what he had perceived in the Entrails of the Alexander at these words was wonderfully trouwith anger and shame, when he saw the secrets of Religion brought to light, which he thought to have electer to himself; and therefore caused Evigins on go and Aristander to be called in to him, whom he bein the face, and faid:

I

I seem to thee rather a private mon than a king; I connanded thee to sucrifice, and thou hast declared the signification thereof to others, and not to me: For Erigius, by thy port, knows the secresse appertaining to me: But surely, I believe that through his own fear he derised an interpretational simfelf: Therefore let me hear from thy own mouth what the hast found in the Entrails, to the intent, that then shall not do what thou hast spoken

Arift ander thereupon was amazed, and looked pale, to able to answer one word for fear: Burat length, the same fear that made him hold his peace, invited him to speak and left the prolonging of the Kings expectation, might

provoke him to further wrath, he answered:

I said (quoth he) that there was in the Enterprise great danger and difficulty; but yet that your attempt should not be wain: there is nothing that I have perceived by my Science, that troubles me so much as the love I bear to you; for I both conside your infirmity, and of what high moment the safety of your persons to us all, fearing you should not be able, at present, to under that hardship which Fortune lays down before you in this Enterprise.

prize. When Alexander heard him speak after that manner, he willed him to have considence in his sidelity, to whom Fortune had granted glory in greater things; and there upon dismissed him. Afterwards, as the King was debating with such as he consulted with before, by what mean he should pass the River, Aristander came amongs them affirming, that he had found the Entrails contrary to what he did before, with as likely figns of good fucces as an that ever he faw; shewing them then as great causes of rejoyce, as he did before to fear. Lut immediately here upon Alexander received news that much impaired that to licity he was wont to have in all his proceedings: Menedomus being sent (as it has been said before) to besiege spe samenes, the Author of the Balirian Rebellion when he understood of his Enemies coming, both in avoiding tobe inclosed within the Walls, and trusting besides to take lone advantage of the Macedons, he laid an ambuscado to intro them.

There was a Wood through the which they firsuld very apt for the purpole, where he planted the Dawho were accustomed to carry two armed men anone Hoffe, from whence they used to leap down by He and because the swiftness of the Footmen was litinferiour to the Horsemen, they troubled greatly the of the Horsemens fight. Spitamenes gave order to that when they should enter into the Wood they and environ them on all fides; which order they ac-

lingly performed.

month of the state
lendemin feeing himfelf inclosed on all parts, and not Pin number to his Enemies, refifted a great while, out to the Souldiers, that there remained no hope hem, being intrapped after that manner, but by miflaughter upon their Enemies to receive the comfort honourable Death. Menedemus rode upon a firong le, charging oft-times upon his Enemies, whereby he etheir order, and made great flaughter, till fuch time infelf being almost the fingle mark at which all their swere levelled, whe received many Wounds, and ed for want of Blood. Then he exhorted Hijides, was one of his Friends, to leap upon his Horfe, and e away; and with that word he fwo med, and fell his Horse to the Ground. Hispalis mitt have got but after he had lott his friend, he derermined to die, taking no other care but how to lofe his life the ruine of his Enemies. Wherefore he put his Spurs Horse, and ran in amongst them, where he sought fully, and at length was flain.

then the rest saw his overshrow, and the loss of their sins, they recovered an Hill, where Spirameneu did them, thinking to subdue them for want of Victu-There were flain in the Battelitwo Thousand Footmen. firee Hundred Horlemen, which miladventure Alex With great policy kept fecret commanding them that fred from the Field, upon pain of death not to pubthis Defeat. But when he could not bear out any a Countenance contrary to his heart, he went alone

our

to his Pavilion which he had fet of purrose upon the Rive fide. There without any Witnesses of his disturbance walk'd pensively all the Night, devising with himself who was best to do; and divers times he listed up his Tenen behold the Fires in his Enemies Camp, thereby were edure their number.

When the day appeared, he put on a Corflet, and can forth among the Souldiers, being the first time they be feen him fince he received his hurt. They bore fuch and neration to their King, that with his presence only the put away the remembrance of the fear which caused the before to furink ; and rejoyced to heartily, that when the faluted him, the Tears trickled from their eyes, and ear neftly defired the Fight which they had before refuled to took order there amongst them, that the Horsemen, fuch as were of the square Battel of Footmen should been ried over in Boats, and that the light armed should say upon Bottles. The bufines required not much more to spoken, neither could the King say much more by reason of his infirmicy; for the Souldiers went about it with fuch chearfulness of mind that within three days they had a nished twelve Thouland Boars. When all things were prepared in readiness for their Passage, there came men ey Embassadors of the Scythians riding by the Camp, who required that it might be reported to the King, that ther had fomething in Commission to declare to him; or the

When they were received into his Pavilion, and commanded to fix down, they fixed their eyes continually upon the Kings countenance; whereby it was thought the weighing the greatness of his courage by his personge which they saw present, his Aspect seem'd to carry much less Grandure, than that of his famous Astions. The win of the Servicans are not sude, and without knowledge, a other barbarous Nations are. For it is said, that many of them attain to such Learning, as it is possible for a Nation being always in exercise of the Wars. Their words to be lexander are left in memory; who though they differ from the manner of us, who live in more civil times, and france

CHARLES BELLEVISION OF THE PARTY OF THE PART

weste more humanity, yet the fidelity of the matter's to be despited, though the phrase of their Speech is And therefore I shall declare uncorruptly the word the Eldest of these Embassadors deliver'd after this

the Gods had given thee a Body according to the unfattable forby mind, the world finuld not be able to receive thee a flowed delt couch the Orient with one hand, and the Oociout the other; which thing once obtained, thy care fould Somethe Glory of a God. Thus thou doll cover the thing. not able to compais. From Europe thou goeff into Affas om Afra into Europe. And if at last thou shall overcome akind, thou must make war with Woods and Snows, with and Wild Bealts. What? Art thou igher ant that Trees till they are great, and then are plucked up from the root He is a fool that covets fruit, and conliders not of the Tree whereon it grows. Take heed, leuft whileft boureft to attain to the top thou falleft with the bough thou doeft imbrace. The Lion hath been formetime the food Smallest Birds, and the Rust doth sor sume the Lon. There fo ftrong, that is not in danger even of the weaker. that's west do with thee? we never touched thy Countrey. hat defired by us that hive in the matte Woods to be ignorant whom art, and from whence thou comest ? for we can neiorfabjed to any man, nor to defire to rule over any creature. cause you shall not be ignorant of the state of our Nation. we certain gifts in proper to us: as the yoak of Oxen, the: b, the Spear, the Bow, and the Boal, which are the withat we we both with our Friends, and against our Enen We give to our Friends of the fruit : get with our labours. the Boal me fairifice wine to the Gods, with the Row we:

We give to our Friends of the fruits get with our labours, the Boal we fairlice wine to the Gods, with the Bow we car Enemies afar off, and with the Spear near at hands that fout in times past we overcame the King of Scyclist, if terwards the King of Persis and Media, making the way to us into Egypt. But thou who dostig ory, that thou are to be a persecutor of Thieves, with a robber of all Nations thou comest amongst. Thou bast taken Lydia, possessed, and hast the Bactions understry power.

M:4

Thous

Thou haft vilited the Indians, and now fretcheft forth the to venous and insatiable hands to our cattel. Why dost thou cours that wealth which causes thee to be poor? Thou art the first of a men who with abundance hast prepared bunger for ty felf. the more thou haft, the more greedily doest thou covet the thing theu baft not. Doeft thou not remember how long thou de flay about Bactria? And whiles thou didft go about to subdu them, the Sogdians began to rebel. Thus War doth grown thee out of Victory, for be thou never so great and puissant above any other, yet there are none that can endure to be governed by a stranger. Pass now Tanais, thou shalt perceive what breaks it bears, and yet thou shalt never overtake the Scythians, whole poverty is swifter than thy Army, carrying the spoil of so many Nations. For when thou shalt think us to be afar off, thousand see us within thy Camp: with like swiftness we follow and we fie. I bear that our defarts are scorned by the Greek Provents me cover rather Defarts and places unhabited than Cities and plentiful Countries. Therefore hold thou thy fortune fast, for she is fickle, and cannot be kept against her will. Put a bride to thy felicity, and thou shalt govern it the better. We say that Fortune is without feet, and that the has only hands and wings but when the puts forth her hand, the will not fuffer her wind to be touched. If thou art a God, give benefits to mortal med, and take not away the commodities they have already. If the art a Man consider thine own estate, it is foolismess to remember those things which cause thee to forget thy felf. Such a by War thou makest thine Enemies, by Peace thou mayest makethy Friends. The wost firm friendship is amongst them that be tqual; and they feem equal, who have not yet made any trial of their Force. Take heed thou takeft them not for thy friends, whom thou and f subdue and bring to subjection. There is no friendsin between the Lord and the Slave: and in peace the law of Arms is observed. Think not that the Scythians do confirm their friendship with any oath; for they think they frear in keeping of their faith. The custome of the Greeks is to justifie their doings by calling their Gods to witness: but we acknowledge Religion to consist in Fidelity. They that do not their due reverence to men. deserve the Gods. Think not those Friends to be necessary

lof-whofe good-wills how halt need to doubt . Town doeft Keepers both of Europe and Afia; for we (hould joyn Batria, but that Tanais does divide us : and beyond T. our Dominion Aresches fo far as Thracia; and the Fame Thracia confines with Macedon. | Confider therefore. ther it be naceffary for thee or not to regeive us as Friends, or In w at Enamies to thy Empire.

These were the Scythians words; to whom the King

de Answer:

overall by the state of the sta

that he would bith use his own Fortune, and their Counsel. adrifed him well. He would follow his Fortune (he faid) saile he had great confidence in it ; and other mens Counsel belebe would do nothing unadrifedly, nor upon the fudden Thereupon he difmiffed the Embaffadors, and imbarked Army in the Boats he had prepared. In the foreparts: the Boats he fet fuch as had Targets, willing them to: red upon their knees for their more fafeguard against the had the charge of the Engines, being both before aidboth fides inclosed with armed men. The rest that stood rond the Engines, being armed themselves, desended Targets fuch as rowed. The fame order, was aile Verved in those Boats that carried over the Horsemen. greater part drew their Horses after them by the reins mining at the ftern of the Boats; and fuch as were carupon truffes filled with fraw, were defended by the is that rowed betwixt them and their Enomics. 570 1 dexander with fuch men as he had abose noto be about Person, first lanched from the Land, and directed his afe to the opposite Bank. The Scythians came against em with their Horsemen in order of Battel, standing on the brink of the further shore to oppose their landwhose fight being a terrour to the Macedons othey had another cause of fear in their passing over: For the mafters were not able to keep their course against the soundiers swaying to and fro, for the doubt they had to fall in the water, troubled. Mariners in the performance of their office. By reafon:

Ion whereof the Macedon's could not have Kope to caff the Darrs with any force; raking more care how to place them felves out of peril, than to annoy their Enemies. The Engines flood them in great flead, which feldom did floor in vain against their Enemies that flood thick before the attempting o refift their landing When the South faw them near the shore, they discharged an infinite him ber of Arrows into the Boats, to that there was not almost any Target that had not many heads sticking him At length the Boars arrived at the land, then the Taren men role upon their Feet, and having more liberty and furer footing, threw their Dates more certainly and wing greaterforce: weereby perceiving their Enemies to firm and rein back their Horses, they leaped chearfully upon the land, one exharing and encouraging another, and goroufly purited them, when they faw them to fall out their ranks. By that time Alexander's Horsemen who had affembled then felves in Troops, brake upon their fine fon, the rest being defended by them that were fighter haded, and prepared themselves to the Battle. Alexand der with the flourness of his courage supplied the impour-cy of his Body His voice could not be heard when the spake and exhorted his men (the foar of his wound not yet closed) but all men might see him fighting; where forcevery one used the office of a Captain in giving the horration to his Fellows, and ran upon their Enemies will out regard of their own lives. Then the Scyrbians bould not endure any longer the countenance, the force, north cry of their Enemies ; but being all on Horfeback fled way upon the Spur, whom the King purfued eighty Fin longs, notwithflanding that with great pain he endured his infirmity. When his opinies fainted, he commande his men that they thould follow Itill in the chafe as long the day lafted, and having not frength to faffain any in ther travel, he recurred into his Camp to reft himfelf

the Macedons in their pursuit passed the bounds of Bore in monument of whom there were great it sies or legual distance, and high trees whose trunks were red over with Ivy. But no bounds could be a flay Macedons, when forwards in their fury, for it was : night before they returned again to their Camp, who . ng killed many, and taken a great number of prisonand drove before them a thousand eight hundred Hor-

There were flain of the Macedons, threescore Horseof the Footmen one hundred, and about one thouwounded. This enterprise with the fame of the Viv obtained in fo lucky a feafon, kept the greatest pare Main obedience, which before were just ripe for Reflion: For they believed the Serthians to be invincible; to being vanquished, they judged no Nation able to with-

nd the power of the Macedons.

the Sacans after this Victory fent their Embassadours to brander, offering themselves to come under his Obedie; to the doing whereof, they were not fo greatly me -with tear of his Force, as they were with report of liss mency used towards the Scithians, after he had discomd them: For he delivered home all the Prisoners withtransome, to wirness to the World, that he made War the those fierce Nations to fignalize his Courage and Vitand not his Malice or Hate against them. That was the ferther he so gently received the Embassadors of the Sacausing Excipinus to accompany them, who being in first flower of his Youth, was for that respect in great our and intimacy with Alexander. In Personage he rebled Epheltion, but inferiour to him in pleasantness of ech.

After this, Alexander giving order to Craterus to follow by small Journeys with the greater part of his Army, himself came to the City of Marcanda, from whence tamenes who heard of his coming was fled into Ballria. King therefore making great Journeys four days conally, came into the place, where under the conduct of r medamus, he had loft two thouland Footmen, and three hundred

hundred Horsemen. He caused their bones to be gathered together, celebrating their Funerals after their Country manner. By that time Craterns with the Phalana was come to the King; and to the intent he might punish by the utmost severity of War all such as had rebelled, he divided his power into divers parts, commanding them to burn all before them in every place where they marched, and to kill all the children.

The Countrey of the Sogdians for the most part is wask, by reason of the great Desarts that for eight hundred Furlongs stretch overthwart the Countrey. The River called Polinimetum passes almost through the length of it, and runs a space violently in a narrow Channel, and then is received into a hole of the Earth; from whence it passes derneath the ground, the course of it being manifest by the noise of the water that may be heard; and yet on all the ground under which so great a River does run, there does

not appear the least moisture to spring forth.

Of the Captives that were taken among the Sogdian, there were thirty of the most Noble and manly appearance brought to Alexander; who, understanding by an Interpreter, that by the Kings commandment they should be put to Execution, began as men in mirch to fing and dance; and by a certain wanton motion of their bodies, expresed a great joyfulnes of the mind. Alexander marvelling the they took their death with fuch floutness and magnania ty of heart, called them to him, enquiring why they c preffed so great a joy when they had death before the face? They answered, That if they had been put to death any, except by fuch a one as he was, they should have borne the death prompully: But now seeing they should be reftered to their Predecessours by a King that was Conquerour of all Nations, they thought themselves bound with Songs and Rejoycingth meet an honourable Death, as the thing all men flould with and defire. The King then aftonith'd at their Refolution, I erquire of you (worth he) if you can be content to live, and become Friends to him, by whose benefit you fhall receive life! They faid, Tout of they never were his Enemies; but a the

eter

tocy

Was

h hy

d

1 10

red.

fic,

or.

led

ind

10 UR-

he he

ci

ns,

œ

.

Ü

d Ľ

provoked by occasion of the Wars, even so if he would make periment of them rather by a benefit than an injury, they I labour not to be overcome in good will, nor in doing any that pertained to their duty. He asked what pledge they d give of their promise? They answered, Their Lives had received (hould be their Pledges, ready to be yielded in when it was required. Therein they brake no promise; fuch as returned home into their Countreys, kept the cople in good obedience: And four of them that were ointed to be of the Kings Guard, gave place to none of Macedons in love or affection towards their Prince.

When he had ordered all things among the Sogdians. lest Peucolaus there with three thousand men of War. dremoved into Badria; from whence he commanded less to be carried to Echatana, there to suffer death for killing of Darius. About the same time Ptolomeus and Menia's brought three thousand Footmen, and a thousand Horsemen of mercenary Souldiers; and one Alexander come to him our of Lycia with three thousand Footmen. drive hundred Horsemen. Asclepiodorus had levied the he number out of Syria. Antipater sent eight thousand Greeks; amongst whom there were five hundred Horsewhen he had thus recruited his Army, he went abut in every place to quiet those stirs that had been rai-ly up by the Rebellion; and having executed them that tre the Authors and Fomenters thereof, the fourth day came to the River of Oxus, which being a water unwholne to be drunk (because it is troubled and full of mud.) Macedons fell to digging of Wells; and when by digging ep they could find no water, a Spring fuddenly appeared nthe Kings Tent; which, because it was not found at the iff, they imagined it to come by miracle. Therewith the King was well pleased, and contented men should beleve that it was fent by the gift of God.

When he had passed the Rivers of Ochu, and Oxus, they ame to a City called Marginia, pear to the which he choice of places for the building of lix Towns; of which he planted two towards the South, and four towards the East;

every

every one diffant not far from another; to the intenthat their mutual affiftance in time of need should not be far to seek. They are all scituate upon high hills, as bridles to keep under those wild Nations: But now they have forgotten their original, and are subject to those that have fince commanded them.

The King having subdued all the Countrey, one Rod only remained, which Arimages a Sogdian had taken with thirty thousand armed men, and turnished with Provisions for two years. This rock was thirty surlongs in height, and an hundred and fifty in compus, being in all pans steep and craggy, having one streight path only to passup to it. In the mid way to the top, it had a Cave, which was trarrow and dark in the entry, but by little and little invasted wider, and had more lodgings within for a great milititude, and was besides so full of Springs, that when they met together, they ran down the Rock like a great River.

Alexander beholding the frength of this place, and the difficulty to win it, determined to depart from thence: But there entred fuddenly into his heart a defire to wear Nature, and to work against her power. Yet before he would attempt the fortune of any Siege, he fent Cohes the Son of Arrabafus, to perswade them to surrender is Arimages, upon crust of the Strength of the place, an-Twered in all things arrogantly, but effecially in that he asked if Alexander could fire? Which words being roporred to the King, put him in fuch a fury, that Aralghe ways he called for fuch as he used to confult withal deck ring the pride and prefumption of Arimages, and after what manner he had foorned him Whereapon he return ed him this Answer. That he need not doubt whether the Macedons could flie, for to his fatisfaction be should shortly fee they had Wings: He commanded therefore that our of the whole Army they mould chale our and bring to him three hundred of the most light young men that had been acom-fromed to drive Beasts amongs the Rocks, and sheight paths of the Mountains: whereupon, they brought such

*

es:

h

.

ip.

le

at:

t

.

5

He King, as both for lightness of body, and hardiness of were most fir for that purpose; to whom he said. tind companions, the fharers in my Portime, and equal Mee, with you have I won Cities that were counted ineceable, and have paffed the tops of Mountains covered continue with Show ! With you I have I'me through the freights of cha and have withour weariness fulfained the violence of cold! whereby I have experience of you! and tou of me. The to fee his but me entry, which our Enemies do observe. evel they neglett. They keep no Watch but towards nor Camp. you diligently fearch, you shall find fome way to bing you to he top. Nature beth made nothing so high, but that it may dentef others bave desputed we have gotten Afia into our Megion ! Contries you the means to get Sp to the top, which the you have taken, you shall give a tolen to me in ferting time white Coath. You shall see me then come forwards bing power. and rurn the Enemies from you ton a ds me. Middle hinde ten T louts for a reward, who recovers the top of stand he that gets up next shall bathe one less; and the e order fhall be observed with Ter or the first. I am affared mergard not for much my liberality is my favour.

When they had leard the Ring speak after that manner, hey imagined the thing done; and departing our of his preside, they prepared strong Ropes and fron Hooks, which hey fastened to the Rocks, and so climbed up. The King tent round the Rock to look out the least steep and most with to mount upon, and in the second Watch willed them to pass forwards with good speed. They being furtified with two days Victuals, and armed only with Swords and Spears, at first went forwards without any great difficulty; but when they came to the steepness of the Rock, some took hold of the broken crags to life up themselves, and some fastening their Hooks on the Focks, climbed upon the Ropes: They were compelled to rest and stay differ sines, and so consumed that day in sea and la-

the Forestis, thereby to win the Kings farent; and notice

When they had passed many difficult places, surther labours appeared, the height of the Rock seeming to grow more and more. When they failed either of their hold or of their sooting, it was a miserable thing to see how them fell down headlong, shewing thy their missionine, an example to others of the same threatening Calamity. Notwithstanding at length, through all these distinctives they got up to the top, where wearied with the travel of their continual labour, and some with the larm and mains they had received, they shept all that night amongst the wild and rough Rocks, unmindful of the peril

they were in-

When it was day, they awaked out of their deep fleen and beholding the Valleys underneath them, they were is notant in what part of the Rock to great a multigude of their Enemies frould lie. But at length, when they perceived by the smoke in what place they were, they upon the points of two spears fet up the fign that was appointed them, and found that in their scaling up they had loft two and thirry. The King being careful not fo much for thedefire he had to win the Rocks, as to fave those whom he had exposed to so manifest a danger, stoodallday surveying the top of the Mountain; and when the clarkness of the night took away the profpect of his fight, he depart ed to refresh himself. The next day before it was full light. he perceived the white Cloth fet up on the top of the Rock; but the variety of the Air, the Sun beginning toarife, and yes clouded, caused him to doubt a while whether his fight had failed him or not. But when it was clear and open day, it was manifeftly apparent, and all doubt was removed. Then he called Cophes, by whom he had founded their Resolutions before, willing him once again to exhort them to be better advised; and if so be that in the trust of their strength, they would not submit them-selves, that then he should shew to them those Souldiers that had taken the Rock over their head when Cophes came thither, he began to perswade Arimages to give up the Fortress, thereby to win the Kings favour; and not inforce then

1119

of

tree:

nif

Car

tif

bb

ITE

14

ril

P

からか

in d

e- ie

free Alexander to stay in the Siege of a Rock, having so my weighty affairs in hand: But he found him more ofinate and proud than he did before; and more infolently mmanded Cophes to depart, and move him no more on at subject. Then he took Arimages by the hand, and rewired him to go with him out of the Cave : When they were come where they might look about, he shewed him ofe that were gotten to the top of the Rock; and fcornthen his pride, he asked of him, whether Alexander's buldiers had gorren wings or no?

By that time the Trumpers were blown in the Macedons camp, they might hear the Alarm that was made in the Army, which, as many vain and trifing things are wont in Wars to produce great effects, so it was the cause that y yielded themselves; for fear so troubled them, that y could not confider the small number that were over heir heads, but called Cophes again in great hafte, who ms departed away, and fent with him to Alexander thirty of the chief men, authorized to yield up the Rock, with imposition to depart in safety,

But Alexander, notwithstanding that he doubted left his memies discovering the small number; of his men, might me them to diffres; yet trusting in the felicity of his own fortune, and offended with the pride of Arimazes, would tree to no condition, but that they should yield upon Diferection. Arimages thereupon despairing more of the rength of the place, then he had cause, descended down the Camp with the chiefest of the Nation that were of in to him: All whom Alexander caused to be scourged with Rods, and then to be Crucified at the foot of the lock. The mulcitude that yielded, with the mosey that here was taken, were distributed in gift to the Inhabitants the new Ciries; and the Rule of the Rock was committo Artabasas, with the Charge of the Country thereorder; fother when they were unfied the Wood .cincle the Ambushment lay, their Exemics brake out upon then

(not luspecking aur juli jangen) and down it was THE

THE

EIGHTH BOOK.

Of the Alls of Alexander the Great, KING of Macedon.

A Lexander having won this Rock with greater Fame than true Glory, because his Ementies remained in no place certain, it was necessary for him to separate his Power; and so he divided his Army into three Bodies He gave the Charge of me one part to Eppeffion, to Cento the other, and reserved the third part to himself. His Enemies were not all of one Opinion; for some of them seeing their opposition could not avail, yielded the miches before the Fight; to whom he gave the Circles and the Lands of those that continued still his Enemies.

But the Out lawries of Ballria, with leight hundred Horse-men, wasted the Villages of the Massagers: for the redress whereof, Attinas, Governour of that Country, went against them with three hundred Horse-men, not knowing that his Enemies lay in wast for him; who planting their Ambulhment in a Wood joyning to a great Plain, had appointed some men to drive Cattel, thereby to draw their Enemies, with the greediness of the prey, within danger of the Ambush. When the Souldiers of Anthons saw the Drivers of the Cattle, they pursued them without order; so that when they were passed the Wood, where the Ambushment lay, their Enemies brake out upon them (not suspecting any such danger) and slew them all.

10

194

G

74

かかれる

IC

d

i

.

Ó

.

The fame of this Overthrow came immediately rocrates who dew thither with the Horsemen : But the Massassing thed before his coming, he flew a shouland of Dahans that took their part, whereby the Rebellion of the Country ceased. Thus Alexander having subjued he Sogdians, returned to Maracanda, whither Berdes whom he had fent to the Scythians inhabiring about Bofhum) came to him with Embelladors of that Country. Dahans (which Nations were joyned by Affinity togefent certain Messengers to Alexander offering to submit whis Commandment The Scythian Embaladors made movest, that Alexander would vouchfafe to marry their lings Daughter; and if the Affinity pleased him, that swould suffer the Princes of the Macedons to enterinto Marriage likewife with the Noblemens Daughters of their Country, promising that the King should come in person; wifit him. He heard gently both the Embaffages, and fill continued in that place, till Epheftion and Attabafas owned him, and then uniting his Forces legain, he adleed thro the Country that is called Bacaria.

There is nothing effected in that Nation, than to have par Droves of wild Beafts confined in Parks, which are pleasant, and full of Springs : Those Parks are infedin Walls, and Towers builded within them, to be adpessfor the Hunters. There was one Park in that mirry, that had remained unhunted, during the time of the mens Ages; into which Alexander entred with his whole Army, chafing the wild Beafts in every quarters monast the rest, there was a Evon of a vast bulk that nerunning rowards Alexander, which when Lyfmachus which afterwards was King, Randing next to Alexander) inceived, he stepped before him, to receive the Lyon, with his Hunting Spear: Bue Alexander placked him back dbid him withdraw, faying That he was able to kill a Lych wiell as Lysimachus. For you are to understand, that this Lylmachu, on a time hunting in Syria, killed by himfif alone an huge Lyon; but yet he was rorn to the very Lobnot Bones

430.005

Bones under the left shoulder, and put in great danger of his life, which was the occasion of this Retort from Alexander, who perform'd with his Sword no less then he promised; for he did not only receive the Lyon; but killed him with one stroke: Therenpon the Fable rose, how Alexander should have cast Lysimalchus to a Lyon.

But though Alexander his chance was good herein, yet the Macedons knew, that by the Custom of his Commy, he should not have hunted on Foot without the chiefest of his Nobility and Friends about him. He killed within that Park four thousand-wild Beafts, with which he seased his Army, returning afterwards to Maracanda.

Artabasus having excused himself by his Age, that he was uncapable of continuing the Rule of that Country, Alexander committed it to Clives, being the man that defended him with his Target, when he was fighring bareheaded at the River of Granike, and there cut off Rhalaca hand, just ready to firike the King to He was an old Sont dier to Philip his Factier, and norable by many fears of War that had done a Hallanide his Sifter, was Alexander Nurse, whom he loved no less then his own Morher of these causes he committed the strongest pair of his Embire to his fidelity. The King that purposed to fer forward his Journey the next day, made the fame night a folemn bas quet, wherein (being roo) greatoa Boafter of himfelf) when he was hot with Wine, he began to fer forth the Acts that he had done in such fort, that his words offend ed the very ears even of those that knew them to be whole wonve chaff a the wild Reafte true.

The Ancient Captains kept filence, 'till such time is he began to desace the Acts of Philip his Facher vaunting the notable Victory of Cheronese to be his own deed, the Glory whereof (he said) was taken from his own deed, the Glory whereof (he said) was taken from his own deed, the Glory whereof his Father 1. For the allegand, how into the Mining which tole borween the Microsoft and said South diers, when Philip lay hunt of a wound which the received in a Rencounter; and thought he could be no otherwise secure, then to counterseit himself to be dead; the de-

fendel

TO de West of Vill

in

4

ì

à

d

dhis body with his Buckler, and flew them with his hand who ran upon his Father to have killed him; What (he faid) his Father never gladly would confess, ever could submit to acknowlege his safeguard to his He also declared, how after his Expedition into Ilin writing to his Father, he alone a cribed the Vito himself, having overthrown his Enemies. He faid, In his Opinion it deserved but small Commendations make a Journey into Samothracia, when Afia ought to been spoiled and burnt. Nor he thought no man

rexceed all mens credit.
The young men that were present, were pleased with and the like Discourse, but it was ungrateful to the ment, especially for Philip's take, under whom they had ferved Then Chius who likewife was not very fober, red to fuch as were bereath him, relearfing fone verof Euripides, whereof the King might rather hear the and than the words: The effect of them was, " That the Greeks did ill, who in the Monuments of their Victories, abscribed only the Names of their Kings, who usurped Glory to themselves, which other men won by feeding of their own Blood Alexander therefore judghis words to have been worse then they were, inquiof fuch as were next him, what Chius faid : But when by kept filence, Clius with a louder Voice, rehearfed order Philip's Acts, and the Wars he made in Greece, fering them before any Acts done fince that time: hereupon there arose a confusion between the young men the old. But the ling inforcing a patience simfelf, en he heard Chim detace his praise, conceived a wonwrath in his Mind: Yet it feemed that he would bridled his Passion, if Clitus would have made an end this prefum tuous talk. But when he would not ceafe, gave an occasion to Alexander to be further moveds to

refe was hared: And the call up laid to his Charge in quillost Artal a and how he mocked the Gracie of the Client then proceeded so far, that he durst desend Parmenio his case, and preferred the Victory that Philip won of the Athenians, before the destruction of Theber: And going further and further, not only through drunkenness, but even by a frowardness of a contentious mind, at length he said:

If we must die fon thee, Client is not the first, for they receive greater re vards of the Victory, that can most shamefully defice thy Rathers memory. The Country of the Sogdian is given to me, that has so often rebelled, and now is not only unsubdued, but never likely to be brought to Subjection. Lam placed among these will

brought to Subjection: I am placed among those wild Beasts that be of so uncivil a Disposition. But I could

pass what concerns my self, if the Souldiers of Philip were not despised; forgetting, that if the old Atharias had not

turned again the young Men, when they gave over the fight, we had yet fluck Alicarnazus: How is it then the

Afia is conquered with those young men? But I feet is true what your Uncle faid in Italy; 'Twas his Fortune

have men to meet with, but you women.

There was nothing that Cliens spake or did in his rash ness, that moved more the King, than the Honoursbie menrion made of Parmenio: Yet for all that he concealed his Resentment, contenting himself with only commanding him to avoid the place, making no farther Reply, but this: 'If thou talkeft a little longer. I think thou wilt up braid me with the faving of his Life, for this has been of en boafted. But notwithflanding that the King had commanded him to depart, yet rarried he ftill, and would not rife: and therefore fuch as fate next him, wook him by the arms, and led him away, blaming him, and giving him exhortation to use better Language. When Clieus faw himfelf drawn forth against his Will, anger was added to his Drunkeness and he then declared aloud, That it was be who with his Breaft defended the King's Backs but now when the good service was past, the very memory of the Benefit was hated: And the ewith he laid to his Charge the death of Attalus, and how he mocked the Oracle of Jupaer

general series of the series o

10

h

ble

led

au

of-

nd nd nd

vas

hat

but

Behe

7u.

ter

whom Alexander claimed to be his Father, and faid. he told him better truth then his Father did.

At chose words the King was stirred to so much passion, e could forcely have born being forer: But having his s overcome with drink, he role fuddenly from the ble. His Friends were amazed, and throwing down Cups for halte, role to expect the end of what they him so about in fo much fury: He took a Spear out he hand of one of his Guard, and would have firuck s, as yet raging with the intemperance of his tongue. he was stopped by Ptolomeus and Perdicus, who took in their arms, and flayed him for all his striving; and nuchus and Leonatus took away the Spear. ed out to his Guard for aid, crying out, that he was taby his nearest Friends, as Darius was of late; and ed the Trumper to be blown, that the armed men who affemble in the Court : Then Perdicas and Prolomens down upon their knees, requiring him that he would persevere in his wrath, which he so suddenly had coned, but rather respite his displeasure, seeing that he the the next day much better receive his just fatisfa-But his wrath prevailed to much, that his ears te thut up from all counsel, and he ran in a fury amongst Guard, plucking a Spear out of one of their hands; ich once got, he stood in the entry through the which ey must needs pass that supped with him.

When all the rest were come forth, Clitus came forth shout light; and because Alexander could not discern he asked who he was? But that was done so rerribly. at the cruelty of the act he went about, appeared in his ce. But Clitus feeing the King in a fury, had no reed how much he had offended him before but made aner, that he was Clitus, who was coming from the King's equet: with that word he firuck him through the boto that he fell down flark dead, and Alexander was all eprinkled with his blood; Go now (quoth he) to Phi-Parmenio, and Attalus. Herein it may be feen, how Nature provides for Humane Dispositions, who, for the

most part, cannot consider so well the things to come. those that be past: For after that Alexander was allwaged. and his Drunkenness past, weighing advitedly the foulness of the act he had done; he confidered then, that though Clitus had used over-much liberty in his talk, yet he ough not to have thain so Noble a Man of War, and the saver of his own life, though he was ashamed to confession He faw that he, being a King, had used the detestable of fice of an Executioner, in revenging with wicked Slanghter the liberry of words, which might have been imputed to Wine. When he beheld the blood of him, whom a little before he had invited to his Banker, to run over all the Entry.; and that the Guard were fo aftonished and amazed, that they flood afar off, and durst not come nears his Solitariness caused his Repentance to be the greater. Then he plucked the Spear out of the dead Body, and would have thrust it into his own Breast, if the Guard had not come, and with great striving, wrong it out of his hands. That done, they took him up, and carried him into his Lodging, where he fell down flar upon the ground, filling all the Court full of the terrible noise of his Lamentation! He tore his Face with his Nails, and requested those that were about him, that they would not fuffer him to live in such a shame and dishot our. In these requests he consumed the whole night, and crused a diligent search to be made, whether it were the anger of the Gods or no, that had caused him to commit so hainous an act. At length it was found, that the yearly Sacrifice, due to Bacchur, was not celebrated in the fit time: and therefore it appeared manifefly, that it flould be the wrath of the Gods that had moved him to commit Murther upon earing and drinking. I ut the greate ft thing that increased his forroy, was the amazement of his Friends, when he aw decd, would gladly hold fimiliarity or difccurse with him as they did before. Then he perceived that he should live as a wild Beaft in a Defart, both frighting offers, being also afraid himself. The next morning he con manded de Eody

ed,

ness

ugh ight fa-

OF

rgh-

red

n 2

all

m2-

319

ér:

and

ard r of

im

nd.

en-

ofe

10

he

rch

or

At

ac-

e it

the

ir g

(2W

hat

nim

ive

ing

tle

ody

bloody as it was, to be brought into his hamber; the when he faw lying before him, he fell on it weepand faid:

shall I thus requite my Nurse, whose two Sons were flair my fake at Mi etum, by the killing of her Brother Cothat ber only Fiv) and at my own Table too? What refuge shall wretched Woman have? I was all the comfort that fle Heft, and now the shall never with Foy-bibild me. Shall I, wicked Killer of my Preservers, return into my Country, In I shall not be able to present my hand to my Nurse, without

temembrance of her calamity and my hame?

When he could put no end to these complaints, the Bowas taken away, by the appointment of his Friends. er he had flayed three days thut up in his Chamber, forwing after this manner, the Squires, and such as had the ping of his Person, seeing him given obstinately to death, the into his Lodging, and with great pain brought him hough he long withstood their prayers) to the at length me relief and sufterance: and to the intent he should be eless shamed of Clitus death, the Macedons decreed, the was lawfully killed; and would not fuffer him to

buried, but that the King commanded it.

Having confumed ten days at Maracarda, chiefly to conm the grief he had conceived at Clius death, he fent bestim, with part of his Army, into Baltria, to provide Auals against Winter; and committed the Government the same Province to Amintas, which before he had gito Clitus. From thence he marched into a Country lled Zenippa, that confines on the Scythians; which bewell inhabited, and full of Villages, does with the plenlinefs thereof, not only detain the Inhabitants to dwell tre still, but also invites strangers to plant amongst them. his place was a refuge to the Out-laws of Battria, that rebelled: But after Alexander's coming was known, by were driven forth by the Country-men, and two thouand two hundred of their Horsemen (which were customed to live by Theft and Spoil in time of Peace, t new much more corrupted, not only by the War, but alio

h

te

fe

la

fo

also by despair of forgiveness, and their wild dispositions did give an On set suddenly upon Amyntas, who was Day us Lieutenant. The Battel was long doubtful betwin them; but finally, they lost seven hundred of their number, whereof three hundred were taken Prisoners, at turned their backs to the Victors, not without revens for they slew of them sourscore, besides three hundred at fifty that they wounded; and yet notwithstanding, and this second Rebellion, they obtained pardon. When Ale ander had brought them to his Obedience, he came withis whole Army into a Country called Naura, the Lowhercost was called Sissmethres, who had two Sons by the current stowards and the Carnal Knowledge of their Children.

The same Sissimethres, with 2000 armed men, sorting and kept the Straight at the entry of the Country, who it was most narrow. The passage was desended both with a River and a Rock, through the which Rock the way with made by sorce of hands: The light is received in at the Entry, but surther inward there is none, but only such men bring with them. From this Rock there goes a Valunderneath the ground, that has issue into the Fields, whi is not known but to the Inhabitants of that Count Though this straight was naturally strong, and defend besides by a strong Power, it deter'd not Alexander so attempting it, who brought Engines, which they can heres, to beat down their Fortification; and with Sin and shot of Arrows, did force his Enemies from the pla of their desence.

When he had driven them away, he passed through Works he had won, and made approach to the Rock; the Stream that grew out of the sorce of united waters. In grow the Mountain, was an impediment to him the in: It seemed a wonderful work to fill the Chanelos River, ver he caused Trees and Stones to be brought to place. When his Enemies, that never had seen any string before, beheld the Work suddenly to rise like Mountain, they were put into a marvellous fear; by when

tions

Day

twi

nun

, ar

veng

d an

aft

Ale

in :

Lo

by h

ha

rtifi

W

y w

it t

Va

whi

inti

end

fre

y o

ola

hi;

he

of

0

vh

the King supposing they might have been brought to render it up, fent one Oxeartes, of the fa ne Nation, to perfrade Sisimethres to surrender the Rock; and in the mean fason, to put them in more terrour, he caused Towers of Wood to be brought forwards, and shot from the Engines with fuch violence out of them, that the Enemies forfaking all other strengths, retired into the top of the Rock. Uximes finding Sisimethres in this fear, perswaded him rather to try Alexander's Benevolence than his Power; and feeing that all Creatures submitted to him, that he alone should not be his hinderance, marching now with his Victorious Army into India, whereby he should turn other mens plagues upon his own neck. Sisimethres would have been contented to follow his advice, but that she who was both his Mother and his Wife affirmed, how she would rather die, than commit her felf into any mans hand: and therefore he being ashamed that the love of Liberty should remain more in a Woman, than in him being a Man, he altered his purpose, taking that way which was more honourable than fafe; and dismissing him that was the Mediator for Peace, he determined utterly to abide the extremity of the Siege. Yet when he had well weighed his Enemies Power, and his own together, he began again to repent him of his Wives Counfel, it being more rash than profitable; and made suit, that Oxiartes would return, proflering then to commit himself to the King's Will, onrequiring of Oxiartes, that he would not discover his Wives Opinion and Counsel, for fear lest that he should not obtain her pardon. He fent therefore Oxiartes before, and he came after, with his Wife, his Children, and all his Relations, without tarrying for any affurance promifed to him by Oxiartes. Alexander hearing of their approach, fent his Horsemen before to cause them to stay, and to tarry for his coming: And when he was advanced to the place where they attended his coming, he offered Sacrifice to Minerva and Vistoria, restoring to Sissimethres his former Rule and Authority; putring him in hope of a greater Country, if he would faithfully continue in his N 2 FriendFriendship; and took his evo Sons, presented to him by

BOOK VIII.

the Father, to serve him in his Wars.

Alexand r left his Infantry to subdue such as had not ver yielded, and marched forwards with his Cavalry into other parts. The way was craggy and difficult, which at fifth they indured indifferently, but afterwards, when their Horse-hoofs were torn, and they utterly foundred, many were not able to follow, but rode dispersed, and cut of order, the weariness of their travel so much overcame shame: The King notwithstanding changed often his Horse; and purfued, without intermission, his Enemies that fled before him; by reason whereof, all the Noble young men that were wont to accompany him, were left behind, except only Philip, Lysimachus Brother, who then being in the flower of his Youth, and of great likelihood to become an excellent man, followed on foot the King that rode on Horseback, for the space of fistry surlongs. Lysimachus divers times, nevertheless, prossered him his Horse, burin no wife he would depart from the King, notwithstanding that he had his Corflet on, and all his Armour.

When the King paffed through the Wood where his Enemies lay in Ambushment, he fought notably, and proteeted the King's Person, encountring with his Enemies: But after they were put to flight; and driven out of the Woods, the greatness of his Courage, which had furtained him in the heat of the fight, fainted with his body; and being all on a sweat, he leaned himself to a Tree, which could not fo much flay him, but that he fell to the earth; and being taken up again by the King's hand's, he immediarely after shrunk down, and died. The King being for rowful for his death, received some other Intelligence, no leis to be lamented; for before he came to his Camp, he was advertised of the death of Erigius, one of the not Noble of his C prains, whose Funerals were celebrated

with great Pomp and Ceremonies of Honour.

her

(Ih

of

U.

yet ier

rft

eir

ihy

of

me ic:

led

ien

ex-

in

me on

di-

ing

ne-

ite-

es:

jed

and

ich

h;

di

for no he

of

ted

OIL

From thence he determined to go to the Dahans, where understood that Spitamenes was: But Fortune, that ever ceased to favour him, did unexpectedly finish that owney of his, as she did many others. Spitamenes was fimed with an excessive love to his Wife, whom he carand with him in all his hazards and adventures: but the fat could not well endure flying, nor to change place he a Fugitive, became so weary of travel, that by flicery, and fair means, the inticed her Husband to leav behr, and endeavour (seeing he ways to escape) behoure Alexander avour, of whose elemency (se ne had feen fo great experience. And to move in the more thereto, the brought before him the Chilten begot betwixt them, making request, that at the all he would take pity on them; wherein she thought er prayer would be the more effectual, because Alexana was so near at hand. But Spitamenes conceiving that he did not do this by way of Counfel, but of purpose to lerray him; and that the defired to fubmit her felf to Accander, in confidence of her Beauty, drew forth his Sword with an intent to have killed her, if he had not been with-held by the timely interposing of his Brothers. When they would not fuffer him to hurt her, he commanded her to avoid his fight, threatning to kill her if the ame again into his presence; and to mitigate his love toards her, he confumed that night amongst his Concunes: but his love that was so deeply grounded decreanot at all, but rather kindled the more toward his Wife: Wherefore he reconciled himself again to her, making his continual request, that she would not counsel move him any more on that subject, but be content with fuch chances as fortune would fend him; for he effeeined Death lighter, then to yield himself. She purged her felf of the former perswasion, which appeared to her (he faid) to have been good; and though it were out of a Womans frailty, yet it proceeded of a faithful meaning; and from thenceforth, The faid, The was contented to do as it should please him.

Spiramens overcome with her counterfeit affection, made a great Feaft, and after much eating and drinking, became drowfie, and was carried into his Chamber. When his Wife perceived him to be in a deep seep, she pulled out a Sword, which she had kept secretly for that purpose, and cut off his Head, delivering the same, being Sprinkled with Blood, to her Servant that was privy to the fact; and with him only, as the was imbrued with the Blood, the came to the Macedons Camp, defiring to have it fignified to Alexander, that there was one come, who had fomething of imporrance to communicate to him: He presently gave Commandment she should enter; but when he perceived her defiled with Blood (thinking that she had come to lament some injury done to her) he bid her declare what she would have : She defired that her Servant might come in, from underneath whose Garment she took Spitamenes head, and presented it

The paleness of the face wanting Blood, had taken away the knowledge whose Face it was; but when the King perceived it to be a mans head, he departed forth of the Tenr, and by inquiry understood the matter. This brought him into great perplexity, and he was driven by diver imaginations into fundry opinions; he judged the killing of such a one (being a Fugitive and a Rebel) to be a great benefit unto him, who living might have been a great impediment to the progress of his Arms: But on the other fide, confidering the horribleness of the deed, that sho should kill him by Treason who loved her so intirely, and by whom she had many Children, the Barbarity of the Act overcame the thanks of benefit, and she was commanded to depart the Camp, less the example of such licentiousness might corrupt the manners and civil dispositions of the Greeks.

When the Dahans understood of Spitamenes death, they brought Dataphernes bound, (this was he who was Partner with him in his Conspiracy) and yielded themselves to Alexander. He being delivered from the greatest part

11.

ide

be-

en

ed

ur-

ing

to

th

to

ne,

to

n-

od

ne

he

th it

2.

ne

of

is

y

e

0

n

It

l,

his present sear, determined to revenge the injuries of an who had been misused by the pride and covetousness his Deputies and Officers: Therefore he committed mania, with the Mardons and Tapitions to Prataphernes, whom he gave in Commission, to send Phradates, his decessor, to him as a Prisoner. Stasoner was substituted Ruler of Garia in the place of Arsamus: Arsaces was at into Media, to the intent that Oxidates should report from thence: And Babylon, upon the death of Many was committed to Deditamenes.

When he had ordained these things, the third Month drew his Army out of their Winter-lodgings, to go to a untry that was called Gabara. The first days journey quiet, and the next not very tempestuous, yet darker had been accustomed, but not without some significaof their approaching calamities: The third day, the ment was full of Lightning; and when the Lightning ed, it was very dark: the beholding whereof did much Te the Souldiers, and put them into a great fear : It ndred, in a manner continually, and the Lightning fell frange fimilitudes, fo that the Army stood assonished, durst neither go forwards, nor remain still in one c. Then there came suddenly a shower of Hail drivlike a Tempest, which at the first they desended by ecoverture of their Armour; but shortly after their ids were so cold and wer, that they could not hold their apons, nor yet devise which way to turn themselves, findalways, where they turned their faces, more violence the Tempest than before: Every man therefore broke array, wandring about the Woods; and many that tre wearied by fear, rather then by travel, lay down upthe Ground, notwithstanding that the sorce of the Cold of converted the shower into a Frost. The Trees, aminft which they leaned, were a great safety and help to many: And yet they were not ignorant, when they reftthat they chose themselves a place of death; for when bey left to move their Bodies, the natural heat left them:

N 4

but ease was so pleasant to such as were wearied, that they refused not to purchase rest though at the price of dying. Their affliction was not only vehement for the time, but also continued very long; to the increase whereof, the light, which is a natural comfort to men (through the darkness of the shower, and the shadow of the Wood) was fo taken away, that it appeared as if it had been

Nigl.t.

The King only was able to endure this mischief, who ceased not to go about the Army, drawing the Souldiers together when they were dispersed, lifting them up that lay upon the Ground; and to incourage them, he shewed them the Smoak that arose afar off from the Cottages, whither he exhorted them to move forwards for fuccour. There was not any thing more effectual to their fafery, then that whiles they were ashamed to leave their Prince, whom they faw to endure this mischief, they chased themselves with their utmost labour : But necessity (which in adverse fortune is of more force than any reason) found out a remedy for this cold: They fell to cutting down the Wood, making every where piles and flacks thereof, and fet them on fire: Then a man would have judged that the whole Wood had been on a flame, for there was scarcely space left betwirt the fires for men to stand : Then their numbed joynts began to be moved with the heat, and their Spirits, which were oppressed by the force of the cold, began to have their free recourse; some recovered the Cortages, which necessity caused them to seek out in the uttermost part of the Wood, and the rest recovered the Can p, which was planted in a moift ground: but by that time the Shower was ceased, the Tempest had confunied one thousand Souldiers with Varlets and Slaves. It is faid, that divers were frozen to death, leaning against Trees, and yet seemed as though they had been living, and speaking together.

It chanced that a common Souldier of the Macedons, who had much pain to go and carry his Armour, came at last into the Camp where the King was; who notwithstanding

rose out of his Chair, and pulling of the numbed Soulerose out of his Chair, and pulling of the numbed Soulins Armour, who was almost past his remembrance, he whim down in his Seat: He a great while knew not where when, or who had received him; but at length, when his miral hear came to him, and he perceived it to se his lings Seat, and the King to be their present, he was asraid, and started up again: But Alexander looked him in the lice, and said:

Perceivest thou not now, my Souldier, with how much better difion thou livest, than the Persians do under their Kings? This death to them to sit in the Kings Seat, and the same has

on the safe guard of thy life.

H

ney

ng.

but

the

the

d)

en

vho

ers

bar

red

ges,

ur.

ry,

ce,

min

ind

the

ind

the

ely

eir

eir

be-

ot-

ut-

he

by

on-

es.

2.

li-

ho aft

The next day he called his Friends, and the Captains this Army together, promiting to restore to them whatever they had loft : wherein he performed his promice; is Sismethres bringing to him many Beasts of burthen, in 2009 Camels, and a great number of Sheep and bren, he distributed all amongst the Souldiers; wherehe both restored to them their loss, and also delivered em from their hunger. The King returned great thanks "Silimethres; and commanding his Souldiers to carry fix lys Victuals ready dreffed. he marched against the Sacans here he destroyed all their Country; and of the Boory dere taken, he presented thirty thousand Sheep in Gift o Sissmethres. From thence he came to a Country belongig to a Noble Prince called Cobortanus, who fibicated melf to the King, and he again restored his Country to in, exacting nothing of his, but that of his three Sons, he hould fend two of them to serve him in his Wars: But Cobortanus offer'd to him all three, and made feast Malexander, with such sumptuousness as belonged to the manner of their Country, therein all the pleasures being lewed that could be devised: Thirty Virgins of the Nodemens children were brought in before Alexander, amongst whom there was Cobseranus Daughter, called Roxawho in beauty and excellency of personage, and Gallarry of apparel (rare amongst those Nations) excelled all N S

the rest: And notwithstanding that they were all of excellent Beauty with whom she was accompanied, yet she drew all mens eyes towards her, and especially the kings, who could not well now govern his affections in such prosperity of fortune, it being an infirmity which the frailty of man seldom can avoid.

Thus he who beheld the Wife of Darius and her two Diughters (to whom Roxane was not comparable) with no other defires than he might have beheld his Mother, was so overcome with the Love of a young Virgin, being but of mean Parentage, when compared to the Blood of Kings, that he affirmed it to be a thing necessary for the Establishment of the Empire, for the Persians and Mactdons to marry together, by which only means shame might be taken from the vanquished, and pride from the Con-He also shewed a president, how Achilles (from whom himself was descended) joyned himself with a Captive: And left his Love should be counted lascivious; he resolved to take her to him by the way of Marriage, The Father joyful of this which he looked not for, gladly confirmed the Kings words; who in the heat of his defire, caused Bread to be brought forth, according to the Custom of his Country, the same being the most Religious Ceremony of Marriage amongst the Macedons: This Bread was cut a funder with a Sword, and each of them made of it a Sacrifice. It is to be thought, that fuch a established the Customs of that Nation, covered, by a moderate Diet, to shew to them that were the gatherers of great Riches, with how small a thing they ought to content themielves.

Thus he who was both King of Asia and Europe, joyned himself in Marriage with a Maid brought in a Masque, to beget upon a Captive, one that should Reign over the Victorious Macedons, and succeed in the Empire of the World. His Friends were ashumed that he should chuse in the heat of Wine, a Father-in-L w, among them whom he had lately subdued. But after Clius de ith, all the Liberty and Freedom of speech being taken away.

tley

Son

to I

W23

nd čil II.

the gs, of

wo ider, ing of he ider on a second decided the one

as no-

cne

yn-

ie.

CI

he

ulc he

ay

emost apt instrumens to declare the Consent of their

After this was done, he prepared his journey towards: da, determining to visit the Ocean Sea: And because would leave nothing behind him that might be an imdiment to his expedition, he took order for thirty thoudyoung men to be levied out of all the Provinces, and be brought to him armed, resolving to use then both Pledges, and as Souldiers. He fent Craterus to pursue lastanes and Gateues, of whom the one was taken Prisoner, d the other sain in Battle. Polipercon also subdued Country that was called Bubacen; and having establishe things in order, he fet his whole imagination upon the War of India, which was counted to be a very rich country, and to abound both with Gold, Pearls and Preious Stones, things appertaining as much to Voluptuousis Magnificence; and it was faid, that the Souldiers are had their Targets made of Ivory, and of Gold: and therefore least he who thought himself to excel the the should be surpassed in any point, he caused his Soulders, to garnish their Targets with Plates of Silver, and the Horse-men to beautifie their Bridles with Gold and liver. There were one hundred and twenty thousand. med men that followed Alexander in the War.

When all things were ripe for what he long before concived in his evil-disposed mind, he thought it time to ampass how he might usurp the name and honour of a sod, and so commanded himself not only to be called, but also endeavour to make himself believed to be the son of Jupiter; as though his power had been a well to restrain mens thoughts, as their tongues: His intentions, that the Macedons should fall prostrate on the Ground, and worship him after the same manner that the Persident of their Kings; and to such his detire, they wanted for princious flattery, the perpetual Poyson of Princes, whose Estates have more often been overcome by flattery, then by any force of Enemies. The Macedons were not in

the blama for this, for none of them suffered gladly their Country Custons to be subverted; but it was the fault of the Greks, who with their fordid Conditions, corrupted

the profession of honest Sciences.

There was one Hagis of Argos, as evil a Poet as was since Cherillus days, and another called Cleo, a Silician, given to flattery, both by his nature, and by the Custom of his Country: These, with some other of the dregs and resuse of their Countries (whom Alexander reputed more than any of his Captains and Kinsmen) would make it appear to the World, that Heaven lay open for Alexander; and slicked not openly to pronounce, that both Hercules and Bacchu, Castor and Pollux, should all give place to his new Godhead. To effect which purpose, the King commanded, upon a solemn day, a Feast to be prepared with great pomp, inviting thereunto all the Lords and Gentlemen, both of the Macedons and the Greeks, with whom when he had sate and

gatena while, he departed out of the Feaft.

Then Cleo, as was before determined, made a Speechin the praise and admiration of the Kings Vertues, rehearing his exceeding benefits towards them all ;-which to require he faid, there was but one way, and that was, if they would acknowledge him a God, whom they knew to be one: For is it a small thing (quoth he) to recompence such great benefits towards you, with the extence of a little Frankincense? He de clared the Persians Custom to be both Religious and Wile,in worshipping their Kings as Gods, thinking their defence and fafeguard to confift in the Majefly of their Prince. He faid, Tha Hercules and Bacchus were Deified, when they had once overcom the envy of such as lived in their time; and men that come after do eath believe such things as have been confirmed by their Pre If any of y u (quoth he) will flick at this matter ye shall see me the first, that at Kings approach shall fall dom upon the earth, and worftip bim; which P esident other me ought to follow, and especially the men of most wisdom, that should always be examples to others in expressing their duties toward sheir Prince.

11:

eir

of

ted

nce

1 to

his

uíc

any

the

ked

ad.

n a

in-

the

and

hin

fins

ite

ulo

For

de

c,it

and

com

fier

Pre

ter

ושנ

me

nel

ud

H

His Speech tended directly against Califtenes, whose graity and pompt liberty of speech was hateful to the King; or he thought him the man who only had stayed the Maceons, that else would readily have done him that honour, hereupon, every mans eyes were fastened on Calistenes, who, after silence made, spake in this manner:

If the King were present (O cleo) to hear these thy words, it should not be needful now to answer thee; for he himself would make request, that he might not thus fwerve into the custom of Strangers; nor would he suffer that thou shouldest deface, and bring into the oblogny and envy of men, with fuch thy pernicious flattery, his Noble Acts, atchieved with such courage and good forrunes: But because he is absent, I for him will thus anfwer thee: There is no fruit foon ripe, that will continue long; and the means thou useft to give the King Divine Honours is the way to take all Honour from him: There is a time required, that Men should believe him to be a God; for that Acknowledgment has always been given to great men, when they are once dead, by such as came after them: I wish to the King Immortality after his death. and that his life may be long, and his Estate continual: But Deifying is a thing that sometimes does follow a man. but it never does accompany him. Thou didft rehearfe examples of the Deifying of Hercules and Bacchus; thinkleft thou that they were made Gods upon drink, and by the Confult and Decree of one Dinner? The nature of Alexander's Mortality must first be removed from our eyes. before Fame can translate him into Heaven. Are not they goodly Gods (Cleo) that thou and I can make? Would the King (thinkest thou) be content to receive of us the authority of his Divinity? I have a great defire to prove thy power: If thou canft make a God, first make a King; it is much more casie to give an earthly Kingdom, than the possession of Heaven. Thinkest thou (cleo) that the Immortal Gods will hear thee without disdain, or suffer those thy wicked Counsels to take any effect? 'Tis their Divine Will that we should hold us content with the cu-

BOOK VIII.

floms of our Forefathers; and for my part I am not alhamed of my Countrey, and defire not to learn after what

manner I should honour my Prince; for, in my Opinion,

we acknowledge him sufficiently to be both King and Conquerour, of whom we receive Laws to live under.

Califthenes was favourably heard of all men, as the perfon whom they accounted the recoverer of their Universal He did not only in this Speech paint out fuch flatteries, but also lively expressed the Opinion of the Macedons, especially of such as were ancient men, to whom the exchange of old cuftoms were grievous. The King was nothing ignorant of the Harangue that had passed between them; for he stood behind a partition of the Hall, and heard all the discourse : He sent word therefore to Hagis and Cles. that at his coming in they should move the Strangers only to fall down, and worship him after their Country custom: And after a while, the King, as though he had come about fome business of importance, returned again to the Feast; and then the Persians fell down, and worshipped him, according to the Instructions before given them: but Polipercen that fate above the King at the Board, asked one in form, who proftrate touched the ground with his Chin. wherefore he kiffed no harder; with which words he moved Alexander to fo much anger, being always naturally impatient, that he faid to Polipercon, Is it thou that disdaineff to honour me? Shall I be mocked of thee alone? Polipercon anfwered, That as it was not seemly that a King should be scorned lo it was not that a Subject should be despised. At which words the King plucked him from the Table, and throwing him down, he said to him, as he fell to the earth; Lo, haft thou not done that thy felf, which before thou didft scorn in another man? And thereupon he commanded him to custody, and fo brake up the Feaft. Polipercon being thus punished, was afterwards pardoned; but Califtenes, whose contempt and flubbornness the King had long grudged at, found that the King had more deeply grounded his displeasure, on whom their chanced shortly after an apt occasion for revenge: It was a Custom (as it hath been said before) amongst the Noble-

281

Mobile-men of Macedon, to put their Sons, when they were In their Childhood, in service to the King, as Pages, to Perform all necessary Offices about his Person: Their usage to watch nightly by course, at the Chamber-door, there the King lay: The Concubines were by them brought at another door, where the Guard watched: They likemie received the Horses of the Grooms of the Stable, and brought them to the King when he mounted: They always were about the King, both in Hunting, and in Battel; and were brought up in the Studies of Liberal Sciences: The diefest honour was given to them, because they, sate and ar with the King: None had power to correct them with dripes, but only the King himfelf. This company was like a flore or Seminary, from whence all the Captains and Governours of the Macedons did proceed. From thence ame their latter Kings, whose Lineage the power of the

Romans long after extinguish'd,

III.

afha-

what

ion.

and

r. per-

rfal

inch

the

iom

was

een

ard

leo,

to

n:

out

ft;

IC-

in.

n,

Ó-

ń-

to

4

s

K

Hermolaus, one of that number, because he had struck Bore, (which the King had thought to have ftruck himleff) was by his Commandment beaten and scourged with Rods: which rebuke he took most grievously, and complained to Softratus his friend, who was one of the same company: he seeing the Body torn whereunto he had so great affection, and peradventure for some other causes ofended also with the King before, so excited Hermolaus (who was provoked sufficiently already) that each gave Faith to other to find a way to destroy the King: Which they undertook not with any Childish proceeding, but wifely agreed to bring Nicostratus, Antipater, Asclepiodorus, and Philoras, into the fellowship of their Conspiracy: And afterwards they joyned them to Anticles, Elaptonius, and Ephimanes. But the means how to effect this purpose seemed very difficult, because it behoved that all of them should watch together: And it was the custom, that according to their courses, some watched one night, and some another; for if any other should happen amongst them, who were not privy to the Conspiracy, it might be an Obfacle to the whole Enterprise: Therefore about changing

the course of their Watch, and in other preparation for the execution of their Conspiracy, there pussed two and

thirty days.

At length the Night came, when the whole number of the Conspirators should watch together, who rejoyced greatly among themselves, that each had kept Faith to other, whereof fo many days filence had given good proof: During which time, neither fear nor hope had alrered any of their Resolutions, so great-was the displeasure they had conceived against the King, or else the fidelity they bore to one another. They were standing at the door where the King supp'd, to the intent, that at his rising from the Banquet, they might bring him to his Chamber: But Alexander's fortune, and the pleasantness of such as were in his Company, moved him to drink largely; whereby, and by reason of other Pastimes and Entertainments, the time was fo prolonged, that the Conspirators stood in a marvellous perplexity: For one while they were glad, because they trusted to find him drunk when they should execute their Enterprise; and another while they were in a great Agony, left he should fit till day-light, for then the custon was to relieve the Watch, and others to succeeding their places; and because their course should not come about again till the seventh Night af er, they could not be affered that every one of then would keep the Defign fecret till that time. But when the day began to appear, and Alexander was risen from the Banquet, they were to glad to perpetrate their wicked Defign, that they were joyful to receive the King: There was a Woman accustomed to haunt the Court, who being distracted in her mind, and feeming by some inspiration to foretell things to come, met Alexander, and would in no wife fuffer him to pass, but perswaded him by all the means she could devise, to return and fit dawn again: He faid to her in sport, That the Gods gave him good advice; and thereupon called back his friends, and face drinking till it was two hours within day; by which time another Company had relieved the Watch and were standing before the Kings Chamber-door; yet for all that,

M.

for and

rof

ced

1 to

oof: any

had

ore

ere

the But ere by, the

be-

xe-

in 2-

be

e-

zr,

6

re

0-

d,

e, ut

ds

5,

d'

11

the Conspirators remained there still; after the time their Watch expired; so vehement is the hope which as minds conceive, when they be drowned in the desire stream Archievments.

The King spake more gently to them than he was accumed and order'd them to go to rest, because they had anched all the night before: and moreover he gave to very one of them for a reward 50 Sestercies, with commodation that they continued their watch longer than heir time. Being thus deceived of the great hope they were in, they departed to their Lodgings, in expectation the Night when their course should come again. But hiplanes, who either by the gentleness of the King shewed am amongst the rest, or else that he thought the provitive of God had withstood their purpose, suddenly changes his mind, and disclosed the Conspiracy to his Brother

fuilochus, who was not privy to it before.

The punishment of Philotas was fo fresh in every man's memory, that Eurilochus laid immediately hands upon his Bother, and brought him into the Court. He called to he Watch, and told them, he brought news that concernd the King's fafety, which they two apparently testified, well by their hafty coming at fuch a time, as also by heir sadness, that betrayed the inward trouble of their. The Watchmen called up Prolemens and Leonatus, hat lay within the King's Chamber; who straightway brought them to the King, and wakened him, who by rason of his much drinking lay in a deep sleep. It was long ere he awoke, but by little he came to himself, and sked what the matter was. Then faid Eurilochus Thankd be the Gods, that have not utterly determined the ruine of w Family. For though my Brother intended an hainous Act, of he is come to repentance, by him the matter is brought to light. The very same Night Treason was conspired against you; the Authors are such as you would scarcely think. And thereupon Epimanes declared all things in order, with the names of the Conspirators.

It is certain that Califthenes was not named as one privy to that Treason; but it was confessed that he gladly gare ear to the Discourse of others, when they blamed and reviled the King's Proceedings. Some do add, that when Hermolans complained to Califthenes how the King had beaten him, he bad him remember that he was a man. But whether he spake it to take the punishment in patience, or else to incite him to further malice, it remains in doubt. When the King was fully awaked, and called to his memory the peril he was in, he gave Eurilochus fifty Talents. with the forfeit of a rich man's goods called Tiridates, and pardoned his Brother before his pardon was requested. He commanded the principals of this Treason to be kept bound and amongst them Califthenes; who being taken and brought into the Court, the King slept all the day and the night enfuing, he was so heavy with drinking and watching. The next day he called a Council, whereat the Father, and Kindred of the Conspirators were present, not very well assured of their own safety, because that by the law of the Macedons all ought to die that were of kin to Traytors. All the Conspirators except Califthenes, by the King's commandment were brought forth; who immediately confelsed the whole Treason they had devised. Then every man present reviled them; and the King demanded what he had done to them, that they should conspire his death. When all the other stood amazed and filent, Hermolaus anfwered thus:

Te demand the grounds of this Contrivance, as if you were ignorant of the Cause. We entered into this Conspiracy to kill you, because you began to reign over us as if we were slaves,

and not free born.

As he was speaking these Words, his Father Sepolis called him Traytor and Murtherer of his Parents, stopping his Mouth with his Hand, urging that so black and execrable a Villain ought to be heard no longer. Then the King plucked his Father back, and bid Hermolaus speake on and relate all that he had learned of his Master Calisthems. Then Hermolaus proceeded. III.

IVY

are

re-

nen

ca-

But

10

bt.

10-

its,

nd

He

id,

he

11-

he

nd

.11

of

\$

n-

6

y

It

1.

.

e

1

will use your benefit, and declare those things which I have ned to the great mischief of us all. How small is the numof the Macedons remaining, that have escaped your cruel-Attalus, Philoras, Permenio, Lincestes, Alexander, Clirus, are now dead: but to our Enemies Advantage are alive. They flood in the Fight, and defended you their Swords, receiving wounds for your Glory and Victofor which how barbarously have you rewarded them. The besprinkled your Table with his Blood, and the other could be suffered to die an ordinary death. Thus the Captains people in Wracks and Tortures are made a pleasant ducle to the Persians, of whom they were Conquerors; menio, by whom you flew your Rhomy Acculus, was put to without Judgment. Thus use you the hands of us mehes, to execute your Butcheries upon one another, and whom (but now) you made the Tormenters and Instruments, made the objects of your Torments and Cruelty.

those words, the multitude began to shout against molaus, and his Father drew his Sword to have flain if he had not been hindred by the King, who comded Hermolaus to speak, requiring the rest to hear him ad for himself, who (he said) enforced the cause of his m punishment. At length with great Labour they d their peace, and then Hermolaus began again.

How liberal is he to suffer illiterate Boys to speak, when the ice of Calisthenes is shut up in prison, because he alone is able declare himself? and why? because he fears the free much of an Innocent, and cannot endure to behold his Face, Myst I will justifie he is not privy to this Confederacy ers that are here present, who contrived with me a noble Enuprise, of whom there is not any that can accuse Calisthenes fconsent; and yet our so patient and so righteous a King, hath dermined here his death. These be the rewards of the Mace-tus, whose blood is disesteemed as of no value. He hath 0000 Mules carrying Spoil and and Treasures, and yet the "Souldiers carry nothing with them but unrewarded skars al wounds; all this however we easily suffer'd before he betray-Mus to the Barbarians, and by a new trade of conquest made

nfe rat

cei

not Pas

En

us his own Souldiers Slaves. He allows the apparel and difcipline of the Persians, and despises the manners of his own Country, and therefore we determined to kill him, not a King of Macedon, but as King of Persia, and as a turncoat to be persecuted by the Law of Arms. He would have the Macedons kneel to him, and Worship him as a God. He rejused Philip for his Father; and if any God had been before Jupiter. he would have refused him likewise. Do you marvel if freedom cannot bear such Pride as this? What can we hope for at bu band, seeing we must either die as innocents or else (what is worsethan death) live and remain in bondage as Slaves? He is greatly in my debt, if he be capable of amendment, for he may learn of me the thing that free hearts cannot endure. Spara them whose age shall be sufficiently formented with the loss of their Children: but upon us cause execution to be done, to the intent we may obtain by our own death the liberty which we Sought for by thine.

When Hermolaus had spoken these words, the ning all

fwered after this manner:

How false these things are, which he hath learned of his In-Structor, my patience doth declare. For not withstanding be before confessed this Treason, yet my Intention was, that you should hear what he could say, knowing very well, that when I give liberty to this Villain to speak, that be would use the same rage and fury in his discourse, which before mov'd him to have kill'd me, the perfor whom he ought to have lov'd as his Father. Tis true, in the late hunting match, for using too bold a presumption, I commanded him to be chastised after the Custom of our Country used by the Kings of Macedon, which chastisement we must grant needful to be done, as the pupils are chastised by their Tutors, and Wives by their Husbands, and Servants by their Masters. This was all the Cruelty I used towards him, which he would have revenged with Murder and Treafon. But how gentle I am to all that suffer me to use mine own disposition, since your selves do know it, it were superfluous for me to rehearfe. I cannot marvel at all, that punishment of Traytors Should be so displeasant to Hermolaus, who is himself so great a Traytor: when he commends Parmenio and Philotas, it makes

III.

dif-

own

t as

coat

Ma-

used

ter.

dom

bis i is

He he

ara s of the

we

an-

Inbe-

nou n I

me

ve er.

11-

ur

by

by

n,

1,

.

4

1

this own purpose. I pardoned Lyncestes: Alexander beaccused by two witnesses, that betwice Conspired Treason and me; and being again convicted, yet deferred his Punishment two years, till you your selves required might have his desert. Touching Attalus, jou remember mwell how he wrought Treason against me before I was ing: And for Clitus, I would be had not moved me to mah, whose rash Tongue uttering such insolense and indignities, th against me and you, I suffered longer than he would have me, speaking the like. The clemency of Kings and ninces consists not only in their one dissosition, but in theirs who are under their subjection; for the rigour of such as Rulers is mitigated with bumility: But when mens ands are void of reverence, and high and low are confounded Mogether, then it is necessary with violence to expel violence. by why do I marvel that he laid cruelty to my charge, that wift object against me coveronsness? I will not call you to winess one by one, least I should upbraid you with my Liberalih, b) making Declaration what I have bestowed upon 104. shold the whole Army, who a little while ago had nothing else of this bare Armour, do they not lie in Silver Beds? Are not their Tubles charged with Plate? and possess they not whole flocks f Slaves ! They are not able to sustain the spoils of their Enemies. But it is faid the Persians are bonoured of me, whom we live conquered. Truly they are so, and yet what greater woof can there be of my moderation, than that I do not Reign wouldy over such whom I have subdued? I came into Asia. mututerly to subvert the Nations, nor make the one half of the World defart, but to give the Conquered cause not to repine at Wictory. This is the occasion they gladly fight for you, and for your Kingdom frend their Blood; who, if they were proudly wed, would straight Rebel against you. That possession is not dutable which is kept by violence, but the thanks of a benefit recrived endures everlastingly. If we purpose to enjoy Asia, and of to make a progress only through it, we must make them parabers of our Clemency, and then their fidelity shall make our Empire Stable and perpetual; and truly we have now more wan we can well wish or desire. Covetousness is an unsatiable Difease,

ì

1

İ

n

ì

t

F

Disease, especially when men defire to fill the vessel that runs on But you will say that I mingle their customs with ours. is fo; And roby? Because I see in many Nations many thin which we need not be ashamed to follow, and so great an E pire as we have got cannot otherwise be wisely governed. cept we deliver some things to them and receive likem forme things back from them again. One thing is to laughed at, that I should refuse Jupiter for my Father, ing so acknowledged by his Oracle, as if be should say, the Swer of the Gods were in my power. He proffered the name his Son to me, which was not a thing unfeafonable for the chievements I intended, I would wish that the Indians con believe me to be a God; for the success in War stands much Fame; and that which is falsely believed, sometime works to effect of things that are true. Do you observe me given to a cefs and prodigality, because I garnished your Armour wi Gold and Silver? My purpose was to shew to men accustom to the possession of it, that nothing is more vile then such kind Metal, and to declare that the Macedons (invincible in oil things) could not be overcome with Gold it felf. Afterth manner I shall blind the eyes of the barbarous, who are alway went at the first fight to wonder at things, be they never base and vile. And in that we show to make no estimation it, we shall declare to all men that we are not come for define Gold nor Silver, but to Subdue the whole World; of which Gi ry thou Traytor wouldst have deprived me, and betrayed the Macedons (I being flain) to the Barbarous Nations, our on Subjected Enemies, I am exhorted to spare their Parents; A though it was not expedient that they (bould know what I had determined of them, and to the intent they might die with the greater grief, if they have any care or memory of them; long ago I have forborn the custom of putting the Innocent Po rents and Kinsfolks of Traytors to Death with the Offender and I now profess to pardon them, and have them all inth Sune estimation I had before. I knew thou wouldest bave to Master Calisthenes brought forth, who only esteemed thee, b ing a Villain of his Complexion, because thou desirest to be repeated from his Mouth that Rancour and Poyfon which the

many

hast just now vomited out against me: If he had been a second Born, I had brought him into the place with thee, a monthy Master of such a Discipline; but being Bon in another

country, he is subject to another Law.

1 00

thin n E

l, e

be a

me

e A

COM

ch

es ti mo es mond ond oth r th

on fire

GI

11

A ban

P

der

be.

11

When he had spoken these words, he dismissed the Council, and commanded all fuch as were condemned to delivered to the Souldiers of their own Regiments; who, because they would declare by some cruelty the love they bore towards their Prince, Executed them by all Torments. Califthenes also died upon the Rack, Innocent of the Conspiracy against the Kings person, but a man not pliable to the Custom of the Court, and detesting the servile Disposition of Flatterers. There was never any thing that brought the Greeks into a greater indignation against Alexander, than that he not only killed. but caused to be tormented to death, and that without ledgment, a man indued with excellent Manners, and good Sciences, and one by whom he was perswaded to live, when he resolved to have died for sorrow that he had flain Clitus, that fatal Act of Cruelty, for which Repentance came to late. But least he might nourish idlerefs, apt for the Sowing of Seditious rumours, he advanced towards India, always more glorious in War than after his Victory,

The whole Country of India lies chiefly towards the East, containing much more in length than it does in breadth. The North parts are full of Mountains and Hills, but all the rest of the Land is plain, watered by many fair Rivers, which running out of the Mount Caucaus, do pass pleasantly through the Country. Indus is more cold than any other of the Rivers, whole water is totunlike the Colour of the Sea. But of all the Rivers in the Orient, Ganges is most Famous, which running from the South, passes directly through many great Mountains, till that by the encountring with Rocks, his course is turned towards the East, where it is received into the Red Sea: The violence of the Stream breaks down his Eanks, swallowing Trees, and much of the Ground. In

many places the stream is kept in with the Rockson which it beats; but where the Ground is more foft, the the River becomes more large, and makes many Island The greatness of Ganges is much increased by the River Acesines, which both meet before they enter into the seat their meeting the water is violently troubled, and whiles the one refists the others entry, neither of the feem to give place to the other. Diardines is a River of less Fame, because it runs in the uttermost bounds of h dia: but yet it brings forth Crocodiles as the Nile does and also Dolphins, with Monsters unknown to other Nati ons. Crooked Eximanthus, with his many turnings and windings, is confumed by the Inhabitants with Waterin their Ground; which is the cause that when it draws near the Sea, it becomes very little, and bears no name There are many other Rivers that divide the Country but none of them are fo Famous as thefe, because they de not run fo far. The North wind does blaft and anno those parts most that are next to the Sea: but those Winds are so broken with the tops of the Mountains, that they cannot endamage the inward parts of the Country wherefore Fruits are very plentiful there, and peried But that Region doth so much differ from the ordinar course of time in other parts of the World, thar, whene ther Countries are Burned most with the Sun, Indi i isco vered over with Snow: And when other places are Fro zen, the Heat is there most intolerable; and yet there appears not any Natural cause why it should be so.

The Colour of the Indian Sea not differing much from the Water of other Seas, took its Original Name of King Erithrus, by reason whereof the ignorant Greeks took opi nion that the Water of those Seas was Red. The Land produces abundance of Flax; whereof the greater parto their Garments are made. The twigs of the Trees are fo tender, that they receive the Prints of Letters like The Birds by teaching, Counterfeit the voiceso There are many Beafts which are not bred a mong other Nations. Rhinocerots are there bred, but not brough

brough

马麦

ks of

Sea and then

oes Nati and ering nea ame try de ino hole that try feet nary

co

Fro

ere

on

ing

and

are

ike

not

gh

the forth. The Elephanes of that Country are fronthan those that are made time in Africk, and their
that answerable to their strength. The Water of
Rivers carries down Gold, and runs mildly without ateat fall. The Sea casts upon the Shore both Pearls
recious Stone, from whence proceeded the Cause
they great Riches; For after their Merchandiz, was
conown to other Nations, the purgings of the Seas
to highly estermed, as themselves thought fit to ser

the dispositions of the men (as in all other places) are nding to the scituation of the Countries they dwell in. make their Garments of Linnen Cloth, which counder their Feet, and wear Rolls of Linnen about Heads. Such as are in any Degree, either of Nobior Riches, have precious Stones hanging at their Ears, they cover all their Arms with Bracelets and Ornams of Gold. They use great curiofity in Combing of Heads, which they cut very feldom. They shave hour any form of Gravity all parts of their Face, favtheir Chin. But the excels of voluptuous in their (which they call Magnificence) used by them, does and the vices of all Nations. When their pleasure is beseen abroad, their Servants carry about them Pering Pans of Silver, and fill all the ways where they with Sweet Savors: they themselves are born in Litof Gold, hanging with Pearls, and the Garments they re are of Gold and Purple Empaled rogether. The med men follow their Litter, and fuch as are of their andy among whom are Birds born upon Boughs, which reach alway to Sing, when they are bufied in their fimportant Affairs.

In the Kings Palace are Pillars of Gold Carved about the Vines of Gold, wherein the Images of those Eirds odelight in most are Artificially wrought. The Court pent of all comers. When the Rings do Comb and their Heids, they all to give answer to the Enter

O baffadors

baffadors, and execute Justice upon their People. Whe their Sandals are taken off, their Feer are anointed with fweet Odours. The greatest Travel that they take, when they hunt wild Beafts inclosed in Parks, which they strike whiles their Concubines are finging and dally ing with them: the Arrows they shoot are of two Cubin long, which do not the effect of the force they are sho withal, by Reason of their weight, which is an impediment to their swiftness, wherein the property of the Arrow chiefly confifts. In small Journeys they use to ride on Horseback: but when they are to Travel further, they are carried upon Elephants, whose huge Bodies are covered all over with Gold. And because no vice should be wanting in their corrupt manners, great numbers of Concubines do follow them in Golden Litters. The Queen have their Companies separate by themselves, who in all excess of voluptuousness are nothing inferior to the Kings. It belongs to the women there to drefs Meat, and they also serve Men with Wine, whereof there is great plenty among the Indians. When the King has largely drunk, and is fallen into a Sleep, his Concubines use to carry him into his Chamber, calling upon their Gods in a Hymn after their Country manner.

Who would think that amongst all these vices there were any regard of Vertue? there are amongst them a rough kind of People, whom they call Wise-men, who count it the most Glorious thing to prevent their own death: and they use to Burn themselves while they are alive. It is imputed for a great shame to such as are grown mweildy by Age, or enjoy not their perfect stath, if they prolong their Lives till their natural Death approach: nor is there any Honour given to those Bodies that die for Age. They think the Fires to be defiled, if the Bodies be not alive that are burned in them. Such as live in Cirtes after a Civil manner, attain to the most knowledge of the motion of the Stars, and of the Proplecy of things to come; nor can they think that any man does storten his Life, that looks for Death withour fear

They esteem all things for Gods, which they begin to Worship, and especially Trees; the violating of they forbid upon pain of death. They number y days to the Month, and notwithstanding limit their is as they do in other places. They reckon not their by such course of the Moon, as is commonly used, is, from the Full Moon, but from the first Quarter. a fhe beginneth to be Horned; and by counting after fame manner, they make their Accounts more un-There are many other things reported of them, which I thought not necessary to interrupt the Order

this History.

おは、日本は日本語のではなる。 は、日本語のは、日本語のでは、「日本語のできた。」 「日本語のは、日本語のできた。」 「日本語のは、日本語のできた。」 「日本語のは、日本語のできた。」 「日本語のできた。」 日本語のできた。 「日本語のできたた。
e

3

10

n

e

c 1,

9

£

As Alexander entred into India, the Princes of the Coun-Addressed themselves to him, submitting themselves, declaring that he was the third man being begotten of ther that came into their Country. They faid that Herbut they rejoyced that they might behold him pre-with their Eyes. Alexander received them with all begentleness he could devise, and requested them to acimpany him, because he would use them as Guides in me not, he sent Perdicas and Ephestion with part of his my before, to subdue such as would not submit themand order'd them to go forwards till they came to River of Indus, and their to make Boats, in which he the transport his Army: and because they had to pass any Rivers, the Boats were fo contrived, that they ight be taken a sunder and carried in Carts, and after-ards joyned together again. He appointed Craerus to blow him with the Phalanx, and he with such Horsemen Footmen as were light Armed marched before; and ting Encountred on his way, he fought a small Battle, was come (o the intent he might strike terror anongst those People that not yet felt the Macedons Force) commanded that when they won the City, they frould Whoth Man, Woman, and Child, and burn it to the 0 2 .

Ground; but as he was riding about the Walls, he was hurt with an Arrow. Notwithstanding the City was won, and all put to the Sword, the very Houses not escapine

BOOK VIII.

the Cruelty of the Conquerors.

After this, he fubdued an obscure Nation, and camen a City called Nifa. It happened that whileft they encamp ed in a Wood before the City, there fell a Cold in the Night which much more afflicted the Macedons than even ir had done before in any other place; against the which they prepared the Remedy next at hand, and cut down the Wood to make them great Fires : the Flame whereof took hold of the Sepulchres belonging to the City, which by reason they were made of Cedar, they were soon secon Fire, and never left burning till they were all confumed. The Fire made both an Alarm in the City, and in the Camp; for the Citizens thereby judging that their Enemies would make some attempt against them; and the Macedons perceived by the barking of the Dogs, and the cries of the Men, that the Indians would fally out upon them.

Wherefore Alexander Issuing out of his Camp in order to Battle, slew such as attempted his opposition. Thereupon, they within the City became of divers opinions; some were minded to yield, and others thought good to adventure the extremity. When Alexander understood of their division, he caused his men to abstain from Slaughter, and only to maintain the Siege. At length, they were so wearied with the discommodities of the War, that the yielded themselves. They affirmed their Original to be from Bacchus, who indeed Euilded their City, at the Foot of a Mountain called More the Quality of which Mountain being reported to Alexander by the Inhabitants, he sent Victuals before, and passed thither with his whole Army, incamping upon the top of it.

the a differ of the base of more

was yon, ping

01 9

the verich

wn

eof

ich on

ed.

ne.

he

he

on

Cr.

-3

5;

to

bc

m h,

ie

d

d.

r.

d

0

维

C

The Mountain grew full of Vines and Ivy, abounding h Springs that flowed out in every place. It was also entifully stored with many kinds of Apples of most lafant tafte : the Ground also brought forth Corn withat cultivation. There grew plenty of Lawrel-frees, th many kinds of Wild Fruit. I cannot impute it to my motion of Religion, but rather to Plenty and Wontones, that caused Alexander to repair thither : where, of elvy and the Vine-leaves were made G-rlands by the foldiers, who run up and down the Hills (afrer a diflome manner) all the Hollows and Valleys thereabout reounding with the voice of fo many thousands of Men, alling upon Bacchus, to whom that place was Dedicate: which License and Liberty being begun of a few, was read fo fuddenly through the whole Army, that the oldiers scattered abroad without order, lay here and here repoling themselves upon the Grass and Leaves that bey had gathered together, as it had been a time of quiet and most affured Peace: which licentiousness of the Soulders, rifing by chance, Alexander did not withstand, but ten days together made Feasts to Bacchus, during which ime he plentifully Banqueted his whole Army. Who therefore deny, but that greatness of Fame and Glory, is oftentimes a benefit rather of Fortune than of Verwe? for their Enemies had no heart to fet upon them, whiles they were drowned in this excess of Banqueting, Drunkenness, and sloth, but were as much afraid of the very Drunken Warnings that they made, as if they had heard their shouts and cries in Battle: which felicity preserving them here, did afterwards defend them after the same manner in the midst of their Enemies, returning as it were in Triumph from the Ocean Sea, when they were addicted all to Feafting and to Drunkennels.

When Alexander descended from the Mountain, he went to a Country called Dedala, which the Inhabitants forlook, and fled to the Woods and wild Mountains; and therefore he passed from thence into Ecadera, which he

the

found both Burned and Abandoned likewife of the Inhabitants, whereby of necessity he was compelled to manage his War after another manner. For he divided his Army into divers parties, and shewed his power in many places at once. By which means he oppressed them before they could provide for themselves, and subdued them to their utter ruine. Ptolomeus took most Cities, but Alexander won the greatest, and afterwards joyned again his Army together, which he had thus divided, That done, he went forwards and passed a River called Choase, where he left Cenon to Besiege a rich City called Bexira, and he himself went to Mazage, where Affacensu being dead, had left the Dominion both of the Country and the City to his Mother Gleophes. There were thirty thousand Footmen to defend that City, which was both well Fortified and Strong of Scituation, being inclosed upon the East with a swift River, having steep banks defending the Gi ty, that it could not be approached on that fide. Upon the South and the West parts, Nature was it shere designedly) had planted high Rocks lying betwixt them, and deep Hollows and Pits made many hundred years before; where the Rocks ceased, there began a Ditch of Wonderful depth and wideness. The Walls wherewith the City was inclosed, was 35 Furlongs in compass; whereof the nether parts were Builded of Stone, and the upper parts of Clay; yet the Stones were mixed with the Clay, to the intent that the frail substance clinging to the harder, the one should bind the other : and lest the Earth beat upon the Kain, might be washed and dissolved asunder, there were stanchings of Timber put betwixt to stay the who'e work, which, covered over with Boards, was a way for men to go upon.

Alexander beholding this kind of Fortification, was uncertain what to do. For he faw he could not approach to the Walls, but by filling of those Ditches and Hollow places; and that he could not otherwise fill them, than by making of a Mount, which was the only way he had to bring his Engines to the Wall; but while he was viewing

VIH.

Inha-

ma-

d his

nany

be-

hem

4 lex

a his

one.

rere

t he

ad.

ity

ootied

aft Ci-

he

d-

ba

e; 1

ty

ic

ts

0 r,

). ,

e

Town after that manner, he was ftruck from the with an Arrow on the Thigh, which he pulled out, without wraping of his Wound, he called for his es, and defer'd not for his hurt to give order for fuch as he thought expedient. But at length, when by ing of his Leg, the Blood drew from the Wound a. d cold, whereby his hurt began to pain him, he maid he was called the Son of Jupiter, but yet he himself the infirmities of a diseased Body. Notwithinding he would not return into the Camp, before he driewed what was necessary, and gave order for all ings he would have done. After the Souldiers had rered their orders, by plucking down of Houses withour Town, they got great plenty of Materials to make the unt withal; and by casting stocks of Trees on heaps the Dirches and hollow places, the Mount within nine s was raised up level to the top of the Walls, and the lowers were planted upon it; such was the Labour and bilioence that the Souldiers used in this business. The line before his wound was closed up, took the pains to fe how the Works went forwards; and when he perceivd them in such beight, he commended the Souldiers for heir diligence, and caused the Artillery to be brought withe Walls; by which, they that defended the Walls; mere fore afflicted with fhor; and by reason they had not feen any fuch kind of work before, they were wondefully amazed, especially when they beheld the Towers flich bigness to come forwards, and yet could not percive by what means they were moved; they therefore udged it to be done by the power of the Gods. And befides, they could not think it a matter of mans invention, hat to great Darts and Spears as came among them; hould be flor by Engines. Despairing therefore of the defence of their City, they retired into the Caffle; and ecause they could not be satisfied any manner of way till they had yielded themselves, they sent Embassadors to the King to ask pardon; which being obtained at his hand, the Queen with a great Train of Noble Women

Wo bwi enic

oal on ling

him

Kir

K

came forth, bearing in the hands Gups of Gold fulls Wine. The Queen presenting her little Son before the Kings Feet, not only obtained pardon, but also Restora tion to her former dignity. Therefore some thought the her Beauty procured her more favour than his own Name ral mercy had inclined him to: but this is certain, the the Child which afterwards the brought forth (who force did beget it) was called Alexander. From this place The liperon was fent with a power to a City called Nota where he overdrew in Battel the Inhabitants, that encountred with him, whereby he got the City to his possession. would love

There were many other Cities obscure of fame which came into Alexander's hands, by the abandoning of the inhabitants, who affembled themselves together in Arms and kept a Rock called Aorna. The fame was, that Hercules had befreged this Rock beforetime in vain, and by reason of an Earth-quake was enforced to depart. When Alexander viewed this Rock, and faw how fleep it was and unparable he could not tell what to advice, till such time as an old Man that knew well the place, came to him with his two Sons, offering for a reward to Guide his Men by a way to the top of the Rock. Alexander promifed them fourfcore Talents; and keeping one of his Sons as a pledge, he fent him to perform what he had ber fare you firely sum of hear

Mullinus the Kings Secretary was appointed with certain Souldiers light Armed, to follow the Guide, whose defign was to deceive the Indians, by fetching a compais about the Rock; but this same Rock was not as the most part of Rocks are, which lying alloap, have ways up to she top by degrees; for it flood upright after the Fashion of a Butt, being broad beneath, and fill as it grew up ward, it grewless and less, till it became sharp in the top; and it was inclosed on the one fide with the River of Indus, having high and steep Banks, and upon the other fiele with deep Ditches and hollow places, full of Water and Mud. Wherefore there could be devised no way to win

which the King commanded to be cut love; and caufing the Boughs to be lopt off for the containing the Boughs to re flocks. Alexander bare the first Tree, and all the mildiers followed with a couragious shout: for there was man that would refuse to do that which they saw the ting begin, so that within seven days the Ditches and ollow places were filled up. Then the King appointed he Agrians and the Archers to go to the Affault, and decied Thirry young men of such as he judged most fir or that service, out of his own Band, appointing Charus nd one Alexander to be their Conductors, and exhorted Mexander that the remembrance of his Name might make

im hardy.

latu

tha

cve

Po Vota

thai his

rid

aich

In

ms. Her-

by

hen 42

ich

to

his

ro-

his

ad

M

r.

(e

Ís

ft

0

n

1

1

n

0

At the first, because the hazard was so manifest, the ting was not determined to adventure his own Person; when the Trumpet blew to the Assault, he was of tha ready courage, that he could not abstain, but maing a fign to his Guard that they should follow him, he was the first that set Foot upon the Rock. There were tw contented to tarry behind, but many left their array where they stood in order of Battle, and followed the ling. The Fortune of those was miserable whom the running River swallowed ia, when they fell down from the Rock: which fight was forrowful to fuch as were out ofdanger, being admonished by the peril of others, what her ought to fear themselves; hereur on their compation being turned into fear, they lamented as well themleves, as those whom they law die before their Faces. At length, they advanced to far, that without getting off the Rock they could not retire back again without appatent destruction. For their Enemies rowled down great Stones upon them, wherewith they were eafily bearen down, by reason the Rock had so slippery and unstable fanding. Yet for all that, Charus and Alexander, who were Commissioned to lead the thirty chosen Souldiers, had gotten to the top of the Rock, and began to fight hand

I and to hand. But there was so many Darts cast at then from a s.r, that they received more Wounds then the could give: wherefore, Alexander both mindful of h Name and of his Promife, whiles he fought more eagen than warily, was inclosed about and flain. Whom when Charus faw dead, he ran upon his Enemies; and think ing of nothing but of revenge, he flew many with his Pike, and divers with his Sword. But being affaulted by fo many at once, he fell down dead upon the Body of he Friend. The death of these two so hardy young men, and of the rest, moved Alexander greatly; yet perceiving no remedy, he caused the Retreat to be sounded. It was greatly for the safeguard, that they retired by little and little without appearance of any fear. And the Indian contented to have repulsed their Enemies, pursued no after them. Alexander hereupon was determined to leave off his present enterprize, seeing he saw no hope how to . win the Rock: yet he made a countenance a though he meant to continue the Siege Rill. Fot he both canfed the ways to be closed up, and made an approach with Towers of Wood, always putting fresh men in the place of them that were wearied.

When the Indians perceived Alexander's obstinacy, two days and two nights they Banqueted continually, and played upon Timbrels, making this vain glorious oftentation to thew their Enemies their disdain of a Siege, and their Affu ance of Victory. The third Night the noise of the Timbrel ceased, and many Torches were seen burning, that the Indians had lighted to fee which way they might escape down the Rock in the dark of the night Alexander fent Balachras to discover the Event, who found that the Indians were fled, and that the Rock was abandoned. Then a Sign was given that the whole Army should give a shout rogether, whereby they struck such fear amongst their Enemies flying without order, thatmany of them thinking the Macedons at their Backs, leaped down the Rocks, and flew themselves; whe-eof some maimed in their falling, were left behind their fellowsthat Thus

fled away.

VIII

them

they

agerly when

hink

h his

ed by

and ag no

was

dians

noi to

booth bach the

and ntaand e of hey hea ind my eh

ne

25

Thus the King being Conquerour of the place rather in of the men, testified notwithstanding, with solemn enfice to the Gods, a greatness of Victory, and set up hars on the Rock to Minerva and Victoria. And though Guides that he appointed to his light Armed men, clomed not so much as they promised; yet their reard was truly given them. And the Command of the ock, with the Country adjacent, was committed to Sicolius, he himself advancing forwards with his Army on thence to Echolima.

Alexander understanding that certain straights through the which he should pass, were kept by one Eix with wenty thousand armed men, he committed that part of its Army that were heavy laden to Cenon, to be brought in by soft Journeys; and going before in Person with the Slingers and Archers, he put his Enemies to slight, making the way clear for his Army to pass that sollowed after. The Indians, whether it were for the hatred they have to their Captain, or else to get the savour of the conqueror, killed Erix as he sled away, and brought his head and his Armour to Alexander. He considering the soulness of the Act, would not honour the doers for their example sake, nor punish them because they served his purpose.

From thence by fixteen encampings he come to that part of the River called Indus, where Ephestion had prepared all things in such order as Commission'd by Alexader. One Omphis was King of that Country, who betwee had persuaded his Father to submit himself to Alexader, and immediately upon his Fathers Death ant Embessader, and immediately upon his Fathers Death ant Embessaders to him to know his pleasure, whether he should take upon him the Title of King bosore his coming, or offe live privately in the mean season: And although he was permitted to Govern as a King, yet he would not use the Authority granted him till Alexander came. He had caused Ephestion to be received with the Noblest Entertainment he could give, but notwichstanding he had

LOE

preparation of the control of the co

re)

18 T

of:

ne th

1

1

6

not visited him, because he would not commit his person

to any mans fidelity, but to the Kings.

When he understood of Alexander's coming, he went towards him with his whole Power, whose Elephants by small distances mixed in Battle amongst his Footmen, shewed afar off like Castles. At the first Alexander did not take him a Friend, but as an Enemy; and therefore fer his Men in order of Battel, and his Horse-then in Wings in readiness to Fight. When Omphis understood the Errour of the Macedons, he commanded his men to stay and putting his Spurs to his Horse, he rode forwards a-lone: Alexander did the like, not questioning whether he approache as a Friend or an Enemy, but thought himfelf secure, either through his own manhood, or the others fidelity. There meeting, as it appeared by their countenances was very Friendly; but for want of an Interpreter they could not speak together : therefore after they had called one to them, the Indian King de-clared to Alexander, that the cause he met him with an Army, was to put immediately his whole power into his Hands; and tarried not to intreat for any affurance by Embassadors, but upon trust only hid committed both his Person and his Kingdom to him, whom he knew to make War for the winning of Glory and Fame; and therefore could not fear in him any perfidi-

Alexander rejoyced to see his simplicity, and prossered him his right hand as a pledge of his promise, and restored him his Kingdom again. He presented to Alexander sity six Elephants, with many other Beasts of exceeding greatness, and three thousand Bulls, which is a Cattel of great value in those Countries, and much esteemed by Kings. Alexander enquired of him, whether he had under his Dominion more Souldiers, or Tillers of the Ground: He answered, That he was driven of necessity to have more Souldiers, became he was at War with two Kings, whose Kingdoms lay beyond the River of Hydaspis; their names were Abiasares, and Porus, but the authority remained in Porus. He said, That he was trepared

III

cion

vent

by

nen. did

ord

ng Er-

tay

aher

m-

0-

eir

an

af-

de-

an

ito ice

ed he

nd li-

ed

ed

rat

1.

d,

le.

2

repared and resolved to adventure the bazard of the Battel nith the of them as should invade him first. Hereupon Alexander ranted to Omphis both to take upon him the Diadem, and the name of his Father, that was called Taxiles; the custom of the Countrey being such, that the Name ever followed the Regal Power, whosever enjoyed it.

When he had received Alexander tonourably in hospiality three days, the fourth day he declared how much forn he had delivered to Ephestion, and to his Army; refenting to the King, and to all his Friends, Crowns of Gold, with fourscore Talents of coined Silver. Alexander riovced to much in his good will, that he both returned igain to him his Gifts, and gave him befides a thousand Talents of the spoil he brought with him, with much Plate of Gold and Silver, many Garments after the Persian manner, and thirty of his own Horses, with the same furniture they wore when himself rode upon them; which liberaliry, as it obliged Omphis, fo it greatly offended the mind of the Macedons. For Meleager at Supper when he had well drunk, faid, He was very glad that Alexander had yet found me in India, whom he judged worthy to receive the Gift of a thousand Talents. The King bearing in mind how much he had repented the killing of Clitus for the rashness of his Tongue, refrained his anger; but yet told him; That envious m n were ever Tormenters to themselves.

The next day the Embassadors of King Abiasares came to Alexander, who according to their Commission offered him an entire Resignation to his Pleasure and Command: Whereupon assurance being confirmed, they returned again to their Master. Alexander therefore thinking that through the greatness of his name, Porus might be brought to do the like, sent Cleochares to him to demand tribute, and to summon him to come and do homage, when he should enter the bounds of his Kingdom. Porus made answer, That of these two requests he would perform one, which was, to meet him at the entry of his Kingdom, but that should be in the Head of an Army. Alexander therefore being determined to pass the River of Hydaspus, Barzantes that had been

BOOK VIII.

the

been Author of the Rebellion amongst the Arachofians, wa raken and brought to him bound, with thirty Elephans a timely affiftance against the Indians, that were wont to repole more confidence in those Beafts than in the trust of their whole Armies. Gamaxus, King of small portion of India, which had confederated with Bargantes, was brought likewise bound to him. Wherefore committing them both to Prison, and the Elephants to Omphis, he came to the River of Hydaspis. But Porus lay encamped on the further fide to hinder his passage, having fourscore and five Elephants of huge strength of Body, three hundred Waggons of War, thirty thousand footmen, amongst whom, there were many Archers, whose shafts (as hath been said before) were more heavy than they could weld. Pow himfelf rode upon an Elephant greater than all the rest; who also being of a lofty stature, appeared formidable in his Armour that was garnished with gold and filver, having also a courage equal to the strength of his Body, and so great a Wildom as was possible to be found amongst fo rude a Nation.

The Macedons were not so much terrified with the fight of their Enemies, as they were with the greatness of the River they had to pass, which being four Furlengs in breadth, and so deep that no footing could be found, appeared to them like a great Sea; and yet the largeness thereof nothing mitigated the violence of the stream, but it ran with no less sury than if it had been narrow, appearing by the repercussion of the water in many places, to be full of

ereat stones in the bottom.

The River being sufficient to affright them of it felf, the fight of the surther Bank, sull of Horse and Men, was an increase to their terrour; where the Elephants that had Bodies of an unreasonable greatness flood in their fight, being provoked to bray of purpose, to the intent that with their terrible noise they should fill their Enemies ears with sear. Though the Macedons were couragious, and animated with good hope, as they who oftentimes had experience of their own Atchievements, yet their Enemies and

the River both together, made them wonderfully amazed; for they could not think how to keep a stedsast course to the further shore in so weak and uncertain Boats; nor when they were there, could they see how to arrive with access.

There were many Islands in the midst of the River, into which both the *Indians* and the *Macedons* swam, holding their Weapons above their heads: There they skirmished together in the sight of both Kings, who by experience of this small bickering, made trial of the success of the Battel

p come.

0

e

But amongst the Macedons there were two noble young men, called Sissimachus and Nicanor, excelling in courage, and in hardy attempts; and through their continual good fortune, were instanced with a resolution to despise all peril. Other young men took them for their Captains, and without any other Armour but their Pikes, swam over into an sland which was full of their Enemies, where through their boldness only, they slew many of them, and so might have returned with glory, if rashness (where it finds properous success) could ever be content with measure: But while with scorn and pride they tarried for their Enemies, they were suddenly inclosed by such as swam over the River, and were killed with Darts, which they cast at them from asar. Such as escaped their Enemies, were drowned in depth of water, or Eddies of the stream.

This fight put Porm in great courage, who law all the whole Skirmish from the further shore: And though Alexander was long uncertain what way to take, yet at length he deceived his Enemies by this posicy. There was an stand in the River greater than the rest, and convenient to conceal his design, by reason it was full of Wood, and had a great rampier cast upon that bank which was towards his Enemies, there both his Footmen and Horsemen might stand covered from the sight of the Indians; and another way from looking towards the Island, he caused Ptolomy with a great number of Horsemen to shew themselves against their Enemies sar off from the Island, and to

pue

BOOK VIII.

put the Indians in fear of them, making ever a fhewas though they would fwim over the River; which thing Ptolamy did many days together, to the intent that Porm should be inforced to remove his Army to that part to withstand him, and thereby train'd them out of the sight of the Island. Alexander also caused his own Pavilion to be fer upon the Rivers fide over against his Enemies, and all the pomp and Magnificence that pertained to the flate of a King to be fer forth within their view, with his Life-guard standing in fight, the same which was wont to arrend his person: Furthermore, Attalus, who was equal with Alexander in years, and resembled him both in face and personage, stood there openly apparelled like the King, that it might appear to Porus, that Alexander was still remaining there, and was not yet endeavouring to pass the River.

The execution of this defign was first hinder'd by a Tempest, whereby afterwards it was furthered, and brought to good effect; fortune ever using to turn her discommodities into good success towards him. For when the Enemies were thus attent to o'sferve Ptolomy who lay upon the River against him, and Alexander with the rest of his Army was bufie about the paffing of his men into the Island before mentioned, there fell suddenly a great storm, sourcely rolerable to fuch as lay within their Cabines, which fo much afflicted the Souldiers abroad, that they for fook their Boats, and retir'd again to land. And yet for all this, their builing and noise was not heard of their Enemies, through the vehemency of the shower.

As this Tempest begin suddenly, so it suddenly ceased; but the Clouds remained so dark, that there appeared not fo much light as the Souldiers might know one another by the Face, when they spake together; which darkne smight have scared some meaner Spirits, considering that they had to row in a River that they knew not their Enemies (peradventure) waiting for them at their Landing, whither they went as Blind men that for Glory fought in Peril. Eut Alexander used that which put o-

ther

M.

V 25

ing

orus

t to

ght

be

all

of

ard

his

lex-

er-

hat

in-

Ri-

ght

di-

nehe

Ar-

ind

cė-

fo eir

gir

gh

d ;

ed

0-

ch

7-

ÖC

ir

ry

0er

nermen in terrour, to ferve for his defire, and ordered every man (upon a fign given) should enter into the Mars with filence: his Boat was the first that lanched for the shore, towards the surther side of his Enemies. arm only keeping his Watch against Ptolomy. There was wone Boat that fluck fast by the way upon a Rock, and the other recovered the Land, it be the

Alexander then commanded the Souldiers to prepare heir armour and fall into Battalia; and whilft he was diviing his men, to put them in order to march towards his farmies, it was reported to Porus, that a great number of men of War were come over the River, and landed, which would straightway give him Battel. But he, at the first secording to the fault that is in mans nature through oremuch confidence in himfelf believed it not but thought that Abiafares, who was confederate with him, had come whis affistance. Yet when the day appeared, and the much was manifest, Porus sent out a hundred armed Waggins, and four thosand Horsemen, under the leading of High his Brother, to keep Alexander in action

They counted those Waggons their principal Force; for every one of them carried fix men, two Archers, two with Targets, and two that ruled the Horses, which were not unarmed; but when it came to the Fight, they let their reins loose, and bestowed their Darts among their Enemies. Butthe use of those Waggons served to small purpose; for the shower that had fallen more violently than was accusomed, had made the fields wer and slabby, that the Waggons could not ftir, but fluck in the mire, and became immoveable; whereas Alexander being without backage, or my thing that might impede his way, fiercely invaded his

Enemies.

The Scythians and the Dahans were the first that gave the onset, and Perdicas was appointed with the Horsemen whatge upon the right-hand Battel of the Indians. Then the Battels beginning to joyn on all parts, they that had the charge of the Waggons, counting them their last refuge, let loose the Reins, and rushed forward into the midst of the Fight. The

Ma

M

are

10

The coming of these Waggons appeared to be a matter doubtful and dangerous to both Parties; for at the single brunt the Macedons were born over and overthrown by them; and when the Waggons came in any rough or miry place, the Indians were thrown out of them. For when the Horses that drew them were once galled, and put into a fright, they carried the Waggons without government, and tumbled part of them in the mire, and part into the River: a sew traversed the fields, and fled for succour unto Porus, who seeing his Waggons scattered all ever the Fields, and to wander about with their Rulers, he distributed the charge of his Elephants amongst his Friends, and placed his Footmen and Archers behind them.

He had many that founded upon Timbrels (being Instruments that the Indians used in the stead of Trumpers) wherewith their Ears were so filled, that the noise of their Enemies little moved them. They carried also the Image of Hercules in the front of their Foot-battel; which was done for an encouragement for them to fight well, and so a punishment and scandal to them that should fly from their Standard; for it was loss of life to leave it in the Field: So that the fear they conceived of Hercules, who sometimes had been their Enemy, was then turned into a Veneration

and Religion.

The fight both of the Elephants, and Porus himself, as stonished the Macedons, and caused them a while to make a stand; for the Beasts being set in order amongst the armed men, appeared afar off like high Towers; and Porus himself exceeding the stature of most men, the Elephant whereupon he rode was an addition to his height, which excelled so much all the other Elephants, as he himself excelled the rest of men: So that Alexander beholding both Porus and his power, said, That at length he had sound an Danger equal to his own hearts desire; for we have to do (quoth he) both with terrible Beasts, and with notable Men of War: And thereupon he loooked towards Cenon, and said unto him:

II

ter

rft

by

ry.

en in-

nt,

he-

m-

he ri

İs,

11-1)

ir/ ge as

0

So

CS

00

2.

re--

W

10

If

g

d

71

d

When I with Prolomy, Perdicas, and Ephestion, shall fet muthe left Battle of our Enemies, ana you fhall fee us in the but of fight, do you then set forwards my right Battel, and highly affail them when you see them begin to fall out of order. anigoxus, Leonatus, and Tauron, do you bend against their Main Battel, and attack the Front: Our Pikes are long and frong, and cannot serve to any better use, then against the Echants, wherewith they may be thrust through, and such oanthrown as are carried upon their Backs; The Elephants are wan uncertain force, which use to do most harm to their own sury; for as they use to go against their Enemies so long as they we at command; so when they are once put in fear, they turn

bir Rage and Fury against their own men.

Hehad not fo foon spoken the Words, but he put Spurs whis Horse, advancing against his Enemies; and when, mording to his appointment, he had given the Charge, from with a great Force broke upon the left Battel; and the Phalanx, at the same instant, brake in amongst the midst of their Enemies. When Poras faw the Horse-men are the Charge, he ordered the Elephants to advance to mounter them; but they being flow Beafts, and not apt idenly to move, were prevented by the swiftness of the forfes: and their Bows flood them not in any greatstead, by reason their Arrows were so long and heavy, they could not nock them on their Bows, except they first haid their Bows upon the ground; and the ground was fo lipyery, that they could not have any perfect footing; and while they were preparing themselves to shoot, their Emies were come amongst them.

Then every man fled from the order that Porughad gim, as it chances oftentimes amongst troubled minds, where Fear bares more sway then the Captains Command; for in so many parts as their Army was divided, bmany several Generals had the conduct of them. Some would joyn all their Battels in one, others would have hem divided; some commanded assult, and others to go brwards, and inclose their Enemies about; there was no General Consultation amongst them. Porus notwithstand-

Porus

ing, accompanied with a few, with whom shame prevailed more than fear, affembled fuch of his Forces together as were difperfed abroad, and advanced against his Ene mids, fetting his Elephants in the front of the Battel They put the Macedons in fear, troubling, with their unwont ed cry, not only the Horse that naturally do fear them, but also amazed the men, and diffurbed their order; in fornuch, that they who a little before thought themselves Victors, were now looking about which way to fly and fave themselves: when Alexander perceived, he sent against the Elephants the Agrians and Thracians, who were men light Armed, and more fit to skirmish afar off, then to fight hand to hand. They bravely affaulted the E'ephants and their Governors, and fore afflicted them with the multitude of their Darts and Arrows that they showr'd in a mongst them; and the Phalanx came constantly forwards against them who were already in fear; but such as present over-forward in fighting with the Elephants, procured their manifest destruction; and being trampled to Death with their Feet, they were an example to others, not to be over-hafty in adventuring themselves: The most terrible fight was, when the Elephants with their long Trunks, called Proboscis, took the Macedons in their Armour from the Ground, and deilvered them up to their Gover-

The Batle was prolonged doubtfully vill the day was far spent, the Souldiers sometimes flying from the Elephants, and fometime purfuing after them, till at length with a certain kind of crooked Weapons, called Copida (prepared for the urpose) they cut the the Elephants upon the Legs: These the Macedons had opportunely devised; for not only the fear of death, but also the fear of a new kind of torment in Death, caused them to leave nothing unattempted. Finally, the Elephants wearied with Wounds, with their violent strugling cast their Governours to the Earth, and tore them in pieces; for they were put in such fear, that they were no more hurtful to their Enemies, but droven out of the Battle like sheep.

ail-

and

inf

nen

1 to

ints

rds fled red ath

cr-

far te,

1 2

ed

he

for

nd

ın-

de, he

ch

es,

1116

Porus being forfaken of the greatest part of his men; afed not to cast Darts, whereof he had plenty prepared on his Elephant, amongst them that surrounded him, . hereby he wounded many; and by reason he lay open every mans blow, he was laid at on all parts, till he rered nine wounds behind and before; through which he ed fomuch, that he had no power to cast any more Darts, for feebleness, they fell out of his hands. The Eleant also which he rode upon, pricked forwards with made a great disturbance amongst the Macedons, till this Governour feeing the King fo faint, that he let fall Darris, and to be almost past his remembrance, guided Beaft to fly away; whom Alexander followed with all respeed he could: But his Horse being thrust herefore while he was about to change, and take another. was cast far behind.

In the mean feafon, the Brother of Taxiles that was but by Alexander to Perus, began to exhort him that he ould not be so obstinate to hazard the extremity, but rather ind himself to the Conqueror . But he, notwithstanding in his strength was almost decayed, and his Blood fai'ed a refturred up at a known voice, he said, That he knew him bothe Brother of Taxiles, a Traytor to his King and his Coun-; and with that word took a Dart, which by chance ns not fallen from him, and threw it so at Taxiles Broher, that is passed through the midst of his Breast into his lack; and having shewed this last proof of his Manhood he ed again more fast than before : But when the Elephant, brough many wounds that he had received, began also ofaint, then he stayed, and turned his Footmen towards

is Enemies that purfued him.

By that time Alexander was come near to him; who inderstanding the obstinacy of Porus, ecommanded none be spared that made resistance; wherespon every man hrew their Dares against Porus, and the Footmen that food in his defence; infemuch that at length he was fo opwelled, that he began to fall from his Elephant. Then

the

the Indian, who was his Governour, thinking that Power defired to have alighted, caused the Beast, after his accuflomed manner, to bend towards the Earth, who fubmitting himself, all the rest, as they were taught, bowed down their Bodies likewife; which occasion'd the taking both of Porus and the rest of his Companians. When Alexander law Porus on the Ground, he caused him to be spoiled, thinking he had been dead, and divers ran to pull of his Armour and his Vesture; which thing when the Elephant saw, he began to defend his Master, running upon the Spoilers, and endeavoured to lift him up again upon his back : whereupon, they all fetting upon the Elephane, flew him, and laid Porus in a Care; whom when Alexander beheld to lift up his eyes, he being moved with no harred, but with compassion, said to him :

What Fury possest thee, hearing the Fame of mine Alls, to hazard the Battle with me and my Power, when Taxiles was fo fresh an example of the Clemency that I-use to such as submit

themselves: To whom he made this Answer:

As I am demanded a Question, I will answer as freely as L'am spoken to: Knowing mine own stringth, and not having proved thine, Ithought no man of greater Power than my felf; but now the success of this Battle has declared thee to be the Mightier: and yet therein I do impute to my felf no little felicity, that I have won the second place, and am next to thee.

He was asked moreover his Opinion, after what manner he thought good the Victory should be used? Use it (quoth he) after, as this days fortune shall suggest to thee, wherein here has been sufficient proof shewed how transitory is

the felicity of man.

This Admonishment availed him more than if he had submitted himself, or made suit for his life: For when Alexander faw the greatness of his courage, and his Heart to void of fear that it could not be shaken with any adverfity, he was moved not only to give him his Life, but also Honourably to entertain him; for as long as he lay Diseased of his Wounds, he took no less care for the curing

PUS

CIL-

nit-

ing

be

ull the

ing

ain

nen ith

to vas

ds

If;

the eli-

to

ane it bee,

18

nad

nen

art

ad-

lay

ur-

ng

deficiency chain if he had fought in his quarrel; and when he was once healed (contrary to what all men effed) he received him amongst the number of his heads, and inlarged his Kingdom greater than it was bester. There was nothing in Alexander's nature more person or more constant, than that he would ever have level in admiration, when it was such that it deserved me praise and glory. But he always set a greater value ponit in an Enemy than a Friend: for in any of his own may he looked upon it as a lessening of his own Glory, which he always esteemed so much the greater, the greater he Enemies were which he subdued.

THE

NINTH BOOK.

of the Acts of Alexander the Great, KING of Macedon.

A Lexander rejoycing in this so Memorable a Victory; whereby he saw the Confines of the Orient opened phim, offered up Sacrifice to the Sun; and to cause his soldiers to be more willing to go forwards in finishing herest of the Wars, he assembled them together, and (afaille had commended their valiant deeds) he declared on in the last Bartle they had deseated and broken the bre of the Indians Power, and should find from thence-inh nothing but a plentiful prey: For he said, that in be Country whereunto he was going, the Riches chiefly remained

1

0

for

Serpents

o bemindon

remained which were to much spoken of throughout the World, in respect whereof the spoils of the Perfians were but trifles; and that occasion was now given them, not only to fill their own Houses, but Macedonia and Greece with Pearls, with Precious Stones, with Gold and with Is vory. The Souldiers being defenous both of Riches and Glory, because they had never found his words vain, promifed him to perform whatfoever he flould command them: Whereupon he dismissed them, full of good hope, and fer them about the making of Ships; no the intent, that having overcome all Asia, he might visit the Ocean Sea that was in the end of all the world. The Mountains, next at hand, were plentiful of Timber to make Ships withal, in cutting down whereof, the Macedons found Serpents of such bigness, as they had not feen before; and also Rhinocerotes, Beasts that be seldom found in any other place; which name was given to them by the Greeks, for in the Indian Language they are otherwise called. Alexander builded a City upon either side of the River Hydaspis; which once accomplishe, he gave to every one of his Captains a Crown of Gold, and a thousand pieces of Gold be-fides; preferring and fewarding every one according to their quality, degree, and deferving.

Abiafares who had fent Embassadours to Alexander before the Battel fought with Porus, sent Embassadors to
him now again, offering to do all things that he would appoint, so that he was not constrained to deliver himself into Prison; for he desired not to live, except he might remain a King 3 and hetchought himself unfit to Reign, as
ter he had once been a Captive. He returned answer to
Abiafares, That, if his coming should be thought a Linbour to
grievous, he would not stick himself it og and write him a Having thus vanquished Porus, and passed the River of Hydas
pis, he marched forwards into the inner-parts of India,
which was a Country full of great Woods, and high Trees, the
Air very, wholesome and temperates the shadow of the
Trees mitigating the heat of the Sun, and the plenty of
Springs keeping the ground moist; there were also many

othe

vehe

not:

reece

holo

and

ro-

that I

pe,

nt, an

ns,

ps |

er-

9 er

or

71-

1;

0.

.

0

0

.

.

.

ments feen, whose Scales g'istered like Gold: There pothing more dangerous than the poyfon proceeding them, for immediately upon the flinging, Death lowed, till fuch time as the Inhabitants of the Country ewed aremedy. From thence, through Defarts, they me to the great River Hicrantes, whereunto there joy n-Jareat Wood, which having such Trees as are not wont be feen in other places, was also full of wild Peacocks. legander removing his Camp from thence, took a Town Affault; and taking Hostages, imposed a Tribute upon

After that he came to a great City (built after the manthat Country) which was both well walled, and also inmened about with a deep Most: The Inhabitants came arth against Alexander, and joyning their Chariors toge-ter in afront (wherein their Custom was to fight) they roffered him Battel: Some used Darts, some Spears, and wher Pole axes, and with great agility leaped to and from the ir Chariots, when either they found an advantage pinvade their Enemies, or else would rescue their Fellows that were in diffress. This unwonted kind of f ghtput the Macedons at the first in a fear, especially being furt afar off by their Enemies, and not able to come to the with them hand to hand. But after they had confileted their difordered manner, they valued not their bree, but inclosed their Enemies about, and thrust their Horses in with Pikes; and the sooner to defeat them, they outhe Traces wherewith the Chariots were tyed, to tewrate them afunder. When they had after that manner eight hunred of their men, they fled again inothe City, which the next day the Macecons won by afwit: Some there were that faved themselves by flying, the feeing the City loft, fwam over the water, and filled The Towns thereabout with fear: They declared of what wincible force their Enemics were, judging them, in espect of their power, rather to be Gods than mortal Men,

o ma efendent er t

Hil

15 0 led

bm

im o

When Alexander had gotten that City, he fent Perdis cas, with a part of his Army, to destroy the Country, and committing another part to Eumenes for the subduing of fuch as would not submit, he, with the rest of his Power came to a flrong City, to which many of the Inhabitants of the Country fled: Notwithstanding that they sent to Alexander for peace, yet they prepared nevertheies for the War, by reason of a Sedition which rose amongst them. which made them to be of divers Opinions; fome would far rather have indured any extremity then yield, and others all othought they were not able to make refusance; and two whilest they were not able to make rentance; and whilest they differed so in Opinions, and came to no common Result amongst themselves, such as held Opinion to one many the Gates, and received in their directions. Enemies: And notwithstanding that Alexander had just alled cause of displeasure against the contrary Faction, yet he pardoned them all, and receiving ed towards the next City. When the *Indians*, that itom upon the Walls, beheld the Hostages that were brought upon the Army, and perceived them to be of the same they defired Communication with them, who are they defired Communication with them, who are moved them to deliver up their City; whose example the both rest of the Cities soon followed.

From thence he came into the Kingdom of the Sophites, who are a Nation which the *Indians* think most excelling and in wildom, best governed, and who have the most Civil see Conversations amongst them. The Children that are there are begotten, are not nourished and brought up according to the will of their Parents, but by the order of such who have the charge committed to them to view the state of the Insants: If they perceive any not apt to become additive, or else wanting any of their limbs, they cause them silve, or else wanting any of their limbs, they cause them silve, or else wanting any of their limbs, they cause them silve, or else wanting any of their limbs, they cause them silve, or else wanting any of their limbs, they cause them silve silve, or else wanting any of their limbs, they cause them silve silve the silve si felt was in the chief City of that Country, against which ing

Alexander

lį.

ir

c

s,

mander brought his power: The Gates were shut, and dence; wherefore he ftood in doubt a great while, while the City was abandoned, or whether the Inhabitants is dept themselves secret for some politick stratagem. This hile he remained in that expectation, suddenly the Gate or sopened, and the King (who in goodliness of person expectation) and the rest of came forth with his two Sons: He was a summer of Gold and Purple. y, oman appearred in Arms upon the Walls to make any dence; wherefore he flood in doubt a great while, whi-Garment of Gold and Purple impaled, that covered the fof his Leg; the Sandals he did wear on his Feet were rs n- in Pearls, and he had hanging at his ears two Precious ones, of an extraordinary bigners d with Precious Stones: All his Arms were garnished ones, of an extraordinary bigness and brightness: he din his Hand a Scepter of Gold, fet with Precious Stones, aled Berilli, which (after his falution made) with humbmission he delivered to Alexander, yielding both him-

if, his Children, and his Kingdom into his hands.

If, his Children, and his Kingdom into his hands.

There were in that Country notable Dogs for the huntagof wild Beafts, but above all, most eager on the Lyon; the King therefore, to shew their force and quality to Anamder, put four of them to a great Lyon, who straighten my took hold of him: Then one who was accustomed to other Office, took one of those Dogs by the Leg to pluck im off from the Lyon; and because he would not lose his the cut office with a Sword: but when the Dog d, he cut off his Leg with a Sword: but when the Dog may nevertheless upon the Lyon, he was cut in sun'er by etces, till such time as he died, having his Teeth still famed in the Lyons sless, it is recorded of them. In gened in the Lyons field; such an eagerness had Nature mought in those Creatures, as it is recorded of them. In a compiling of this History, sometimes I am insorted to mite things that I can scarcely believe; for I neither dare firm the things whereof I doubt, nor conceal such things is I have received for truth. Alexander leaving this King this own Kingdon, came to the River of Hydaspie, and there joyned with Ephestion, who had subdued the Country thereabouts. One Phesetas was King of the next Nation, who commanding his Subjects to continue the Tiling of the Ground as they were wont to do, met Alexander P 2

njo 10 P

mea

602

M,11

7010

FA

4.6

W

en:

der with Rich Presents, refusing nothing that was command ed him.

When he had tarried with him two days, and was deter mined the third day to have passed the River, he found therein great difficulty, by reason that the Stream was fe large, and full of great Stones: He stayed therefore while to be more fully advertised of the state of those Coun tries, and of all such things as were necessary for him to know. He understood by Phegelas, how beyond that Rive there lay a Defart of ten days journey, and next to the Defart the River of Ganges, which was the greatest River in je i in t all the O int: He declared to him, that beyond Gange there inhabited two Nations, called Gangaridans and Pha rafians, whose King was called Aggramenes, who used to come to the field with twenty thousand Horsemen, two hundred thousand Footmen, two thousand Armed Way of Floribuses, which were counted gons, and three thousand Elephants, which were country can of all to be the greatest terrour. These things seemeding credible to Alexander; and therefore he inquired of Porus. if the things were true that had been told him. He confirmed Plegelas report concerning the force of the Nation but he faid their King was not descended of Noble Blood, but of the basest of men, his Father being a Barber, who with great Labour and Servelity had gotten his daily bread untill he came in savour with the Queen, who preserved untill he came in favour with the Queen, who preferred him to the King her Husband, who was afterwards fain by his Freason: Then he, under a pretence to become Tutor to the Roya! Children, usurped the Kingdom to himfelf, and putting the Children to death, begat him that the was now King, being in hatred and difgrace with the prople, as one that received more the Inclinations of his Fathers base Estate, than such as did beseem the Dignity of a Prir.ce.

When Alexander heard Porus affirm this, he was in great trouble of mind, not that he regarded the multitude of his Enemies, or the force of their Elephants, but the greatnes of the Rivers, and the Scituation of the Country, fo diffcult to enter. He thought it a hard Entergrie, to feek

eter

Ound

as fo

re :

oun

n to

ive

tha

T in

mee

Pha-

two

129

tec in-

W.

on-

on.

od.

ho

d

20

9

at Nations fo far inhabiting the uttermost bounds of the forld: Yet on the other fide, the greediness of giory, dehe unsatiable desire of Fame, made no place seem o far, nor any Adventure to be over-hard: He doubted to that the Macedons, who had passed so many Countries, d were grown old in War, would not be content to follow mover so many Rivers, and against so many difficulties of surelying in their way: For he judged, that fince they were birricht and laden with Spoyls, they would rather feek to goy fuch things as they had got, than to Travel any further purchase more. He could not think the same defire to ein his Souldiers that was in himself: for he compated his mind how to get the Empire of the whole World, no which he had but yet made his entry; whereas they, wearied with Travel, and thinking to have past all peril, spected no farther than to injoy with speed the Fruit of their Labour. Yet for all that, his defire at last overame his Reason; so that assembling his Army together, he bake to them after this manner:

I am not ignorant (my Souldiers) how that there are now many rumours spread amongst you by the Indians, purposely to bing you in fear; but the vanity of their lying is not so new a ling, that it is able any more to deceive you. The Persians, fier that manner, would have made the Streights of Cilicia, and the Plains of McCoporamia terrible to you; yea, and put mein fear of the Rivers of Tygris and Euphrates; and yet wated over one of them, and passed the other by a Bridge. Fame never reports things truly, but renders them to be greater then indeed they are: Even our Glory, though it be grown to scertain perfection, yet it is more in Fame than in effect. Which of you of late did think that you should have been able to endure the Elephants, appearing a far off like fo many Castles? Who thought I could have passed the River of Hydaspis, when it was reported to be much greater than it was? We should long ago (my Souldurs) have fled out of Asia, if Tales could have eaused us to turn our Backs. Think you that the Flocks of Elephants can be greater then the Herds of Bealts you have feen in other places, feeing they are so rare in the World,

epply bele n Trefer

n At

b you

dear affect white bence war

ble th

ne g

marc lath

y th

ceed and

1/a

mar'

am nera

YOR

ad-

ba

cel

11 71

W

ch 8

So strange to be taken, and so much difficulty in the making of mah them tame? The same vanity that hath reported them to yout be of such numbers, bath numbred also the Horsemen and the Footmen of your Adversaries. Concerning the Rivers the more broad they are, the more gently they do run: for fuch as are narrow, and of small breadth, are always motive olent in their course; where on the contrary, the broad River pass their course more mildly. But you will peradventure far that all the peril is at the landing, where your Enemies shall wait for your arrival: What sever the River be, the hazard is all one at the shore. But imagine that all these things were true, whether is it the greatness of the Beasts, or the m littude of the men, that pats you in fear? As concerning the Elephants, we have had experience of them of late, how more violently they rage against their own party, then against us: Why should we fear them, as great and vast as their Bodies, have me not lately found out Scythes and Weapons to main and destroy them? What matter is it whether they are of the like number that Porus had, or whether they are three thousand, Geeing we perceive that when two or three are wounded, the reft began to fly away? And for asmuch as they cannot well be govirned when they are but few, when there are so many thousands together, they must needs be an impediment one to another, and breed a confusion among st themselves; they are so unwieldy, by reason of their b: g: Bodies, that they be neither fit to pass forwards, nor yet to fly: I have always fo little esteemed them, that when I have had plenty of them I would never use them, knowing very well, that they are more dangerous to such as imploy them, then to their Enemies. But peradventure it is the multitude of their Horsemen and Footmen that move you: Were you never pont to fight against such numbers? Or is it the first time you have encountred with difordered Routs? The River of Granike is a witness how invincible the power of the Macedons is against any multitude; and so is Cilicia that flowed with the Persians Blood, and Arbella, whose Plains are strowed with their Bines. You too late begin to number the Legions of your Enemie, after that with your Victories you have made Afia a Wilderness: When you passed over the Hellespont, you should then

IX

he

re

5,

m

1, Á

1 5

d

mhave considered your small numbers: Now the Scythians follow us, we have aid at hand from the Bactrians, and we nu te ply our power with the Sogdians; yet for all that, it is not the seemen in whom I put my confidence: I rely only on your Force; ers. for vi-Archievemenes: So long as I stand in the Field amongit n, I will neither number my own Armies, nor mine Enemies: ers say, earfulness: We are not newly entred into our travels, but have Med all our Labours, being come to the rifing of the Sun, and banhe Ocean Sea, except our own sloth be our impedient: from excepaving subdued the world, we shall return Conquerors inngs he nur Country. Do not you as those negligent Husband non that their Fruit after it is once ripe: The rewards of our Journey regreater than our peril: The Country into which we are now arching is Rich, and of no force, thither I purpose to bring you thto win Glory, and to get you Spoil; for worthy are you to carthose Riches into your Country, which the Sea doth there so latifully cast up upon their shore: You are men of that veras to leave nothing unprovided, nothing undone: I desire nd conjure you, by the Glory you have purchast, in which you exwed the state of men, and by all that I have deserved of you, nd you of me, in which we remain invincible, that you will w for fake me, purposing to visit the end of the World: Me, May, that have been brought up as a Child among It you, and wift your fellow Souldiers. I will not make mention bow I on your King; in other things I have commanded you, let me now intreat you once in this; It is I that made this request to you, who never brought you on, but I put my self foremost in the seventure and danger, and oftentimes with my own Buckler have defended my Army: Take not the Victory out of My hands, by which (if envy be not the let) I shall become both equal in flory to Hercules and Baechus: Grue your affent to mine intertession, and at length break your obstinute silence: Where are um those shouts, that vice of Acclamation, that was wont to be a Declaration of you chearfulness? Where are the chearful countenances of my Macedons? I know not you my Souldier, and it feems that I am not known of you: Ifpeat, py py

Ale:

W

hea heg and

00

note

the

ifi

to h

the

ibe

ent

COT

nec

fai

ibo

91

5

methinks, to your deaf ears in vain, and in vain go about to fit up your unwitting and immoveable minds.

Notwithstanding all these words, they hung down their heads towards the earth, and persevered still in silence

Then he proceeded.

I know not (said he) wherein I have unwittingly offended you, that you will not once wouch fafe to look me in the face: feem to be folitary, and in a Wilderness; Is there none of youthan I peak to will answer me? Is there none at the least, who wil deny my request? What is the thing that I require? even som own glery, and your own profit. Where are they now whom fare not long ago contending, who should first take up the Kin when he was wounded, and now you leave me alone, you forfal me, you betray me to mine Enemies: But I will not leave min enterprise though I so alone; leave me alone to those Rivers, to trofe Berfts, and to those Nations, the very names of whom we fear fo much. The Sevenians and Bactrians shall go with me who of late were mine Enemies, and who now are my Souldiers I had rather die, than be a King to be ruled, and at other men Command: Go, get you kome, go I fay, and triumph of the a bardering of your Kirg. for I will be e cither obtain the Villory wh reof you have despaired, or else die a death that shall be ber mable.

Notwithstanding what he said, there was not one Souldier that would open his mouth to speak, but stood waiting when some of the Princes and great Captains should declare to the Ring, that there remained not in them any obstinate refusal of the Wars, but that they were exhausted with wounds, and so wearied with continual travel, that they were not able to indure any longer. As they stood thus associately, in deep silence with their eyes fixt on the Ground, there began first a whispering and a rumour amongst them, and asterwards a lamentation; and by little and little, they began more manifestly to shew their complaints, the Tears salling from their eyes. The Kings anger was then so turned into compassion, that he himself was not able to abstain from Tears: At length the whole Assembly bursting out into an excessive weeping, Cense took up-

o Sti

hei

ce

ndea

tba wil

104

m

Cin

ak

nin

1

ne rs en:

on him to press forwards towards the Judgment-Seat whe e Alexander stood, fignifying that he had somewhat to tay: When the Souldiers faw him pull his Helmer from his head, (for fo it was the cuftom to speak to the King) they began to require him that he wou'd utter the Sentiments. and plead the Cause of the whole Army: Then Cenus began on this manner :

May the Gods defend us from all wicked thoughts, as I doubt mothet that they do; there are none of your Souldiers but are of the same mind towards you, that they have been in times past, if it be your pleasure to command them to go forwards to fight. bhazard themselves, or with their blood to commend your Nume Posterity. And if you will needs persevere in your Opinion, though we are unarmed, naked, and without blood, we will either come after you, or go before you, as you shall think expedient: But if you will be content to hear your Souldiers griefs and complaints, which are not fained, but expressed by the utmost neceffity. I humbly befeech you then, that you would vouchfafe favourably to hear them, who constantly have followed your Auibority and Fortune, and are yet ready to follow wheresever on will conduct them. O Alexander, with the greatness of your Acts, you have not overcome only your Enemies, but also pur own Souldiers: What soever mans mortality is able to fulfil. ir already performed by us, having pasted over so many Seas and Countries better known to us, than the Inhabitants themlelves: We now remain almost in the uitermost end of the wordly and yet for all this, your purpose is to pass into another World, and feek out an India unknown to the Indians. Te covet to pluck out the wild Beasts and Serpents out of their Dens and lurky g places, minding to learch further with your Vistories, than toe Sun hath visited with his beauts; which truly is an imagination answerable to your heart, but far exceeding our capacity and power : Your manbood and courage is always increasing, but our force is now declining. Behold our Bodies destitute of blood. pierced with fo many wounds, and deformed with fo many skars; our swords now are dulled, and our armour consumed; we was e sparel after the manner of the Perfians; because our Count y garments do fail us we degenerate into a strange habit; with P 5

he that bath a Corslet or Horse particular to himself? Examine how many of the Macedons remain among & us, and what is left to every man of the Spoil: Being the Conquerours of all men. of all min we are the poorest: It is not abundance or excessibat troubles us, but the very War it felf: Our ammunition of War is consumed, and yet 'tis your pleasure to expose this goodly Army of yours, naked to Beasts, the multitude of whom, thougothe Indians purposely do increase, yet by their vain report, we may perceive the number to be great. But if you be absolutely determined to pass yet further into India, the Countrey that lies Southward is not so defart as the other; which being subdued. you may pass to that Sea which Nature bath appointed to bound in the world. Why do you feek that glory afar off, which lies open to you ready at your hand? Here the Ocean Sea doth meet we and if we mistake not , we are come to the utmost place where y ur Fortune leads you. I had rather freak these things before, than behind your back; for I feek not so much to win the favour of the Souldiers, as I defire that you should rather hear the voice of them speaking, than the murmur of them complaining.

When Cenus had made an end of his Oration, there arole a cry and lamentation, which in confused voices every where call'd Alexander their King, their Father, and their Then the other Captains (and especially the more ancient of them, who by reason of their age had the more honourable excuse, and greater authority) made the like request; so that the King was not able in that obstitucy, either to chastise them, or asswage them: Therefore uncertain what to do, he leaped from the Judgment-Seat, and commanding his lodging-door to be flut, he admitted no man to come to him, but fuch as were accustomed to be about his person. Two days he confumed in this angry melanchol, and the third day he came forth amongst his men, causing twelve Altars of square stone to be let up as a Monument of his Journey, and order'd the Trenches of his Camp to be made wider, and the places where the Souldiers lay to be inlarged greater than served for the Dimenfrom of their Bodies, thinking by form and shape of things thus increased, to leave a deceitful Wonder to Posterity.

From

led which

and out

wro his

force

the in I

IX.

mine

at is

men,

that

ar is

lrmy

In-

may.

ter-

lies

ued,

din

pen

ry

re re ke

y, n-id

0

1-

From thence he returned by the way he had passed beand incamped near to the River of Acelines. Cenus anced there to die, whose death the King Limented; but e he faid, that for so few days he had made an over-long varion, as though he was the onely person that had desied to return into Macedon. By that time the Navy of Ships hich he had appointed to be made, stood in readiness, aflore; and Memnon, in the mean feafon, brought him out of Torace 6000 Horsemen, and besides from Harpalus 1000 Footmen, with twenty five thousand Arms that were wrought with filver and gold, which he distributed amongst men, and commanded the old to be burned, purpofing pass to the Ocean Sea with a thousand Ships: But before he departed, he reconciled by Affinity Porus and Taxles, betwixt whom there was a new discord risen upon heir old hatred. He had obtained of them great aid, both making and the furnishing of his Fleet.

bere ban the of

During the time he was about this business, he built two Gies, the one whereof he called Nicea, and the other Buuphalon, naming the latter by the name of his Horse that was dead. He gave order that his Elephants and Carriages fould pass by Land, and he sailed down the River, proceeding every day about forty furlongs, so that he might always land his power in such places as he thought convement. At length he came into a Country where the Riters of Hidaspes and Acesines joyn together, and run from thence into the bounds of a Nation called Solins. They declared, that their Predecessors came from Hercules Army, who being left there fick, did inhabit the Countrey: They were cloathed in Beafts skins, using Clubs for their weapons: And though they had left the customs of the Greeks, yet there appeared many things amongst them, that declared from whence they were descended.

Here the King landed, and marched two hundred and ten furlongs within the Country, which he wasted, and There were forty thousand men took their chiefest City. that floed in defence against him upon a Rivers side; but he passed the water, putting them to flight; and after they

fed into the City, he wan it by force: The young men were all flain, and the rest fold as slaves. After that heaffaulted another City, where he was repulled by the great force of the Defendants, and loft many of his men: But when the Inhabitants faw that he continued still the Siege, despairing of their safeguard, they set fire on their houses, and destroyed themselves, their Wives and Children; which fire, when the Macedons quenched, they kindled the fame again: It seemed a strange contention, the Citizens to destroy their own City, and their Enemies labouring to preserve it, so much can War even change the Laws of Nature: The Castle was saved, wherein a Garrison was left. Alexander went about this Castle by water, which was invironed with three of the greatest Rivers in all India, Ganges excepted; Indus passing on the North-side, and Acesines running into Hydaspes upon the South. Where these Rivers mer, the waters role like surges of the Sea, being full of Mud and Ouze, which by the course of the water were driven upon the shore : Yet notwith anding the Rivers are broad, yet the Channels are but harrow, wherein the Ships must pass. The Waves arose so high and dick, breaking fometimes upon the Poops, and fometime upon the fide of the Ships, that the Marriners began to furle their Sails; but they were so troubled through sear, and it e violent swiftness of the stream, that they could not order their Tackling, fo that two of their greatest Ships i cre funk in fight; and the smallest which were kes able to be governed, were driven upon the hore will curally damage. The King chanced upon the place whe the Waves swelled highest, wherewith his Ship was I to led and traverfed, that the Helm could not direct course; wherefore the King fearing to be drowned, put of his Garments, being ready to cast martif into the ter; and his Confidents did fwim near thereabone, being ready to receive him. It appeared to the doubeful which peril was the greatest, either to swim, or to continue full aboard. But the Marriners laboured wonderfully with their Oars, adding all the force that lay in mans power it

ic af-

great

But

iege,

ules.

en;

the

zens

gto

s of

Was

nich

In-

de,

ere

ea.

vadie

our through the Waves, by whose Indefatigable Toil, the mater seemed to divide a sunder, and to give place, so that a length they got out of the Surges; and yet not able to bring the Ship to the shore, dashed upon the next flat, it is appearing that the Ships and the Stream had sought a Eater of rogether.

Alexander having escaped this peril, set up to every River an Altar, whereupon he offered due Sacrifice; and that done, he past forwards thirty furlongs. From thence he came into the Country of the Sudricans and Mallians, who being accustomed to be at war among themselves, had then united their Forces. They affembled in Arms to the number of 9000 Footmen, 1000 Horsemen, and 900 armed Waggons; whereof when the Macedons were adverrifed, who believed that they had passed all perils, seeing fresh War arise with a new fresh Nation, they were amazen with a fudden fear, and began again with feditious words to reprove their King: They alledged, that he would lately have compelled them to pass the River of Ganges, to make war upon those Nations inhabiting beyoud it; which enterprise, though it were laid aside, they had not for all that ended the War never the more, but rather made an exchange for a new labour, being put forth mongst this wild Nation, to make the Ocean Sea open to b him with their blood, and to be drawn beyond the Sun ind the Stars; They were compelled (they faid) to visit mole places that Nature coveted to remove from mans nowledge: The grudged, that to their new Armour there cre new Enemies raised up, whom if they should vanth, and put to flight, they could not see what benefit frould receive thereby, but only darkness and obscuof the Air, which always covered the deep Sea, reenished with multitudes of Monsters wallowing in those moveable waters, in which dying Nature did faint way.

The King little moved for himself, was much troubled the e passions of his Souldiers: wherefore he assembled them all together, declaring of how seeble a force those

Nations

too

in

the

W

fai

(1

ui

A

Nations were, whom they feared fo much, and who only remained, and were an impediment to them (having palled over so many Countries) to attain to the period of their travels, and to the end of the world. He frewed how that in respect of their former fear, he had quitted his Enterprise over Ganges, with the Conquest of the Nations inhabiting beyond it, and had directed his journey this way; whereas their glory shall be as great, and their danger less, feeing the Ocean was in a manner within fight, the Air whereof he felt blowing in his face: He required them therefore, that they would not envy the glory he fought. by passing the bounds of Hercules and Bacchus, seeing that with so little pain they might give to their King perpetual Fame and Immortality: In doing whereof, they should depart out of India as Conquerours, whereas otherwise they should seem to fly away from thence. It is the property of all multitudes, and specially of Men of War, to be drawn with every little motion, amongst whom, as sedition doth foon arife, fo it it foon pacified.

There was never a more chearful cry made of any Army before, than the Souldiers now made to Alexander, who defired him to lead them wherefoever he would, and make himself equal in glory to them whose Acts he did emulate. Alexander rejoycing in the willingness that appeared in his Souldiers, removed straightways towards his Enemies, who were the stoutest people of all the Indians. They prepared themselves manfully for the Wars, and chose for their Captain one of the Oxidracans, who was of an approved Manhood; he incamping at the foot of a Mountain, made fires all abroad, to cause his number to appear the greater, and went about in vain to terrifie the Macedons when they were at reft, by making of Alarms, with their cries and manner of howling. When the day appeared, Alexander having an affured confidence to obtain the Victory, commanded the Souldiers to put on their Armour, and chearfully to fall in order of Battel: But the Indians (whether it were for fear or by reason of some sedition risen amongst them) fuddenly fled into the Defart Mountains; whom

Alexander

diameter distribution

Alexander followed in vain, and not able to overtake them, mok their Carriage. After this he came to the City of the Oxidracans, into which great numbers were fled, as well in Confidence of the firength of the place, as of their own power. As Alexander was about to make the approach, Demophon, his Diviner, admonished him that he should either defer the assault, or else not meddle with it at all, for there appeared signs that his life should be in jeopardy. When Alexander had heard his words, he beheld him, and said:

If any man should interrupt thee when thou art busic about thy science, or considering of the Entrails, should not be seem to thee to be troublesome, and his coming to be ungrateful? Tes truly (said he.) So art thou now unto me (said Alexander) for having so great actions in hand, of more moment than the Entrails of Beasts, I find no greater impediment than a Superstitious

Diviner.

And as foon as he had spoken the word, he caused them to rear up the Ladders: and whilst other men boggled and floot at the danger, he mounted up the wall in his own person. The same was very narrow on the top, not divided with loops, (as is commonly used) but inclosed with one whole and continual Bartlement round about, which caused it to be the more hard to scale: Alexander therefore having no convenient place to stand for his defence, flaved upon the wall, receiving upon his Target the Darts that were cast at him from all parts. His Souldiers could not get to him, they were so beaten from the walls by the shot that came from above: Yet at the last, when they law their King given up into their Enemies hands, Thame overcame their imminent danger. But their overmuch haste became their hinderance, and was the cause why they could not come to the rescue of their King: For whiles every man covered to ascend the Ladders, they were so heavily laden, that they brake afunder; and fuch as were mounted upon them fell down again, deceiving Alexander of his only hope: fo that in the fight of all the Army he flood destitute on the walls, as in a Desart, without any aid

rhat

aid or fuccour, and had wearied his left arm (with which he held his Target) in receiving the Darts thrown at him. His Friends cried to him to leap down to them, who flood in readiness to receive him: But he giving no ear unto them, undertook an incredible enterprise, and such aone as hath not been heard of before, deferving rather there. port of rashness, then of any fame that might redound to his glory; for with a desperate leap he cast himself into the City that was full of his Enemies: For before he could recouer his feet again, it was likely either he should have been flain, or taken alive. But he by chance so conveyed his body, that he fell upon his feet, and fought with fuch as came against him : Fortune so provided, that he could not be enclosed about, by reason of an old Tree, which as it had been of purpose stood near the Wall, whose broad boughs being full of Leaves, covered him from above; and the greatness of the body of it kept his Enemies from coming at his back; and upon the fore-front he received the Darts that were cast against him with his Target. For though there were never fo many that contended with him afar off, yet durst there no man come near to him; and the boughs kept off the Arrows and Darts as well as his Target did.

In this extremity, the greatness of Alexander's Fame chiefly fought for him, and next of all desperation, a great encouragement for a man to die honourably. At length, through the multitude of his Enemies that continually flocked about him, both his Target was laden with short, his Helmet was broken with stones, and his Legs fainted and failed under him by reason of his continual atigue; which when his Enemies perceived, they without fear drew more near to him; of whom he received two with his Sword in such sort, that they fell down dead at his feet: and from that time sorward none was so bold to approach so near him, but threw Darts, and shot Arrows at him afar off. He lay open to every man's blow, and yet (though with great pain) defended himself upon his Knees, until such time as an Indian shot arrow at him

TX

which t him.

ftood!

unto

a one

ne re-

nd to

into

could

have

eyed

fuch

bluc

hich

hole

na-

De-

he

ar-

en-

rse

as

ne

2

Ac

1

1

that was two Cubits long, which a little above his right Thigh passed through his Corslet; by reason of which wound he sted so much blood, that he let his Sword fall, sone at the point of death; and therewith became so faint, that he had not strength to pluck out the Arrow. Then the Indian which had hurt him came with great joy to spoil his Body: but when Alexander felt his Enemies hand upon him, moved (as it is to be thought) with deforce to receive an infamy to that extremity, he recalled again his fainting Spirits, and with his Sword thrust his Enemy (being unarmed) through the Body. had thus flain three of his Enemies, who lay dead before him, all the rest stood amazed afar off. Then Alexander defiring before his last breath should fail, to be killed fighting, began to raise up his Body upon his Target; but his frength would not ferve him in it, and therefore he reached at a bough that hung over his head, defigning by the help of that to have raised himself; but his ability not suffering him, he fell down again upon his Knees, and by a fign given with his hand, challenged his Enemies if any of them durst come and fight with him. At the last Peuceftes repulfing his Enemies on another part of the walls, got into the Town; and coasting along, came to the place where the King was. When Alexander espied him, though he had no hope to live, yet he took his coming for a comfort to his death, and for all his feebleness began to rear up himself. Then came Timeus, and within a while Leonatus, and after them Aristonus. When it was once published amongst the Indians, that Alexander was entered within the walls, they left their defence in other places, and came flocking thirher, where they fiercely affailed such as stood in defence of the King's Person. Timeus, after he had fought notably, and received many wounds was there slain: Peucestes also, notwithstanding that he was stricken and wounded with three Darts, yet with his Target he defended the King's person, without any regard, of himself: And Leonatus, whiles he refisted the Indians that eagerly ran upon Alexander, received so great a blow

on

on the Neck, that he fell down in a swound at the Kine's feet. By that time Peucestes became so feeble of his wounds, that he was not able to defend him any more: The last hope and refuge remained in Aristonus, who also was fo grievously wounded, that he could not endure any longer the force of the Indians.

BOOK IX.

h

In the mean feason the same was spread amongst the Macedons, that the King was flain; which being a matter that should have put others in fear, stirred up their hearts, and made them the hardier: For from that time forwards, there was none that respected his cwn peril, but adventured to the Wall; and breaking it down with Pick-axes, entered in at the breach, making flaughter of their Enemies, of whom few flood at defence, but fled away.

There was neither man, nor woman, nor infant spared; for whomfoever they met, they judged him to be the person that had hurt their King; and so at length, with the flaughter of the multitude, their just anger was satisfied. Clitarchus and Timagenes do write, that Ptolomeus, who afterwards became King of Egypt, was present in this encounter: But he himself, that used not to deny any thing that stood with his own glory, has delivered it to memory how that he was then absent, being imployed on another Enterprise. Such a negligence was then in those who wrote the Antiquities of things, or such a credulity, which is a fault no less than the other. When Alexander was brought into his Lodging, the Chirurgeons cut off the stale of the shaft, in such fort that they moved not the head that was within the flesh; and when they saw the wound bare, they perceived hooks to be on the Arrowhead, so that without the destruction of his body it could not be pulled out, except by incision they made the wound greater; and yet in that point they seared, lest blood flowing too abundantly, should impede the Operation; for the head was very great, and it feemed to be entred far within his body. There was one Critobulus that was very cunning, and most excellent amongst the Physicians and Chirurgeons; and yet in fo dangerous an accicident

g's his

16

ny

he

er

ti.

ls,

n.

S,

.

1;

re

1.

f-

1-

-

S

dent as this, he was fearful and in doubt to undertake the Cure, lest if any thing should chance to the King otherwise than well, whilst he remained under Cure, the blame thereof might light upon his head; therefore when Alexander perceived by his weeping the fear he was in, and that through trouble of mind he looked pale in the face, he said unto him:

What is it that thou lookest for? Or why dost thou stay in sidding me quickly out of this pain, at the leastwise by death, if thou canst not otherwise effect it? For seeing my wound is increase, why fearest thou that any thing should be laid to thy

Charge?

When Critobulus heard his words, he either ceased or differabled his fear, and exhorted Alexander that he would fuffer himself to be held while they pulled the Arrowhead that was within his flesh; for the least motion he hid might be hurtful to him. The King would not be held, but kept his Body at a stay without moving, in such manner as they ordered him. When they had cut the Wound wider, and pulled out the head, there issued our such abundance of Blood, that the King fell in a swoon, and a dimness came over his fight, and he stretched out himself as in one of the pangs of Death. Then they wrought all the means they could to stanch the Blood! but when they perceived it would not avail, his Friends began to weep and lament, thinging verily there had been no expectation but death. Notwithstanding at length he ceased his bleeding and recovered again his Spirits, began to know them that stood about him.

All that day, and the night ensuing, the men of War stood in Arms about the Kings lodging, confessing that all their lives depended upon his breath; and would not remove from thence before they understood that he took some rest: but when they knew that he was sallen in a sleep, they returned into the Camp, communicating to their companions more certain hope of his recovery. Alexander, about the curing of his wound, remained there seven days, and understanding that a constant same of his death was

fpread

spread abroad amongst the *Indians*, he caused two Ships to be fastened together, and a Lodging to be made for him in the midst; so that remaining upon the water, from both sides of the Land he might be seen of them that thought he had been dead. When the *Indians* perceived he was alive, it took away the hope that some had conceived

ed upon the false Report.

From thence he pailed down, the Stream, leaving adistance between his Ship and the rest of the Navy, to the intent that with the beating of the Oars, they should not disturb him of his rest, which was necessary for his weak The fourth day after his embarking, he come into a Country abandoned of the Inhabitants, but plentiful both in Corn and Cattle, in which place he thought to reft himself and his Soldiers. It was a custom amongst the Macedons, that when their King was indisposed, the chief Princes and the great Men watched about his Lodging; which custom being then observed, they entred all together into the Chamber where Alexander lay; at whose sudden coming he was fomething amazed, especially because they came all together. He thought they had brought him some strange tidings, and enquired of them if they underflood of any new Assembly of his Enemies. Then Craterus that was appointed to speak in the behalf of them all, addrest himself after this manner.

Do you think that the approach of any Enemies could make it so careful (though they were entred within your Camp) as we are of your health and safeguard, though, of all, thu is the thing which you regard least? Though all Nations conspire against us with their united Arms, though the whole World were filled full of men of War, the Seas overspread with Ships, and never so many strange Beasts brought against us, it consistent in the presence of your Person to make us Conquerours. But how can any God promise that you, who are the Light and Star of Macedonia, can be of any continuance? seeing you are so desirous to put your person in such manifest pexils, not remembring that with your death you draw with you into ruine the lives of so many of your Country-men? Who is he, that either can, or

ips

for

m

nat ed

V-

lj.

he

ot ak

n-

ul

ft

1e

ef

3;

6-

1-

ſe.

m

.

e-

1,

is

.

.

t

Joh desire to live after you? We are come so far following mut Fortun e and Authority, that, without you, none of us are able to return home again. If you were yet contending with Darius for the Empire of Perlia, though we all would wish you would not expose your Person to such apparent bazards, yet in that case we could not so much admire at a Resolution so dating; for where the danger and the benefit that ensues thereof me equal, the fruit is the greater when the business succeeds well, and the comfort is the more when the thing chances evil. There are none, not only of us who are your Souldiers, but even of such were our Enemies, having any understanding of your greatness that can suffer so base a Town, and of so little fame to be bought with the price of your Life. My heart shinks at the remembrance of the danger which we but late did see with our own eyes; I am am zed to rehearfe how those vile hands were in a readiwest to have carried the spoils of your invincible Person, if Fortune of her elemencie had not preserved and delivered you from their cruelties. So many of us as were not able to follow you, are all Traytors, and forsakers of our Prince: And though it wis a matter that lay not in our power, yet if it please you to brand us all with reproach, there is none that will refuse any funishment in the purgation of it; notwithstanding we would require you, that you would fare us to do you other service. We will gladly go whither sever you will have us; we require War be it never to obscure, and covet the Battel, though our fighting shall mant Fame, so that you will reserve your seif to those hazards which are correspondent to the greatness of your Estate. How foon does glory vanish away, among st such Enemies as are of no Reputation? And what thing is there more unworthy, than to exhault your stock of Glory there, where even Glo. it self can have no Luster.

When Craterus had ended his speech, Ptolomy and the others seconded him to the like effect, and all at once with weeping eyes implored him that he would not from thenceforth be any more so thirsty to win praise, but seeing he had gotten sufficient already, he should content himself, and regard his health and safety, whereon their universal Happiness depended. The King took so gratefully their

loving.

bec

10 6

ION

mh

pre

th

CH

loving affection, that he familiarly embraced every one of them; and after he had order'd them to fit, refolving in his mind more deeply their former communication, he faid

thus to them:

My Faithful loving Friends and Countrey-men I render you most hearty thanks, net only that you prefer my Safety before your own, but also that fince the beginning of the Wars you have not pratermitted any Testimony wherein your love and benevolence might be fignaliz'd towards me; so that I must confess that my life was never fo dear to me as it is now, because I defire lone to enjoy you. You are desirous to offer your selves to death in my cause, because you judge that I have deserved that Gratitude at your hands; but your imagination, that defire to die for me, and mine must disagree: You (peradventure) do covet to enjoy me. to read of me continually Fruits; and I measure not my self by the continuance of my time, but by the greatness of my glory. I might have been content with the riches which my Father left me, and with the ease of my body, within the bounds of Mace. don, have looked for an obscure and ignoble old age; and yet I cannot see that they who live in sloth and idleness can affire themselves of their own destiny: Nor even such as esteem felicity in long life, are oftentimes prevented with sudden death : But I, who number not my years but by my Victories, have lived long, if I well weigh the gifts of Fortune: For beginning mine Empire in Macedonia, I have Greece in my possession; I have subdued Thrace and Illyria, I reign over the Tribals and the Medians, being Master of all Asia that lies between Hellespont and the Red-Sea, and now are not far from the end of the world; the which I determined to visit, and to lay open to men a new nature, and a new world: I passed out of Asia int) Europe in the moment of an hour, being but eight and twenty years of age, and having reigned but nine years; and I am now become the Conquerour of both Regions: Do you think it than meet that I should now cease from the purchase of that glory whereunto I have only devoted my felf? No, I will never cease, but wherefoever I shall have occasion to fight, I shall think my self to be in the Theater, where the whole World does behold me. I will give Nobility and Fame to places that are objeure, and will

of.

n

d

W

m

t

y

ı

In open to all Nations these Countries which Nature hath remoin furthest from them; in doing whereof, it shall be grateful me to end my life, if Fortune will have it fo: I am come of heb a Stock, that I ought to defire many things before long life. Iway you to remember that we are come into these Countries. where the very name of a Woman is celebrated for her Vertues. What Cities did Semiramus buila? What Nations did the fubhe? And what great Works did the accomplish? We are not yet become equal to a Woman in glory; and yet you would have me whe satisfied with it. Be the gods favourable to our purpose; for there remains for us yet greater Alls to perform. And it is the next way to make those Countries which we have not yet muched to become ours, if we esteem nothing to be of small vahe where there is any occasion to turchase glory: Let it be your care to treferve me from the earl conspiracy of my own people. and then there are no adventures in the War shall put me in fear. Philip was more safe in the Front of the Battel abroad, than in the Theatre at home; be oftentimes avoided the force of his Enemies but he could not escape the violence of his own Subjects: And if you consider the end of other Kings, you shall number more that have been flain by their own Subjects, than by any Forreign nower: But because there is an occasion now offered me to uster that which I have long conceived in my mind, it shall be the greatest fuit I can receive of my Travels, if my Mother Olympias, when she departs this life might be consecrated to immortality; if the depart in my time, I will do it my felf; but if I shall be prevented by death, remember you to perform what I have determined.

Having spoke these words, he dismissed his Friends from him, and continued many days in the tame place. Whilest these things were doing in India, the Greek Souldiers that had Lands and Habitations appointed them at Catabactria, through a Sedition that chanced amongst them, Rebelled against him, not so much for any hate they bore to Alexander, as for fear of Punishment; for they killed divers of their Chief Rulers, and affembling in force together, took the Castle of Bastria that was negligently kept, and pro-

gred the Baltrians to Rebel with them.

Athenodorus

Athenedorus was the Chief among them, who took upon him the name of a King, not so much for the desire of the Kingdom, as by that Authority to make himself potent enough to convey himself and others home into his own Country: But one Bicon of his own Nation became his Enemy, and conspiring against him, invited him to a Banquet, where he was slain by one Boxus Macerianus.

The next day following, Bicon affembled the Greeks together, perswading them that he slew Athenodorus In in his own desence, as having purposed his Destruction. But there was some that perceived his Policy, and the suspicion was spread amongst the rest, so that the Greeks sell to Arms on purpose to slay Becon: But such as were chief, mitigated the wrath of the multitude; and contrary to his expectation, he was delivered from that present peril: yet he could not be so contented, but within a while after he conspired against them that saved his life; whose sallshood being known, they took both him and Boxus, determining that Boxus should be put to death out of hand, and that Bicon should end his Life by torments.

As they were tormenting him, the Greek Souldiers suddenly in a sury for what cause it is uncertain, ran to arms; the noise of whom being heard by them who had the charge of Bicon, they set him at liberty, searing that the coyl had been raised for his deliver nce. He, naked as he was, came running amongst the Greeks where they were assembled; whose Miserable Condition so changed their minds, that they ordered him immediately to be sear liberty. By this means Bicon being twice delivered from Death, returned into his Country with the Greeks; abandoning the Colony entrusted him by Alexander. These things were done in the Confines of Bastria and Scithia.

In the mean season, the King of the two Nations, which we spake of before, sent an hundred Embassadors to Alexander, who being horourable Personages, rode in Waggons richly apparelled, having Garments of Linner, Cloth embroidered with Gold, and empaled with Purple.

They

fer

no

he

e.

wn

E-

1

to-

in

on.

he

ks

re

74-

nt

2

e.;

x-

of

d-

16;

le.

ie

d

y d

h

d

,

4

d

1

,

S

h

٠

bey declared that the cause of their coming was to yield emselves, their City, their Country, and their Liberties which they had kept inviolately for fo many . Ages) to his Il and command; of which their submission the Gods they faid) were Authors, and not any fear; for they ere contented to yield themselves before they had tryed teir power with him. The King called a Councel, and ceived them under his protection, appointing them to w such Tribute as they before paid to the Arachosiani, dbefides to fend two thousand five hundred Horsemen oferve him in his Wars; all which things they performdobediently. This done, he made a great Feast, whereno he invited those Embassadadours, and his Lords; he ed therein sumptuous preparation, ordaining an hunled Beds of Gold to eat upon, which being fet a small dince one from another, were drawn about with Curtains

arnished with Gold and Purple.

In that Feast there was shewed and set forth all the reat excess and voluptuousness, which either by long cuom was used amongst the Persians, or by corruption was aken up amongst the Macedons, the vices of both these Nations being there mingled together. There was at hat Feast one Dioxippus of Athens, a noble Champion, nd by reason of his excellent force, well known to the ing, of whom certain envious and malicious persons, bewist earnest and just, said, That he did nothing but fat his sab like an unprofitable Beast; and when others went to the Battle, he would anoint his Body with Oyl, and prepare his Belly for delicates. Amongst others that used evil words of defite against him, there was one Horratus a Maceder, sho in his drunkenness challenged Dioxippus, that if he were a man, he (h nld fight the Combate with him next day, upblife and death, where the King should judge either lim to be igh, or the other too much a Coward. Discippus laughed to forn the pride and arrogancy of the Souldier, acceptede is proffer. The next day they were more earnest to go the Combate than they were before in making the Challenge: when the King faw them fo bent, and that they would not be diffwaded from the Resolution, he conlented to their will.

There were great numbers of men affembled at the Combat, amongst whom, there many GrecianI who favoured Dioxippus part. The Macedon came into the Lifts armed at all points, holding in his left hand an Iron Buckler and a Spear, and in this right hand a casting-Lance; and having his Sword girt to his fide, was furnished as though he should have fought with many men at once. Dioxippus came forth anointed with Oyl, with a Garland upon his head; and having a red Cloth wrapt about his left arm, he held in his hand a great knotty Cudgel. The diverfity of Weapons brought every man into a wonderful expectation; for they thought it not only a rashness, but a madness for Dioxippus who was naked, to encounter the other who was Armed. The Macedon thinking to kill his adversary before they could come to fight hand to had Dioxioppus avoided by bending of his Body: and before that he could charge his Pike, he leaped to him, and with his Cudgel broke it a funder: When the Macedon had loft both his Weapons, he began to draw his Sword; but Dioxithus prevented him with a close, and tripping both his Feet from under him, threw him upon the Earth, and there plucking his Sword from his fide, fet his Foot upon his Neck, and held up his Cudgel to have fruck out his Brains, if the King had not caused him to stay his Hand.

This Triumph ended with diffatisfaction both to the Macedons and to Alexander himself, especially because this thing was done in the presence of the Indians; searing left the valour of the Macedons, famed so much in the world, might thereby grow into contempt. Hercupon Alexander grudging Dioxippus, had his ears open to the Acculation of thoe who envyed him, They, wi hin a rew days after, had caused a Golden Cup purposely to be conveyed out of the way, which the Ministers having imbezelled, they made complaint to Alexander of the loss thereof. Oftentimes men fhew les conflancy in their countenance, than in the offence it felf; for in their complaint Diox:ppus perceiv'd by their looks that they pointed at him as the Tlief; which he could not endure, but parting out of the Feaft (after he had witten a Letter to the King) he kil-

led himfelf.

BC

or 1

ir af

ofh

baff

in a

thre

tre

lin

Tale

WCT

cert

my

Str

the

por Pec

me

thr

luc.

of '

OVE

ma

of

elfe

on:

of

no

fea

me

Fo wi

bre

WC

th

he

fa-

fis

k-

e;

as

e.

nd

is

he

ul

ut

ie

is

d.

e

d

m

g

1,

30

k

S

e

Alexander was very forry for his death, which he took fr no token of repentance, but rather of indignation : For rafterwards appeared, through the overmuch rejoycing ofhis Enemies, that he had been falfly accused. The En. baffadours of the Indians that were dismissed home, withna few days after returned again, prefenting to Alexander hree hundred Horses, on thousand and thirty Waggons every one drawn with four Horses, certain Vestures of linnen-cloth, a thousand Indian Targets, and one hundred Talents of Iron, Lions of a rare bigness, and Tygers that were tame, the Skins of great Lizards, and the Shells oc ertain Fishes.

The King then commanded Craterus to conduct his Army along the River on which he failed, and embarking fich as were accustomed to accompany him, he with the Gream palled into the Bounds of the Mallians, and from thence came to Sabracans, who were a Nation of great power, not ruled by Kings, but by a Govenment of the Rople. They had gathered together fix thousand Footmen, and five hundred armed Waggons, and had chosen three Captains that were approved Leaders: Eut when fich as inhabited next to the River, (the Binks being full of Villages) faw all the River, as far as they could view, over spread with Ships, and the Armour glistering of so many men of War, they were amazed at the strangeness of the fight, and thought that some Army of the Gods, or elfe Bacchus (whose name was famons amongst those Nations) had been come amongst them. The cry of the men of War, with the clashing of the Oars, and the strange noise of the Marriners exhorting one another, filled their fearful ears. They ran therefore amongst their Countrymen, who had assembled their Forces, declaring their Forces, declaring their madness if they would contend with the Gods: for they faid the Ships could not be numbred that carried those invincible people: with which words they put fuch fear amongst the men of their own Nation, that they fent immediately Embassadors to yield themselves.

he

30

mi

ch

dr

tù

th

th

60

10

th

In

h

d

el

A

When he had received their submission, he came the fourth day into another Country, the people whereof durft nomore withfrand him than the other did; and there he builded a City, which he named Alixandria: an d from thence he entred into a Country, the inhabiters whereof they call Musicans, there he understood by the accusation of the Paromifidan, that Terioltes (whom Alexander had a pointed Lieutenantamongst them) had ruled in excessive Pride and Covetoufness, and therefore he commanded him to be put to death: And Oxiartes Lieutenant of the Ba-Etrians being also accused, was not only acquitted, but had

a higher Command given him.

When he had inbdued the uttermost part of the Musicaus, he put a Garison into their City, and advanced from thence into another Nation of the Indians called Prestians; of whom Oaicanus was King, who with a great Power retired himself into a strong City, which Alexander won the third day after he began his Siege: Upon the taking of the Town, Oxicanus fled into the Castle, and sent Embailadors to treat for peace; but before they were come to Alexanders presence, two Towers of the Castle fell with a great noise, by the ruins whereof the Macedons got into the Castle, where Oxicanus with a few that stood in oppositi-

The Castle being razed, and all that were within sold as Slaves. Alexander came into the bounds of Saba, where be-Ade many Holds that yielded to him, he took the strongest City of that Country by force of a Mine. It feemed a wonelerful thing to the Indians, being ignorant of fuch Policies of War, for Armed men to come forth of the Ground in the midft of their City, where there appeared no fign of any way under the Earth, Clitarchus wrises, that there were eighty thousand Indians slain in that Country, befides many Prisoners sold as Slaves. The Musicans in the mean time Rebelled : for the suppressing of whom Python was fent thither, who took the Prince of the Nation Prilorer, and brought him to Alexander, whom he caused to be hanged upon a Cross as the Author of the Revolt; which done, he returned again to the River where he had commanded his Navy to tarry for him. The fourth day after,

ie

ft

e

m

of

n

d

e

n

1-

d

1

became to a Town at the entrance into the Kingdom of Samus, the King whereof had newly yielded himself; but the Cirizens had shut their Gates and would not yield submission, whose sinal number Alexander regarded so little. that he sent five hundred Agrians to their Gates to proffer them Skirmish, to the intent that by retiring, they might draw them by little and little out of their strength, thinking they would follow the Chase, when they should see their

Enemies flying.

The Agrians performed their Commission; and when they had once provoked their Enemies, they immediately furned their backs, and the Indians purfued them, till they came to the Ambuscado where the King lay in person; then the Agrians turned, and the Fight was renewed fo hercely, that of 3000 Indians, there were 500 flain, and 1000 taken, the rest recovered the City: but the end of the Victory was not fo pleasant as the beginning; for the Indians had so envenomed their Arrows, that such as were hurt died of the wounds: and the Physicians could not devise the cause of so strange a death; for even the lightest hurts were incurable. The Indians were in hopes that Alexander through his rashness might have come within that danger, who by chance fighting amongst the foremost, escaped unhurt.

Ptolomy was lightly wounded upon the left shoulder, and being in a greater danger than the greatness of his wound hewed, caused the King to be careful of him; for he was near of kin to him, and some thought that Philip was his Father; but it is certain that his Mother was Philip's Concubine: He was one of them that had the charge of the King's Person, a valiant man of War, and you more famous in the arts of Peace: He was moderate both in his Apparel and Living; Liberal, easie to Access, and without any such height of mind, as is accustomed to be in men descended of the Royal Blood; by reason of which qualities, it is uncertain whether he was better beloved of

the King, or of the Souldiers.

This was the first occasion he had to prove how the minds of men were affectionate towards himsfor even in that

BOOK IX

No. in Street, or other transfer or other transf

歡

Ye

of I

th

100

fo

A

danger, the Macedons began to divine of his fortune, to which afterwards he afcended. They had no less care of Ptolomy than of the King himfelf; who used him so familiarly, that when he was wearied either with travel or care of mind, he would fit for his folace with Ptolomy, and at that time caus'd his bed to be brought into his own chimber: When P. olimy was laid there, he fell fuddenly in a found sleep, in the which it seemed that a Dragon effered to him an Herb out of his Mouth, for the healing of his Wound, and taking away of the venome. When he awaked, he declared his Dream, and shewed both the colour and fashion of the Herb, affirming that he could know it. if any man could find it out. This Herb was fought by fo many, that at length it was found; and being applyed to the Wound, the pain straightways eased, and the scarin a short space was closed. When the Indians were disappointed of the hope they had conceived that way, they

yielded themselves and their City.

From thence Alexander went into the next Country, called Parthalia, the King whereof (called Meris) deferted the City, and fled into the Mountains, so that Alexander took it, finding a wonderful prey of Sheep, of Cattel, and of Corn. There he took Pilots that knew the River, and came to an Island which stood in the midst of the stream, where he was compelled to remain the longer, because the Pilots being negligently kept, were escaped away. He fent therefore to feek out others; but when he could find not any, there entred a vehement defire into his head to vifit without any Guide, the Ocean-Sea, and the end of the world, committing his own life, and the lives of many thousands to a River which none of them knew. They failed as men ignorant of all places they came to either how far the Sea was distant from them, what Nations did inhabit the Countries thereabouts, or whether the Mouth of the River were Navigable for Gallies, or not. In all these things they were led by a blind and doubtful imagination, having no other comfort in their rash Enterprize, but only that they trusted to their continual felicity. When they had gone forwards four hundred Furlongs, the Ship-mafters told the

IX.

, to

e of

nili-

care

d at ım-

in a

red

his

Wa-

our

it,

fo

to

in

p-

cy

1-

d

er

d

d

1,

e

1

eKing, that they felt the air of the Sea, whereby they new the Ocean was at hand. Thereat he rejoyced greatand exhorted the Mariners that they would with all the spedition they could, make way with their Oars, to bring in to the fight of the end of the World, which he had to one defired.

Now (said he) our Glory is perfect, when our manhood is such at nothing can stay us: now the World is come into our hands shout any further hazard of War, or shedding of Bloud. Now face the Bounds that Nature bath wrought be fo near at band, me hall (hortly fee things unknown, faving to the immortal gods. Yet notwithstanding he set some men on shore to take some the Country-men, in hopes from them to learn the cerminey of the truth. When they fearched out their Cottas, at length they found out some of the wifest who were hidden, who being demanded how far the Sea was from hem, they made answer, that they never heard it named; but they faid, that within three days fayling, they should ome to a place where a brackish water did corrupt the felh; by which words the Mariners understood that they meant the Sea, of the nature whereof the people were igborant: then the Mariners rowed chearfully, their defire growing ever the greater, as they approached near to the place, which they hoped to be the end of their Travel. On the third day they came where the Sea and the River joynedtogether, mixing with a gentle floud their waters that were of a contrary nature: Then because the Tide was somewhat against them, they haled towards another Island standing in the midst of the River, whic's being an easie place to land it, the Micedins wander'd about to feek Viauals, in surety as they thought, being ignorant of the chance that came upon them.

About three of the clock, according to its ordinary course, the Tide came rowling in from the Sea, and with his force drove the stream backward, which at the first being but stayed, was afterwards so vehemently repulsed, that it caused the water to return with greater fury than a swift Stream is accustomed to run. The common fort that knew not the nature of the Ocean, thought it to be a wonderful

Q 4

T

pa

na

to

th

H

W

k

h

i

C

C

r i

1

1

thing, and that it had been a Token sent to them of God Sca Wrath: And while they were in that imagination, the Sca rous swelling more and more, overflowed the Land which the store saw before dry; and as the water mounted, the Ships and the all the Navy was dispersed here and there. Such as were the an Event, ran from all parts in great fear to their Ships dur But in a Tumult, haste does always hurt, and gives impery diment. Some there were that went about to set forward me their Ships; others forbade rowing, and wholly paufing for upon the present exigent removed not at all; others made Shi hafte away, and not tarrying to take in their Company, the moved but flowly, and for want of hands could make no kn Some, when they faw them press on Ship-board in the fuch Throngs, for fear of taking in too many, would receive fel none at all; so that both the Multitude and the small number were an equal impediment to the hafte they made, They cry that some made in bidding men tarry, and the noise that others made in desiring them to go forwards; with their voices that differed, and agreed not in one effeet, took away the use both of their fight and hearing. The Mariners could not help it, whose words in the Turult could not be heard, nor their commandments observed amongst men in fear and out of order. The Ships therefore did beat one against the other, the Oars crashed asunder, and every Ship either thrust forward, or put back one another. No man would have judged it to be one Fleet, but rather two Navies fighting a Battel upon the Sea. Sterns struck against the Poop; such as went before, troubled them that came after; and at last the words of menin their Cheler came to blows. The Tide had now over-flown all the Plains thereabout, fo that nothing appeared above the Waters save the Hills, which seemed so many little Islands, whereunto many did swim and lest their Ships for ear.

Whilest the Navy was thus dispersed abroad, and partly floated as the happened in any deep way, and partly fluck in the ground as they lighted on the flats; there came fuddenly another terrour greater than the first: For when the umde.

the

ds;

ef.

ng.

ult

2-

re

er,

0-

ut

ne

u-

in

n

2

e

r

1

God Stabegan to ebb, the water fell back again into its wonted est ourse, with so great violence as it came forwards, and rether fored the fight of the Land, which before was drowned in a sand me overslowing of the Sea. The Ships then fortaken of were the water, fell upon their fides, and the Fields were strew-elter d with broken boards and pieces of Oars. The Souldiers hips durft not go forth to Land, and yet were in doubt to tarnpe n on Ship-board, looking ever for some greater mischief ward moome, than what they faw present or past. fine forcely believe what they faw and fuffered, which was a nade Shipwrack upon the Land, and a Sea within a River. They any, thought no end could come of this Calamity; for they no knew not that the Sea should shortly return again, and set din their Ships affoat: And therefore they proposed to themeive selves no less than Famine, and all the worst Extremities. The Monsters also of the Sea, which after the Water was past, were lest on dry land, put them in great Consternation.

The night approached, and despair brought the King into a great agony: yet no care could so overcome his heart, that was invincible, but he watched all night, and fent Horsemen to the Mouth of the River, to bring him word when the Tide came. He caused two Ships that were broken to be amended, and fuch as were overwhelmed, to be hoifed up again; warning "all men to lie in wait, and be in a readiness against the water should arise. When he had confumed all that night in watching and giving exhortation to his men, immediately the Horsemen returned on a main gallop, and the Tide at their heels, which mildly increasing, began to raise again their Ships; and when it had once over-flown the Banks, the whole Nav began to move. Then all the Coast rebounded with the immoderate rejoycing that the Souldiers and Mariners made for their fafery, of which they were before in despair.

When they saw the danger past, they incuired with great wonderment one of another, by what reason the Sea could fo foon ebb and flow; and debated the nature of that Element, which one while difagreed, and another while was obedient and subject to the time. The King conje-

ct

el

Auring by the figns he had seen before, that after the Sunrifing the Tide would serve to his purpose, at mid-night with a sew Ships sail'd down the Stream; and passing our at the mouth of the River, he entred four hundred Furlongs into the Sea; and being Master of his desires, he there made sacrifice to the Gods of the Sea, who were worshipped in those Countries, and returned again to his Navy. On the next day he returned backwards against the Stream, and arrived at a salt Lake, the nature whereof being unknown, deceived many that rashly entred into the water; for their Bodies presently became full of seabs; which Disease taken by some, the Contagion thereof insected many others: but they sound that Oyl was a Remedy for it.

Alexander lying still with his Army, waiting for the Spring of the Year, fent Leonatus before by Land where he thought to pass, to dig Wells, because the Country was very dry, and destitute of water. In the mean time, he built many Cities, and commanded Nearchus and Onesicrius (that were most expert in the Discipline of Sea-service) with his strongest Ships to pass into the Ocean, and to go to far forwards as they might with fafety, to understand the nature of the Sea; and ordered them at their return, to Land either within that River, or else within Euphrates, When the Winter was well passed, he burned his Ships which were no farther serviceable, and conveyed his Army by Land. After nine Incampings he came into the Country of the Arabitan, and from thence in nine days reacht the Country of the Gredofians, who being a free Nation, by a general Counsel had amongst them, yielded themselves; of whom there was not any thing demanded excepting crely provisions.

The fifth day he came into a River, which the Countrymen call Barabon, beyond which there lay a barren Country, greatly deflicte of water, through the which he paffed, and entred amongft the Horitans. There he affign'd the greater part of his Army to Ephefion, and divided the Souldiers that were light armed to Ptolomy and Leonatus; and fo they wasted the Country with three Armies at once, and took a great booty. Ptolomy turned towards the Sea,

Leonatus-

lematus on the other hand, and Alexander himself in the midft. In that Country he builded also a City, and brought en out of Arrachofia to people it. From thence he ame among the Indians, who, lying upon the Sea-Coaft. inhabit a great Country that is waste and defart. They if no Traffick, Commerce, nor Conversation with any of their Neighbours: but the desartness of their Country made them favage, being wild of their own Nature. Their mils and hair are never cut: they made their Houses of the Shells of Fishes, and of other things that the Sea casts in; and being clad with the skins of wild Beafts, do feed on Fishes dried with the Sun, and such Monsters as the Sea casts upon the Land.

IX

Sun-

night

g out

Fur-

here

fhip-

lavy,

eam,

un-

ter ;

Di-

any

the

cre

was

he

itus

ce)

go

ind

rn,

es,

ps

ny

n-

he

y

5;

g

1

Here the Macedons confumed their Victuals, and first endured scarcity, and afterwards extream hunger, searching our in every place the Roots of the Palms, which is the only Tree that grows in that Country: But when that kind of nourishment failed them, they killed their Carriage-Beafts, and abstained not from their Horses; insomuch that lacking Beafts to bear their Baggage, they were inf rced to consume with fire those very Spoils of their Enemies, for which they had travelled into the uttermost bounds of the Orient. After this Famine, there followed a Pestilence; for the unaccustomed nourishment of the unwholfom meat they had eaten, with the fatigue of their journey, and the anxiety of their minds, spread such Difeases amongst them, that they could neither continue in a place, nor yet go forwards without great destruction : Hunger oppressed them when they tarried, and the Restilence was more vehement ever as they went forwards. The Fields therefore were strewn, not only with dead Carcafes, but as many that were half dead and half live, and fuch as were fick were not able to follow the Army, it marched with so great a seed: For every man thought so much to further his own fafety, by how much he made hafte to get before his fellows.

Such as fainted and could not follow, defined both such as they knew and knew not, to help them orwar is: but they had no Beafis whereupon to fee them, and the Soul-

diers :

.0

h

r

C

I

a

t

2

i

F

10

35

23

91

-17

1

of

diers (who had the imminent mischief that fell upon othe men, represented before their own Eyes) could hardly bear their own Arms; wherefore when they were called upon, they would not vouchsase once to look back, sea had so taken away all compassion from them. Then they who were left behind, cried upon the Gods and their King for help, alledging, That they were all one Country and Religion, which was an Obligation for one to relieve another: Eut when they had cried long in vain to their deal ears, through desperation they raged, wishing the like end to their Friends and Companions which they themselves endured.

The King possessed both with sorrow and shame, because himself alone the cause of so great a destruction amongst his men, wrote to Phrataphernes, Ruler of the Parthenians, to send to him upon Camels. Victuals ready to be eaten; and certified the Governours of the Countries round thereabout of his necessary, who made no delay, but supplied him accordingly. Thus his Army delivered only from Famine, was brought within the bounds of the Gedrosians; which being a Country sertile of all things, he thought good to stay there a while, with rest to recover again his seeble

oldiers.

There he received Letters from Leonatus, that he had won the Victory of the Hositans, who encountred him with eight thousand Footmen, and five hundred Horsemen. He was advertised from Craterus, That he had taken and put in hold Ozines at d Zariasbes, two Noble-men of Persia, who endeavoured to rebel. Alexander also understanding that Memnon was dead, gave the charge of the Country where of he had the rule, to Siburtius, and afterwards marched into Calmanta: Aspasses was Governour of that Nation, who being suspected of Innovation whiles Alexander was in India, met him on the way: But Alexander dissembling his wrath, entertained him gently, and renderd him his accusioned honour, till such time as he had better proof of the accusation which was laid against him.

When the Princes of India, according to his appointment, had fent out from all their Countries great plenty

he

rdly

lled

fear

hev

ins

and

an-

lea

ike

m

uld

ins

to

ind

ac-

ne,

ch

to

ole

ad

th

le

in

10

at

e.

d

n,

in

is

13

of Horfes, and other Beafts, both for Saddle and Draught. he gave Carriage again to all men that wanted, and restored their Armour to the former beautifulness and Magnificence: for they were come into a Country joyning upon Persia, which was both plentifully stored with all things, and also quietly established under his Subjection. thought it then a time to counterfeit Bacchus, in the glory and fame which he got amongst those Nations. Whether it were a Triumph that Bacchus first instituted, or a pastime only used by him in his drink and revels. Alexander was determined to counterfeit his Acts, having his mind elevated above the efface of man. He commanded therefore all the Villages through the which he was to pass. to be ffrewed with Flowers and Garlands, and Wine to be fet forth at every man's door, for all men that would drink. He caused Waggons also to be made, of largeness able to carry great numbers, and decked the same with precious Furniture. The King marched in the front with his Friends, and next to them his Guard, wearing upon their heads Garlands of Flowers, some playing upon Flutes, some upon Harps: every one generally through the Army adorned his Chariot according to his ability and substance; and confuming the whole day in Banqueting, hung their rich Armour all round them. Alexander, with fuch as he called to his Company, was carried in a Chariot, laden with Cups of Gold, and other golden Veffels; and with his drunken Army he marched thus feven days together, in oftentation of the prey they had gotten; wherein they shewed such dissoluteness, that if one thousand of the subdued people had given them the onfer, they might have taken them Prisoners, and led them away in tripmph. Bat Fortune, which gives both Fame and Estimation to things, turned all this diforder to his Glory: for both the Age that was then, and the Posterity that came after, marvelled. and took it for a wonder, that he durft go fo dissolutely among those Nations, not yet established under his Empire; the barbarous Peo le reputing his Rashness for an assured Confidence: But shedding of Blood ensued after this Triumph: For Prince Afastis (spoten of before) was commanded to be put to death: So that his excess in Voluptuousness,

was

was no ftop to his Cruelty, nor his Cruelty an impediment to his Voluptuouineis.

THE

TENTH BOOK.

Of the Asts of Alexander the Great, KING of Macedon.

A Bout the same time Cleander, Sitacles, Agathon, and Heracon, who by the King's Command had put Farmenie to death, returned to him, bringing with them five thousand Foormen and a thousand Horsemen. There were many Accusers that followed them out of the Province whereof they had the Governance; their behaviour being fuch, that the acceptable service they had done to Alexander, in killing of Parmenio, could be no farisfaction for the multitude of offences they had committed. They wied fuch an universal spoil, not abstaining from Temples, nor from confecrated things. The Virgins also and great Ladies of the Country whom they had ravished, complained of them, bewayling the dishonour they had sustained. They used such Coverousness and inordinate Lust in their Authority, that it caused the name of the Macedons to be hated amongst those Narions. And yet among all the rest, Cleander's offence was most horrible, who ravishing a Virgin of Noble Parentage, gave her to his Slave to use as his

The greater part of Alexander's Friends were not so much offended with their cruelty and detectable Ads, whereof they were accused, as with Parmento's death, which they kept in filence, lest the rehearfal thereof might have regained them favour with the King; rejoycing that the King's Justice was fallen upon the Ministers of his wrath, and that no Power or Authority gotten by evil means, could have any long continuance.

Alexander hearing the Cause, said, that the Accusers overship the greatest Offence, which was their despair of his own safety; for if they had either hoped or Believed that he should

ever

On fea

Di

fo

Ta

un be

th

BC

fu

mi

fec

M

ve

be

WE

m

kn

th

til

th

th

de

ver have returned out of India, they durft never (he faid) here committed any such heinous offences. He commanded them therefore to prison, and six hundred Souldiers to death, who had been the Ministers of their Cruelry; and with them also were executed the same day, those Prisoners whom Craterus had brought as Authors of the Rebellion out of Persia. Within a while after, Nearchus and Oneficritus, who had been commanded by the King to fearch the Ocean-fea, returned to him, declaring fome Discoveries by knowledge, and some by report: They informed him of an Island not far from the mouth of Indus. which abounded with Gold, and had no breed of Horles monest them; wherefore the Inhabitants would give a Talent for every Horse brought from the Main-land. They also rold him of great and monftrous Fishes (whereof those Seas were full) which carried down with the Tide, would hew their bodies as big as a great Ship, and, follow the whole Fleet with a terrible noise; and when they dived underneath the water, they troubled the Seas, as it had been a Ship-wrack. These were things they had seen : the rest they received by the report of the Inhabitants: s how the Red-sea took his name of King Erithrus, and not of the colour of the Water. They gave an account also of another River not far from the Main-land, growing full of Palm-trees, where was a great Wood, and in the midst thereof stood a Pillar, where King Erithrus was buried, with an Inscription on it of such Letters as were ufed in that Country.

They added besides, That such Vessels as carried the Merchants, and the Vassals of the Army, through the coverousness of the Gold which had been reported to have been there, were landed in the Island by the Mariners, and were never seen after. These words moved Alexander much, and put him in a great desire to learn more certain knowledge of those parts; and therefore he commanded them again to Sea, willing that they should coast the Land, till they came within the River of Euphraies, and from thence to come up to Babylon against the Stream. The things were infinite that he compassed in his head; for he determined after he had brought the Sea coast of the Ori-

che

the

ena

to

ful

Ar

ed Ac

fet

tic

Ki

ga

re

fe

m

R

П

ent under his Subjection, to go out of Syria into Africk. for the envy he bare to the Carthaginians; he purposed from thence to pass over the Defarts of Numidia, towards the Gades, where he understood by fame that Hercules had planted his Pillars; and fo directing his-lourney through Spain (which the Greeks from the River Iberus call Iberia) to go over the Alps into Italy, till he should come to the Coast where the next passage lay towards Epirus. this intent he gave commandment to his Officers in Mehpotamia, That they should cut down Materials in Mount Libanus, and convey them to Caplagas, a City in Syria, and there make Gallies of fuch greatness, that every one of them might be able to carry seven Oars upon a side; and from thence he ordered them to be conveyed to Ba-He also sent commandment to the King of Cyprus. to furnish them with Iron, Hemp, and Sails.

Whiles these designs were in agitation, he received Letters from Porus and Taxiles, signifying, That Abisares was dead of a Disease, and that Philip his Lieutenant in those parts was slain, they being put to death who were the Actors of it. Alexander in the place of Philip presered Eudemon that was Captain of the Thracians, and gave Abisares's Kingdom to his Son. From thence he came to Parsargades, a Countrey of the Persians, whereof Orsines was Lord, who in Nobility and Riches exceeded all other men in those parts, as one that derived his Pedegree from Cyrus, that once was King of Persia. The Riches his Predecessours left him were great, and he by a long continuance in his Inheritance and Authority had much in-

creased them.

He me Alexander advancing that way, and presented both him and his Friends with Gifts of divers kinds, which were a multitude of young Horses ready to be bicked, Chariots wrought with gold and filver, precious Moveables, excellent Pearls, and sparkling Stones; weighty Vessels of Gold, Robes of Purple, and sour thousand Talents of coined Silver. But this his liberality was the occasion of his death: for when he had presented all the King's Friends with Gifts above their desire, he honoured not Bagoas the Eunuch with any Gifts at all, whom Alexander especially

4. ed

rds

ad

gh

14) he

or

12-

מחב

14.

ne

e;

1-

15.

1.

15 e

1.

d

1-

0

25

n

.

-

1

ecially favoured for the use of his body, by which Obliation he much endeared himself to the King: There were herefore some that gave him admonition how much Alexunder esteemed Bagoas: but he answered them,

That his custom was to bonour the King's Friends, and not Minions; and that it was not the manner of the Perfians to have any in estimation, who polluted themselves in so shame

ful an abu'e.

When his words were reported to the Eunuch, he used the Power which he had got by dishonest Arrs, to the defruction of that noble and innocent man; for he suborned certain lewd persons of Orsines Country, to bring in false Acculations against him, which he warned them to prefent at such a particular time as he should give them norice of. In the mean feafon, whenfoever Bagoas got the King alone, he would fill his credulous ears with rales against Orfines; ever diffembling the cause of his displeafure, left thereby he might lofe the reputation of his false

report:

The King had not Orfines yet in suspicion of such a crime as afterwards he was charged with; but he began to grow with him out of estimation. His Accusation was ever so fecret, that he could never get knowledge of the fnares that were privily wrought against him. This importunate Favourire, in his vile conversation had with the King, was mindful ever of the malice he bare to Orfines, whom he would not cease to bring in suspition of Coverousness and Rebellion, so oft as he saw Alexander bent to use him familiarly. And now the false Accusations were in readiness, which he had prepared to the destruction of the innocunt, whose fatal destiny, now so near approaching could not he avoided.

It chanced that Alexander caused the Tomb wherein Cyrm's Body was buried to be opened, pretending to use certain Ceremonies for the dead, but thinking indeed that his Tomb had been full of Gold and Silver; of which there was a constant same amongst the Persians: But when it was viewed, there was nothing found but a rotten Target, two Scythian Bows, and a Seymiter. Alexander caufed the Coffin wherein Cyrus's Body was laid, to be covered

with

with the Garment which he himself accustomed to wean and set thereon a Crown of Gold; marvelling that the sumptuousness used in burial of a King of such vast Renown, endued with so great Riches, was no more then than in the Funeral of an ordinary person. When this thing was in doing, Bagoas stood next to Alexander, and beholding him in the Face, said to him:

What marvel is it though the Sepulchres of Kings be empty, when Lords Houses are not able to hold the Gold that they have taken out from thence? For my part, I never saw this Tomb before; but I have beard Darius report, That there were three thousand Talents buried with Cyrus. From hence (said he) proceeded Orsines liberality, in winning your Favour by the gift of

that which he knew he could not keep unpunisht.

When he had thus flurred up Alexander wrath against Orfines, he presented them whom he had suborn to accuse him; by whose report and by Bacons informations. Alexander was so incensed against Orlines, that he was thrown into prison before he could suspect he was accused The Eunuch was not contented with the destruction of this Innocent man, but at his death laid violent hands upon him himself; to whom Orfines said, I have heard tout Women in times past have reigned, and born great Rule in Asia; but it is now a more strange thing that an Eunuch Sould have the Empire in his hands. This was the Faral end of the most Noble of all the Persians, a person not only wholly Innocent of this false charge against him, but also one of the most faithfull and generous Friends of Alexander. At the same time Phradates, who was suspected to have gone about to make himself King, was put to death.

Alexander began then to be much inclined to the shedding of Blood, and to credulous in hearing of sale reports: of such a force as Prosperity to change a mans nature, wherein sew men have consideration of Verture. Thus he who a little before would not condemn Lincestes Alexander, when he was accused by two Witnesses, and suffered divers of more mean estate to acquitted, though it vexed him that they seemed not guilty to other men; thus he who bestowed Kingdoms upon his Enemies whom he had subdu'd, was in the end so much degenerated from his

former

can

the

Re-

hen

this

and

pr.

ave

be-

ree

hro-

t of

nft

IC-

15,

25 d

nis

70-

ue

10

V

e

e

mer inclination, that against his own appetite, at the lof a vile Mimon, he would give Kingdoms to fome,

take away Lives from others.

About the Tame time he received Letters of the Affairs Europe, whereby he understood that whiles he was in ia. Zopyrim his Lieutenant in Thrace made an Expeditiagainst the Getes, where by Storms and Tempest that ddenly rose upon him, he was destroyed and all his Ar-When Suthes understood the defeat of that Army. procured the Odrifians that were his Country-men to rolt; so that all Thrace was in a manner intirely loft, d Greece it self stood in no great safety.

The Writers of the Acts of Alexander the Great, make ention in this place of Calanus an Indian, a man very faous in Philosophy, who by the perswasion of King Taxer, followed A'exander, and ended his Life after a strange unner: When he had lived threescore and thirteen ears without any Disease, at his coming into Persia he felt pain in his belly; by which conjecturing that the end of his fe was approaching, left fuch a perperual felicity as he had red in, should be interrupted by any long Disease, or torented by the multitude of Medicines which Phylicians we to administer, he requested Alexander that he would cause a Fire to be made, that he might burn himself in it.

The King began to diffwade him from his purpole, thinking to have withdrawn him from the execution of b horrible an act; but when he perceived with what fedfastress and constancy he upheld his resolution, and that there was no way to keep him any longer in Life, he fuffered a Fire to be made according to his Will, into which Calanus rode on horse back, making first his Prayer to the Gods of his Country; and taking the Macedins by the hands, required them that they would spend that day pleasantly in banquetting with their King, whom not long

after he said he should see at Babylon.

When he had spoken these words, he went chearfully into the Fire; and carrying his Body in a comely posture, he kept still the same gesture and countenance at his Death, which he was accustomed to do in his Life. When the Fire flamed, the Trumper founded, and the Men of

War made such a shout as they were accussomed to do when they joyned in Battel with their Enemies, which rebounded to the skies; the Elephants also made a terrible noise. These are the things which grave Writers do testifie of Calanus, who was a notable Example of an inviscible mind, and constantly bent to endure adversity.

From thence Alexander advanced to Sula, where he rook to Wife Stataria, the eldest Daughter of Darius, whose youngest Sister called Parifacis, he gave in Marriage to Ephestion, and bestowed sourceore Virgins of the Noblestos all the Nations he had conquered, to the principal Macedons, and to the chief of his Friends, because he would not feem alone to begin fo strange a Custom. These Marriages were celebrated after the Persian manner, and magnificent Feast prepared at the Espoulals, at which there were nine thousand Guests present, to every one of whom Alexander gave a drinking Cup of Gold. At the fame time the Rulers of the Cities whom Alexander had fubdued and builded, feat to him thirty thousand young Souldiers that were all of one age, furnished with fair Armour, and fit for any Enterprize of the War, whom he called Epigony, that is to say, Successours. The Macedons at their coming seemed to be somewhat disturbed, who wearied with long War, used often in their Assemblies to murmur, and speak mutinous words against their King; for which cause he prepared these Souldiers to restrain the arrogancy of the others, and gave them great benevolences.

Harpalus, to whom the King had committed the charge of the Treasure and Revenues at Babylon, hearing of the Acts that Alexander had done in subduing the greater part of the Kings of India, and his success to be so prosperous that nothing could withstand him, knowing the unsatiable desire that was in Alexander to visit far Countries, and to increase his Glory, thought it would be a difficult matter for him to return to Babylon again: Wherefore he have himself to delight and riot, misusing many that were Noble and free-women, and wallowed in all kind of voluptuousness; insomuch that he sent for a famous Harlot called Potonice, to whom he both gave many great and Princely Gifts while she was alive, and also after her

death expended thirty Talents on her Tomb.

ple

mr

til til

1 rc-

ible

te-

vin-

ook

rofe

E

ftof

ace-

uld

far-

d a

nich

e of

the

had

ung

Ar-

he

lons

vho

s to

g; the

es.

the

ing

ter

ro-

he

ın•

lif-

re-

ny nd

)US

at

er

1-

Having in these and such other voluptuous Vanities conmed a great part of the Treasure, when he understood Alexander was come out of India, and that he execu-Inflice upon his Officers, who misused them over whom whad the Ruse (being Conscious of his own deserts) he ed the like fate might fall on himself: And therefore thesing together five thousand Talents, and fix thousand ercenary Souldiers he took his way towards Athens. man being willing to receive him by the way. hen he came to Tenaron (where a great number of Mercenary Greeks who had been discharged out of were assembled) he left his Souldiers there and ent to Athens with his Mony.

When he was come thither, a great number of Citizens ocked about him; but more for love of his Money, than any respess to himself: but especially the Oratours. hom by fmall Rewardshe eafily corrupted to defend his wife before the People. But afterwards, at a general Afably, he was commanded to depart the City; and so he mrned again among the Greek Souldiers, by whom he as flain. After that, with thirty Ships they passed over to mium, which is a point of Land in the Territory of Aens, from whence they determined to have entred into

the Haven of the City.

Alexander being inform'd of all these Transactions, was much moved, as well against the Athenians as against Harides, and prepared a Navy to make War in person immelately against them. As he was bussed about it, he underited by secret Letters, both how Harpalus had been. Athens, and had corrupted with Money the chief of the City, and also how afterwards, by a Council of the People, he was commanded to depart from thence, and reurning amongst the Greek Souldiers, he was betraved and fain by one of them. These news greatly rejoyced Alexander, whereby he had occasion to desist from his intended Journey into Europe; but he sent commandment to all the Cities of Greece, that they should receive all their bafished men, such only excepted as had committed any hurder on their own Country-men. Although the Greeks knew this to be the beach of their Laws and Liberties, yet as men that durst not disobey his Will, they called home their banished men, and restored to such of them their Goods they had Sequestred from them: Only the Athenians, who evermore defended obstinately the Liberties of their Common-wealth, and who had not been accustomed to live under the obedience of any King, but under the Laws and Customs of their Country would not permit that such dregs of men should live amongst them, but drove them out of their bounds; ready to suffer any thing, rather than to receive such who sometime were the vomit of all their City, and the resuse of the Outlaries.

The rime was come that Alexander now intended to dismiss his old Souldiers, and to fend them home into their Country; but he order'd first 13000 Footmen, and 2000 Horsemen to be chosen out, to remain still in Asia, which he judged might be kept with a small Army, because the thought) the many Garrisons he had planted, and the Cities which he had newly built and filled with Inhabitants. would be able to awe such such as should attempt any Rebellion. But before he would diftinguish who should depart, and who should remain, he caused a Proclamation to be made, That all Souldiers (hould declare their debts (wherewith he perceived many of them to be heavily burdened); and though contracted through their own excess, yet he was determined to discharge every man. But the Souldiers thinking it had been but a device to find who were most prodigal, delayed the time, and brought not in their Declarations.

The King perceived shame to be the cause thereos, and not disobedience or obstinacy; and therefore he caused Tables to be set up through his Camp, and ten thousand Talents to be brought forth; of all which Treasure, when their Debts were paid, according to the just accompt, there remained of Talents no more but an hundred and thirty. Whereby it appeared, that they who were the Conquerors of so many rich Nations, brought out of Asia more Glory than Spoil. After it was once known that some should be dismissed, and some remain behind, they thought the King would have established his Kingdom perpetually in Asia: Wherefore like Mad-men, and unmindful of all Discipline of War, they filled the Camp full of seditious words,

ou

ne

rir

ns,

eir

ve

nd

gs of

re.

ty,

to

eir

CO

ch

he

Ci-

T5,

10

le-

to

re-

ind

mi-

it le-

nd

ed

nd

en

re

y :

OFS

ry

be

he

in

Di-

İs.

nd

infolence than ever they did before, and all with one voice defired to be discharged, shewing him the hoariness of their hair, and their faces deformed with scars. Nor could this Tumult be supprest, either by chastiscment of their officers, or by any reverence of their King; but when he would have spoken to them, they would not suffer him to heard, but disturbed his Speech with their tumultuous cry, and violent throng, protesting, That they would never move one foot forwards to any place, except it were towards their own Country. After some hours (because they thought that Alexander would incline to their Desires) they kept silence, and stood in expectation what he would do. Then Alexander spake thus to them:

What means this so sudden a consternation of your minds, and this so petulant and so wild and insolence? I am afraid to speak to you, you have so manifestly broken your obedience towards me. I am now a King onely under the Authority of my own Subjects; you have neither left me the liberty to speak unto you, nor to know you, nor to exhort you, nor to behold you. Being determined to send some into their Country, and to bring the rest with me shortly after, I se those who are to be dismissed, to cry out and mutiny, as well as those who I appoint to stay with me. What is the meaning of this? The cry is all alike every where, although the Cause is divers. I would fain know whether they

complain that depart, or they that are to tarry?

When he had spoken those words, they cried all (as it had been with one mouth) All, All, All. Then he said;

Truly it cannot be so; nor can I be persuaded that you should all be grieved for the cause you declare, seeing it touches not the createst part of you; for I have appointed more to depart, than a remain with me. There must needs be some conceased grudge of more fatal consequence than what appears, that should have hower enough to withdraw your whole Hearts from me. When was it ever seen, that a whole Army has so saken their King? The Slaves run not from their Masters all at once; but there is always a shame in some to leave him, when the rest forsake him. But why do I forget that you are desperately mad? why do I go about to cure those that are uncurable? I condemn from henceforth all the good hope that ever I conceived of you, and determined to leal no more wich you as with my Souldiers (seeing you will not

When

be mine) but as with men ungrateful, and unmindful of my goodness. The cause of this your madness is even the abundance of your prosperity, whereby you forget your old estate, from which you are delivered through my benefit. Fou are men worth, end jour Lives in your farmer Beggery, feeing you can better bear your advertitie than prosperous fortune. Behold, you who not long agricere Tributaries to the Illyrians and the Persians. do now did in Asia, and the spoils of so many Nations : Tou. who under Philip went half naked, do now contemn Robes of Gold and Purple. Your eyes are no longer able to bear the Lufire of Gold and and Silver you defire again your Wooden Diffees your Targers made of Wicker, and your Swords covered with ruft. I received you in this galant condition, with five hundred Talents in debt, when all my Exchequer exceeded not the value of fixty Talents. This was t e Foundation of my Alls, wheremen (without envy be it spoken) I have subdued the greatest partof the World. Are you weary of Alia, which hath ministred to you occasion of jo much Glory, that by the greatness of your Deeds you are made equal to the Gods? Do you all make fuch hafte into Europe, to for fake me that am your King ? Toe greater part. of you should have wanted Money to bear you home, if I had no paid your debts. Are you not ashamed, who have plundered all Afia, to carry the Spoils of fo many Nations within your Bellies only? And to return home to your Wives and Children, not being able to shew any of the Rewards of your Victory? Many of 7: in the way shall be compelled to pawn your, Armour, if you for fake this good hope which you might receive at my hand. Thele are the goodly Men of War that I shall want, who of all their Riches have nothing left them, but only their Concubines. way lies den for your departure; Get you gone out of my fight: I. with the Persians, will defend your backs when you are gone: I will hold none of you: Deliver mine eye; you ungrateful Countrey-men, of the fight of you. Shall your Parents and Children (think you) receive you with joy, when they shall fee you return without your King? Shall they covet to meet such as are Fueitives, and Deserters of their Prince? I shall truly triumph at your departure; and wherespever you shall be. I shall desire to be revenged; honouring always, and preferring above you, these whom you have left here with me. Now you shall know of what force an Army is, that is destiture of a King: and what moment depends even of my fingle Arm alone,

ince

hich

tter.

who

ms,

ou,

of

Lu-

ies.

uft.

Ta-

of

of von

(4)

η-

Ut.

100

UI

es

120

of our se

e l.*

u

When he had spoken these words, he lesped in a fury the judgment feat, and run into the throng of the men, where he rook with his own hands fuch as had most against him? of whom there being postary affinale refifiance, he delivered thir control Guard lich keps. Who would have thought that an Allemwho a little before had confronted their Prince with audicity and rigion, could have been fo finddenly firmer fear; and feeing their Companions led to execution. home of them make the leaft attempt in this opposior their Refine? Bur the inordinate liberty they used and feditious violence, was ther fo fluid, that not one hem durst resist the King, running amongst them, but all aftonied for fear, and flood file men ananced with ordil imaginations, looking what he would determine of Elycs. Whether ir were the reverence they bureso Name, because the Nations that live under Kings are acmed to honour them as gods; or whether it were the By of his Perion, or elfe his own affured Confinery oning his Authority with fach violence, that did pas them fuch a Confernation: but they shewed a notable cample of Parience; for they not only not flirred at the cution of their Companions, whom they know to be put death in the night-rime; but were more diligent in permine their duties than they were before, omitting wethat might teffify obedience, and the natural affection ards their Prince: For on the next day they came to the ur, and being nor fuffered to enter, but all fluer out faving Souldiers of Afia, they made a forrowfid cry and lanation, which spread over all the Camp, protesting, at they would not live, if the Kings difference and sheer ourud. But he that was obstinate in all things which he had econceived in his head, having commanded the Maceto keep ffill in their Camp, affembled the firange uldiers together; to whom, by an Interpreter; he made Oration.

At what time I came first out of Europe into Affin, in tras

was to bring many noble Nations and a great power of Man my Empire and Dominion; wherein I was not deceived! F fides that Rame reported you to be the men of Valour, I bave you one thing mere, which is an incomparable Obedience, F and Affection towards their Prince. I thought Voluntimenfull ey you bad been drowned in Pleasures; But I find ather mise. perceive that none do observe that Discipline and Order of the better than your felves, nor execute them with more activity a folution; and heing manful and valiant men, they embrace P as well as Fortitude. This I have long fince been fenfible of never express it till now a which was the cause that I chist of the Youth of so many Nations, to be my Souldiers, and di parate you among & wine own People, canfine you to wear Armour ; but your Obedience towards Authority is more from minent in you, than in them: Therefore I have joyned to my Marriage the Daughter of Oxacres, who is a Perfian, not dill to beget Children upon a Captive: And afterwards defir bundantly to increase the Issue of my body, I took to Wife the Da Let of Darius, and gave my self the first example to my near Fri to benet Children upon their Captives; Defigning by this holy venant to exclude the difference between the Conquerous and the quered. Wherefore you must now think, that you are not Souldie. me adopted, but more natural; and that Alia and Europe is Kingdom, without any difference. I have given unto you Armon fer the manner of the Macedons: I have brought all ftrange and novely into a custom; and now you are both my County any my Souldiers; in all things receiving one form and fastion have not thought it unjeenly for the Perfians to hadow the Cu of the Macedons, nor for the Macedons to counterfeit the Per freing the all ought to be under one Law and Custom, who for Live under one King.

When he had made this Oration, he committed then flody of his Person unto the Persons; he made them of Guard, and his Officers of Justice, by whom when the Macadons who had given the occasion of this Sedition we led bound to Execution, one of them who was of my grant.

of Alexander the Great. 365-

wiling will you give place to your will, in executing one affirance manner? Tour Souldiers and your own Countryman, and to Execution by their own Prisoners, before electionally id. If you have judged us worthy of death, at hastwife

the Minifers of your wrath. will in anywork as it was to

is was a good admonishment, is he had been patient to the truth; but his wrath was grown into a fury, so then he saw those who had the charge of them to make halt, as willing to respite the Execution, he caused risoners to be tumbled into the River; and there and Notwithstanding the cruelty of this punishment, buildiers were not moved to any Sedicion, but repaired, that murbers to their Captains, and to fuell as were about the Kare, imploring, That if there yes semantical with the same Offices, that he should command there it to death, profering their ladies to be punished; and take this own Reasure.

there it was known that the dignity of being the Kings chant was given to the Perfects, and that they need there into divers Orders, with such names and their them as formerly belonged to the Macadon, and that lated them as formerly belonged to the Macadon, and that lated in their bears; but with a great through present to longer contain themselves, not the dolour they had saived in their hears; but with a great through present its Court, wearing only their nethermost Garmeng leaving their Weapons without the Gase, in taken of the chance: there with weeping, and all tokens of humbles may made request to be admitted to the lings presence, thing that be would vineble to pardon their Offices and in the late that to further them taken of them as be should which taken than to suffer them taken under such a represent out of the would release, they protested they would account appreciate of the would release, they protested they would account appears out of the would release, they protested they would account appears out of the would release, they protested they would account appears out of the would release, they protested they would account appears out of the court gates to be opposed, and came south amongst.

e da

abilian to weep a long time with them, and in confiden on of their modelty, forgave them their former offences and after he had moderately told them their faults, and gain comforted them with gentle words, he discharged m my from the Service of the Wars, and fent them home me mificently rewarded) writing to Antipater, his Lieutenant Macedonia, that he should affigur them the Chief places the Phentres at Triumphs and publick Shews, where the Mould fit with Garlands on their heads, ordering, that the Gridren after cheindeath fhould enjoy their Fathers P He appointed Crateries to be their Huler, to whom allo Meridonia, Bieffelie, and Thracia, Amipater being fent for ir to him with a hipply of young Souldien.

Aftexader had received Letters before both from his and Oppopular his Mother, by which there appeared to be fome discontents between them: For his Mother acoust ampair that he went about to make himself King; as Antipater wrote how Olympias did many things otherwise in did become her. Antipater referred his ediling away grievostly, that he compired thereupon to poylon Attacks who having accomplished what he relolved to have do advinced to Ethicara in Midia, to fer in order the accellar

Peartings that Empirish whom the King entirely love Never careft as athrother, died at the fame time of affect see death Absarder took more heavily than may well b everified; committing in his grief many things that were in beferning the Majerty of a Prince. He commanded Ea pour Physician to be hanged, as though he had died through the negligence. He lay limbracing of the dead body, could hardly be taken away by his Friends, but count his forrow night and day.

There are many other things written on this Substituted are four certainly credible; Bucit is certain, that he can ensuaded Sacrifice to be made to him, as to 2 Heral of God, and confirmed in this Etirish, and in making

Tomb, above twelve shouland Talents. As he returning to Babylon, the Chaldtan Prophets met to on the way, exhorting him not to enter into the sy; for it was fignified. That if he went shither at that ne, he should be in great danger of his life. Not-thianding, he regarded not their Admentitions, but went ward in his Journey, as before resolved, for he understood at Ambassadors were come thither from all Regions, and ried for his coming: the terrour of his name was so spread cough the world, that all Nations shewed un observations for towards him, as though he had been designed to be the King: This caused him to make hast to Babylon to so there as it were a Senate of the whole World. When was come thither, he received the Embassadours gently,

d afterwards dismissed them home again.

There was about the fame time a Banquet prepared at house of one Totfalus Medius, to which the King (being rived) came with such as were ordered to keep him com-But he had no fooner drunk of Hermites Cup, but at he gave a deep group, as though he had been flruck to hears; and being carried out of the Fooft half dead. was fo tormented with pain, that the defired a ord to have killed himself. His Friends publish'd aad, that drunkenness was the cause of his disease about reality it was prepared Treason, the infamy whereof, Power of his Streetfors did opprefs. The poyfor prered long before, was delivered by anipater to his Son affending who wish his brothron, Phillip and Jolla, were sufformed to ferve the line a money he was starned that Mould not commit the faid Poylon to any Perfor exla, who were both accustomed to be Taken of the lights and having the poyou ready in cold water, mixed it th svine, after they had tafted it. Whith the fourthedry woome the Souldiers, partly because they supposed he is dead, and partly because they could not endage to ng to fee the King and ho by his commandment were ad-K 3 misted.

period and his preferice, by such as had the charge of the period.

When they beheld him lying in that effect, they may great for row and famelitation, for he received not to the great for he ame whom they were accultance to be he fame whom they were accultance to be he for rather a dead Corple. If their grief were great the for row of them who flood next to the Bed, appeared may greater; whom when Alexander beheld to lanced after the forc, he faid unto them:

When I fealt depart, you foal find a King worthy of fuch mere

YOU ATE.

It is a thing incredible to speak, how that during the Soil diers of his whole army came to visit him, he never altered his countenance nor gesture; but continued in that present which he gave to the first, to the last man. When he had distribled the multiturude, as though he had been discharged of all debt of life, he lay down to rest his weak body and his voice beginning to fail him, he commanded his Friends to draw near unto him: then taking his Ring from his Finger, he delivered it to Ptraiceas, and with it gave him a commandation that his Body should be conveyed to Himmon. They demianded to whom he would leave his Ringstom; he said, To the worthisses. By which which words at appeared, that he foresaw the Contention that was like to some upon his death. Pedicess moreover demanded of him, when he would have divine Honours paid to him. At sactisms and he, as you shall find your filips, in Felicity.

Thefe were the last words Alixanda spakes and shortly after he died. Immediately after his death, the Court was full of howling and lamenting; and prefently after as it had been in a defact place, all things were hully and a forrowful filence was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all, grief being converted into sufficience was spread over all the compass of the Gours, but san about as then out of their wits, whereby their City was fulled with sight and tears, and no kind of lamentation pre-

termitted

4:

1.5

100

Soul.

- 22 BY 275

ior.

td. nc

he jid

ly

8

d of

£

e

è

t

mitted, that forrow is accurliomed to administer in such a Such therefore as were without the Court as well Me-Misas others, came sunning thither, where the Conqueis from the conguered could not be differred in this

The Persians called upon their july and merciful Lord the Macedone made invocation to bim that was fo just d gracious a Ring and thus there was a certain contena smone them. They did not only use the words of grief d heaviness abutalfo of purmering and indignation, that byoung a Prince, being in the flower of his age, and fo formaterial fuccefs. flould by the envy of the gods be fo taken at of this world . They called to remembrance what a hearfulnus they had always scen in his countenance, both then he led them to the Battel, or when he belieged or faulted any City, or when he would give any commenda-

non to the Valiant in any Affembly.

of Then the Micedon repented that ever they had depied him divine honour, confessing themselves both wicked and increaseful in depriving even his own cars of that name, and Tirle which was to justly his due, whereof, he was worthy. And when they had continued long in the veneration and dethe of him that was dead, they began to lament their own River Euphrates, amongst the middest of their Enemies, who islingly received their new Government. They law themselves left de frience, both the King and the Empire withmust say cortain Heir; for want of whom every one would missivous to draw the Power of the State into his own primate interest. Then they began to conceive and foresee the Wars ther enfued, and that they should be inforced to thed shein blood again, not for the Conquelt of Affa, but for the Title of some sich a one as would fee up to make, himfelf King. Moreover, that such who by reason of their age had been discharged from the Wars by their poble and wrighteous King, thould now be inforced to frend their lives to the quarrel of one who was but his Souldier.

Whiles they were in these imaginations, the night came 3ed

on; and inercased their terrour: The men of War watched their Arms, and the Balylmians looked over the Walk, per-log out from the tops of their houses, to discover some on thindle any light; and because the aise of the eye failed. they laid their ears to hear the Murmers and words that were spoken; and many times they were afraid, when no cause of fear was; and when they met aggerher in the narrow fireets, or dark lanes, they would be amazed, and sufpen each other as enemies. The Pursian after their accustomed manner, cut fhort their heir, and with their Wives and Children lamented the deadt of Alixander in mourning Garmens with unfeigned affection, not as a Conquesour, or one that lately had been their Enemy, but as their right and natural King; for they being accustomed to line under a King could think no man more worthy than himfelf to rule over them.

This forrow was not contained within the walls of the City, but flraightways it foread over all the Comery these abouts. And the Pame of fo great a mischief spine through out Afia, brought early tidings thereof to Danial Mother: She at the first report rent afunder the garment she work, and purring on mourning apparel, the tore her hair, and fell down groveling upon the earth. One of her Neces face by her mourning for the death of Ephoftion, who no long before had married her, and in an universal heavines bewailed the cause of her private forrow: but Bellandina love fuffained all their miferies, and bewaited both her own condition, and her Necces, her fresh forrow causing her to call to mind things past. A men would have judged by her behaviour that Darius had been newly flain, or that the had now celebrated the Funerals of two Sons together: She did not only lament the dead, but for sowed also for the living.

Who fleel now ((aid the) take care of these young Wanten? Or who can be like to Alexander? Now we are taken Prisoners again: We are nevely fallen again from our Dignity and Empire. After Darius death we found one to defend un

but

OOK X. of Alexander the Great.

nels fine Alexander is gover who will respect us? mone desir reflections the called to mind how Ochus reference in checkey, and chat differ Children Bonn of her the street was but one, of them left sive. The faw that them, the development Daries, and cased him to figurify the some one of them had cased him to figurify the some one of the street him boil of Life and Empire. ingrences of the trucky. Finally, the was to overcome in farrow, due the covered her bead, mening her fell from these and Niephen that fate at her feet; and abitainboth from mean, and from beholding the light, the endther life the fifth day after, as having tletermined to die. his her death was a great argument of the clemency which hander had these'd towards her, and of his justice towards the Captives, seeing the that before could endure to furpe Darins, nevertheless was assumed to outlive Alexander. Gonfider Mexander july, and we must impute all his Vertues to his own nature, and his Vices either to his muth, or to the greatness of his Fortune: there was in m an incredible force of courage, and an exceeding fur ance of Travel: he was enduced with manhoods exselling not onely Kings, but also such as had no other verme or quality: he was of such liberality, that oftentimes he are greater things than the Receivers would have prayed from the Gods. The multitude of Kingdoms that he gave in Gift, and reflored to luch from whom he had taken them. force, was a token of his Clemency towards them whom ichad subdued. He shewed a perperual contempt of Death; the fear whereof doth amaze other men: And as there was in him a greater defire of Glory and worldly Praise than reason would admit; so it was tolerable in so young a man, performing to great and wonderful Archievements. The reverence and affection he bare towards his Parents, appeared in the design he had to consecrate his Mother Olympias to immortality, and in that he fo strictly revenged his Father Phihas death. How gentle was he towards his Friends? and how benevolent rowards his Souldiers? He had a wisdom equal to the greatness of his heart, and such a policy and forelight

UMI

のなるできるなられるない

18

ú

ie

6

4

3.5

ì

HOOK X

B.R

Orna

rere

Perd

14

thing diz webl

iogn him b

fore a

to im

what confad

Hear

SME uish

Mive

Son.

la th

T

forefight as fo young years were fearcely able to receive. A theafure he had in immoderate pleasures, and lufted les than Nature defired, using no pleasure but what was lawful: These indeed were wenderful great Gifts and Vertuess but in that he compared himself to the gods covering divine Honours, and believing the Oracles, that flattered him into it, that he was offended with them that would not worthin. him, and given more vehemently to wrath than, was expedient; that he altered his habit and apparel into the fashion offirangers, and counterfeired the cuftom of thosewhom he had subdued and depised before his Victory; these were Vices to be attributed to the greatness of his fortune: As the Heat of youth flirsed him to anger, and to the defire of Drinking, so age might have mitigated again those distempers. Notwithstanding it must needs be confessed, that though he prevailed much by his Vertue, yet ought he to impute more to his Fortune, which only of all mortal men he had intirely in his own power. How often did fhe deliver him from the point of Death ? How did the protest him with perpetual Felicity, when he had rashly brought himfelf into peril? And when the had decreed an end to his glory, the even then was content to finish his life, flaying his fat I deftiny till he had subdued the Orient, visited the Occan& fulfilled all that mortality was able to perform.

To this fo great a Ring, and fo noble a Conqueror, a Sucoffer was wanting and it was a task of too great an importance for any one man to take it upon him: his Name and Renown was to grea a nongft all Nations, that they were counted most noble, who could be partakers (shough it were never fo little) of his prosperous Fortune. But to return again to Babylon, from whence this digression hath been

made.

They who had the Guard and Cuftody of Alexanders perfon, called into the Court fuch as had been his chief Friends. and Captains of the men of War, after whom there, follow'd a great multitude of Souldiers, defiring to know who should be Successor to Abxander. The throng of the Souldiers was fuch, that many of the Captains were excluded, and could

not

3

1

1

0

enter into the Court. A Proclamation therefore was sale, whereby all men were forbidden to enter, except the were called by name: But because their cammandare seemed to want authority, it was but little regarded, and the multitude at first began to make a doleful cry and insentation; But immediately the defire they had to unterstand the event, suppress their lamentation, and procured sence. Then Perdiccas brought forth in sight of all the people, the Kings Chair of Estate, wherein Alexanders Diadem, in Royal Robes, and his Armour was laid; amongst which comments Perdiccas also laid down the Kings Signet, delivered to him the day before; at the sight whereof they began to weep, and to renew again their forrow. Then said Perdiccas:

Lo, here is the Ring wherewith he was accustomed to Seal fuch things as pertained to the Government of his Empire, Wivered to me, I fo reftore it again to you: And though no affliction subsiderifed by the angry gods (were they never so much offended) marable to this; yet considering the greatness of the Acts which bebath done, we must think that as the gods fent fuch a man fo to toen in the world, his appointed time being expired, they have called in back again to the place from whence he came? For a much therewe as nothing more of him remaines with us that is not taken inwimmortality, let ies perform the Rites pertaining to his Body, resembring in what City we are, among & what kind of people, what a King and Governour we have loft. We must consider and confult bow to maintain our Conquest amongst those men over whom it is getten; for the doing whereof, it is needful for us to have a Head y but whether the fame fhall be one or many, it doth confift in You are not ignorant that a multitude of men of War is a Body sistem life. Six months are now passed, fince Roxane was connived with chi d; we defree of the gods that the may bring forth a: Son, which may enjoy this Kingdom when he cometh to Age: la the mean feafon appoint you by whom you will be governed.

When Perdiccas had spoken these words, Nearchus rose up.

md faid :

There is no man can deny but that it were requisive that the Sucuffion should continue in the Blood Royal; but to look for a Kingthat:

that is not jut born, and to pass over one that is born-already in me expedient for such men as the triangulous are, nor is to confishent will the present necessity of the time. There is a Son whom Alexander in got on Barsin, what should binder why the Dinden may not be ferwoon his fread?

Nearthy discourse was acceptable to no man; therefore the Souldiers, according to their custom, classed their Spens against their Targets, and continued making a noise: And when he would not forfake his opinion, but obsinately maintained it till it had almost bred a sedition; which being perceived by Protony, he spake after this man-

BCf :

Neither the Son of Roxane, nor of Bartin, is an Infine worthy to reign over the Maccdons, whose names we should be ashamed to mation within Europe, their Mothers being Captivis. Have we subset the Persians to that end to become subject to such as are desended of them? That was it which Darius and Xerxes, so long being Kings of Persia, labour'd for in vain, with so many millions of men of War, and with so many Navies. This therefore is my spinion that Alexanders Chair of State be set in the middest of his Court, and that all such as were accustomed to be of Counses within assimilated the Captains and Rulers of the Army be abedient to that Order to which the greatest number do assent.

There were fome agreed with Ptolomy, but few with Per

diceas. Then Arigonus spake in this manner:

When Alexander was dimanded to whom he would leave he Kingdom, he willed the worthieft to be chosen: Whom judged he worthy but Perdiccas, to whom he delivered his Ring? This was not done at such a time as he was alone, but when all his Friends were present be cast his eyes amongst them, and at length chose out on to whom he delivered it. For this cause Ithink it right, that the King-

be committed to Perdiccas.

Many agreed to his opinion, so that the Assembly cried out to Perdiscas, that he should come forth amongst them, and take up the Kings Signet. But he stayed between ambition and bashfuine stanking the more modesty he used in the obtaining the talks he so much defired, they would be so much

11.

.

3

.

К

est

fore

ie.

Mi-

) BC

an.

710

nen-

tuut-

be-

of los

nt,

m,

0

.

1

micistle more earnest to profier it to him. When he had shoot a good while at a pause, doubting what to do, at length be drew back, and stood behind them who sate next to him. When Miliager, who was one of the Captains, saw the stay that Parlices made, he took courage on his seeming unwillinguest, and said:

Meicher the gods will permit, nor men will fuffer, that Alexandees Fortune, and the weight of fo great an Empire (hould reft upon his houlders : I will not tell you that there are many present. more noble than be is, and of greater worth, without whose confent no fuch thing may be suffered to be done. There is no difference whether you make Perdiccas King, or the for of Roxanc, whenforver behall behorn: For Perdiccas endeavours by that heans to make dimfelf King, under pretence to be Governor to the Infant ; this is the cause why no King can please bim, but such as is not yet born. And in so great a hast as all we make to have a King, (which hast. is both just and necessary for the preservation of our estate,) be only doth wait for the expiring of times and months, imagining that the bould bring forth a man shild, which I think you doubt not but he is already prepared to counterfeit and exchange, if need be. If it were fo in deed that Alexander himfelf had appointed bim to succeed him in his Ibrone, I am of opinion that that only command of Alexander, ought not to be observed or performed. Why do not you run rather to fire upon the Treasure, seeing the people ought to inherit it ?

When he had spoken those words, he brake thorow the press of armed men; and they who gave way to him, followed him to the spoil, whereof he made mention. The greediness of the Treasure caused a great Band of armed men to flock about Melager; and the Assembly began to fall into sedicion, which had grown to a greater inconvenience, if mean Souldier (known by few) had not stepped forth, and

spoken to the multitude.

What need we (faid he) run into a Civil War, seeing we have a King already, whom you seek to find? the same is Arideus the same of Phillip, and brother to Alexander, who lately was our thing, born an brought up with him in the same Religion and Coremonies that we do use, who being the only Heir, I marvel by what and sign of his be is meglected? or what him he done, why he should

not

not enjoy his right descended to him by the universal law of the world Kyon fechone tobe compared to Alexander, sou foell never find bim : If you will have fuch a one as fall be must to Alexander. a phic is only abel and the board a mandaton author was hell up the

. When these words were heard amongst the multirude. they kept filence at the first, as if they had been command. ed by Authority; but afterwards they cried with one voice. that Arideus should be called, and that they were worthy of death who durft affemble without him. Then Puthon being bedued with tears, began to speak.

Now I perceive (faid he) Alexanders cafe to be moft mifera. ble, feeing he intefrauded of the fruit, which fuch as were his Souldiers and Subjects (bould bring forth at such a time as this is : For looking only on the Name and Memory of your King, you are uttely Wind in all things befide.

His words tended directly to the reproof of Arideus that was his elected King; but his Speech procured more hatred to the Speaker, than contempt to the young man against whom it was intended: For the compassion they had of Arideus, caused them the more to favour his Cause; and therefore they declared with a general Acclamation, That they would not suffer any to reign over them, but him only who was born to fo great a bope 3, and fill they call'd for Arideus to come forth amongst them. Whereupon Meleager (for the malice and envy he bare unto Perdiccas) took an occasion boldly to bring him into the Assembly, whom the multitude faluted as King, and called him Phillip.

This was the voice of the people, but the Nobility were of another inclination, amongst whom Python took upon him to put Predicas. Plot in excution, and appointed Perdiceas. and Leonatus (descended both of the Blood Royal) to be Governours, of the Son which should be born of Roxan; Adding moreover, that Graterus and Antipater should have the Management of Affairs within Europe; and upon this they sware the Souldiers to be obedient to Alexanders Islae. Miliager then suspecting, not without cause, that some evil:

N

PI

I

te

X. of Alexander the Great.

might come to him, departed with such of his Fastion, but he remembed immediately again, bringing Philip with him intershe Course, and cried out to the multimate for the affisting of the Commonwealth, in aiding of the new King, when alieste before they had Elestedy and willed them to make an experiment his Abilisies, perswading them that he was the fittest to Rule over them, being the Issue of Philip, and hath both a King to his Father, and a King to his Brother.

There is no profound Sea so stormy nor tempessum, or that raises up so many surges and waves, as a Multitude does motions and alterations, when they swell with the hopes of a new Liberty, not likely long to continue. There wanted not some who gave their consent to Perducas; but more agreed to make Philip King: They could neither agree nor diagree a long time together; one while repenting them of their counsel, and immediately again repenting them of their very repentance. Yet sinally, they were inclined to

prefer the Kings Blood.

Arideas was put in such fear with the Authority of the Mobility, that he departed out of the Affembly; after whose departure, the favour of the Souldiers was rather filenced than diminished towards him : so that at length he was called again, and invested with his Brothers Royal Habiliments which lay in the Chair of flate, and Meleager put on his Corfler, following as a defence to the Person of the new King. The Phalanx clashed their Spears to their Targets, threatning to fled his blood, who went about to take the Kingdom that pertained nor to him. They rejoyced that the strength of the Empire should not be divided, but still continue in the same Blood and Family; the right of whose Title by Inheritance, descending from the same Blood-Royal, they shewed themselv? ready to defend. For by reason they were accustomed to have the Name of their King in such honour and veneration, they thought no man worthy of it but fuch a one who by descent was born to reign. Prediceas therefore was afraid. and with fix hundred men that were of an approved manhood, took upon him to defend the placel where the body

of Alexander by. Prolong joyned bimfelf state blier ale, and the Band of the young Gendemen that these about the Kings Person; but to many shoulands of around men as were on the other side, did easily break in appear them; amongst whom avidase was present; with a minuterous. Train for the guard for his Person, whereof Melague was chief. Personant therefore in great fary called such to his Aid as would defend alexanders Body; but many of them were fore hurt with Daris that came from the

contrary fide. At last the antiene men plucked of their Head-pieces (the better to be known) and defired them who were with Perdiceas to abstain from Civil War, and give place. to the King, and to the greater part. Wheteupon Perdiesas was the first that laid down his Weapon, and the sellfollowed his example. Mileager then perswaded them that they should not depart but remain still soont the dead Corpse: But Perdiceas judging it to be a deceir contrived to entrap him, drew back to the fide of Eaplrates, lying on the furthest part of the Court. Then the Horlemen, which confided chiefly of the Nobilty flocked about Perdiesne and Lematus, whose opinion was to depart out of the Ciry, and to take the Field; but because Perdiceas was not without hope that the Footmen would have taken his part, he therefore remained fill within the City, left he might feem to give occasion for the horsemen to divide themselves from the rest of the Army. Meleager ceased not to beat into the Kings. head. That he could not establish himself surely in his Throne, but by the death of Perdieras, whose ambirious. mind, and defire of Innovation, swas to be prevented in time. He defired the King to remember what Perdiceas had deferved at his hands, and that no man could be faithful to him whom he feared. The King rather suffering than affenting to his counsel. Mileaget took his filence for a commandment, and fent for Perdiccas in the Kings name; they who were fent having Commission to kill him, if he should make any delay.

Et a

.

424

16

107

-

32

Ki

15

4

100

. .

.

do.

·

a

33.

a come with them. Pudicas hearing of their comcompanied only with fixteen young Gentlemen accompanied only with fixteen young Gentlemen accompanied to arrend upon Alexanders Person) met them subey would have entred into his Lodging, and calling them Mileagers Slaves, rebuked them with fuch a contancy both of mind and countenance, that they returned tack as men amazed. Perdicas ordered the young gentlement to continue on Horseback, and with a few of his Friends appaired to Lunatus, intending if any violence were intend-

against him, to repulle it with a greater force.

The next day the Macidons murmured, and thought it unjust that Perdiceas should be brought in danger of death; and therefore determined with force to revenge the raffies of Meleagers doings : But he understanding of the Muany that was among the Souldiers, gave place; and they sepaired to the King, demanding of him, If he had commandd Perdiccas to be taken? He confelled the thing; but it was des (he faid) by Meleagers infligation; for which they ought Me vaife any tamule, feing that Perdices was above. The Afferably hereupon brake up, and Miliager was put into frich accordes patient, especially by the departing of the Horieen, that he knew not what to do; for he faw the milchief which he adjute before had intended against his Enemy, to light upon himself : and while he continued wholly enresolved, with various debates in his mind, three whole the were confumed. Howloever, the accustomed form tithe Embassadors of divers Nations address themselves the King, the Captains of the Army were prefent, and the Guard waired in Armour as they were accustomed: But the great fadness that was there, without my apprament cause, fignified some extreme despair. There was sich a suspition amongst themselves, that men durst not by themselves, and by comparing the time present with sitime past, and the new King with the old, they renewed their concern for the King they had Joh. one enquired of another, what was become of the King,

d:

9

Whose Fortune and Authority they had soldwed? They found themselves abandoned amongst so many unquite and unconquered Nations, who were desirous upon any occasion that might befall to be revenged of the units in

they had received.

. While they were troubled in thefe imaginations, word was brought, that the Horfeman f who were under Pridiceas) kept the Fields about Batilan, and hindred all Provisions from coming to the City: whereupon first began a scarcity, and afterwards a famine; therefore such as were within the City thought good either to make a reconciliation with Perdiccas, or elle to fight it out with to chanced, that such as dwelr abroad in the Country, fearing the spoil of the Villages, repaired into the City; and they within the City, forwant of Victuals departed into the Countrey; fo that every one thought themselves furer any where, than where their own Habitations were; Then the Macidons doubting fome great inconvenience that might proceed from this fear, affembled together h the Court, and declared their Opinions. It was agreed amongst them, that Embassadors should be sem to the Horsemen, for the composing all differences, and lending the division. Pafas, a Theffalian, Amiffas a Megapolitan, and Perlane, were fent from the King, who declaring their Commission, received answer, there the Horseman would not lay down their Arms, till the Authors of the Sedicion were delivered into their hands. When they were returned, and their answer reported, the Souldien, without any command, put on their Armour, and made fuch a Timult, that the Ring was inforced to come forth of she Court, and faid to them: 181. 11 had all pring the same willed

are at quiet sold enjoy the fruits of our Contention. Remonder about the Quartel is with your own Countryment with whomis you rold) break the hope of Reconcilement, you shall be the biginners by a Civil Ware Let us try if they may be micigard by another Embassic: I am of belief; that because the Body of Alexander remainers get induring they will gladly come no

getha

gether to perform the Oblequits to the Dead. And for my part, I bid rather surrende up again shis Dignity than that any mode should be shed amongs my Countymen; for if no other most of Concord doct remain, I desire and beseeth you to make a better Choice.

he Tears then falling from his Eyes, he took the Diadem Worthis Head, and holding it forth with his Hand, he express his readiness to have delivered it to any man who would profess himself to be more worthy than he. The moderation that he used, both in his words and Behilviour? chiled them all to conceive a great good hope of this Noble Nature, which till that time was obferred the height of his Brothers Fame . They therefore raceuraged and importuned him to proceed according to this own measures; whereupon he fent again the same Emballadours that went before, who had Commission to defire that Meleager might be the third Ruler of the thes of War. That demand was not much fluck at; for Pardictus was defirous to remove Miliagir from the Hing, and conceived that the King being alone, the Hing would not be able to match with Limitas and himfelf Upon this Melager marched out of the City with the and Pridices met him in the Fields, marching in the Head of the Cavalry " There both Batels feluring one another, Concord and Peace (as it was thought) defined that Civil Wars should arise amongst the Mactding; for Government is impatient of Partners, and the Mingdom was covered by many : At first they gathered, and afterwards differfed their Forces; for when the Body was burthened with more Heads than it could bear. the other Members began to fail. So the Empire of the Macedons, which under one Head might well have flood,

in the very brink of Ruine appeared to them as a Star in that very night which they almost thought their last. Surely

when it was divided into Parts, fell to rome. For this

cause the People of Rome justly must confess themselves

bound to their Prince for the felicity they injoy? who

部

estes

rord

Per-

di

be-

ach

1 2

Alt

ney,

lves

IC:

nec

Fh

ecd

alle

nd.

tan.

radg

men

diet

ity ies, aic

h of

...

that

mber

mif

be-

ared

dy of

1.30-

ethu

Surely it was not the rising of the Sun, but of him that gave light unto the world in darkness; for without such a Head, the Members that were at variance must need have failed: How many hire-beands did he quench? How many drawn Swords did he cause to be sheathed? How great a Tempest did he pacific with the sudden calm of his presence? The Empire now grows verdam and flourishings, let me desire, without envy, that his house may continue many Ages, and his Posterity for ever.

But to return again to the order of the Military, from whence I was brought through the contemplation of our Universal Februity; Pendiceas judged the only hope of his own safety to consist in the death of Miliague, shinking it necessary to prevent him, being a man both warishle, unfaithful, given to impovation, and besides his mortal knemy: But with deep difficultation he kept his purpose secret, sometiment, that with less difficulty be might oppress him unawases: He sherefore suborned privily certain of the Broops under his own Command, to complete openly (as abough it were without his privily) that Miliager should be under equal with him in Authority; which words of the Souldiers when they reported to Miliager, he became in a great rage, and declared them to Pridices, who seemed to wonder at it, and to be passionately forry for it; and finally, they agreed amongst themselves, that the Authors of such seducious words should be apprehended.

When blebager perceived Perdicts to conformable, he imbraced him, and gave him thanks for his fidelity and friendflip. Then in a Confultation between them both, they deviced how to defrey fuch as wrought this divition between them; for the accomplishing of which, they agreed the Army flould be purged according to their Country-cuffour. For the executing whereof they footned to have a difficient coordion, by reason of the lare difford amongst them. The Rings of blacedon in the last difficient of their Army, were accordioned to the a kind of Ceremony, dis-

184

riding the bowels of a Dog into two parts, and to cast the same in the untermost bounds of the field on which they intended to muster their stray. The Soundiers within those bounds were all, to fland armed; the Horsemen, the Microenary Souldiers, the Phalance, and every one apart. The same day that this Ceremony was part in execution, the Ring stood in order of Batter, with the Piorsemen and the Elephants against the Footmen.

of whom Meleager had the Command.

When the Troops of Horlemen, began to move, the Poormen were fuddenly possessed with a great fear; and by reason of the late discord, conceived a suspition, that the Horsemen had no good meaning towards them; wherefore they stood a while in doubt, whether they fliould revire into the City or not, by reason that the Fields served best for the Horsemen. At last they flood fill, with a fix'd resolution to fight, if any should offer them violence. When the Battels were almost mer. and only a finall diffance left, (whereby the one part was divided from the other) the King, by the provocation of Perdices, with a Band of Horsemen, rode along by the Foor, requiring the delivery of such to be executed as were the Authors of the Difford, whom rather he ought to have defended; and threatned, if they refaled their delivery, to bring against them both the Horsemen, and the Elephants. The Footmen were amazed with the suddenness of lo unexpected a michiel; and there was no more counted nor courage in Melager, than in the reft; but they all judged it most expedient for them to fubmir to his demands, and to expect rather than to provoke Fortune.

When Perdices law them aftonied, and in fear, he fevered out to the number of three hundred of fuch who followed Miliager when he brake out of the Affembly that was first made after Alexanders death, who in the fight of the Army were cast to the Elephane, and there trampled to death with their feet; of which their was neither the Author nor the Folloider, but

nongn

121

の中の

cn

in his

or

th

田中の本元

-

100

he

y

it

d

d

.

•

t

shought to claim that for his own act, as the success should invite him. This was a signification, and a beginning noto the Macedon, of the Givil Wars that instruction of Perdices, because there was no violence offered unto his person, should at first quietly within the Plantage, but shorely after when he saw his Kotinies abusing to his destraction the Name of him whom he had made king, he despaired of his own safety, and sled into a Temple: But the Religion of the place could not so desend him, but that he was there-

flaip.

Rendices hereupon brought again the Army into the Ciey; and calling a Councer of all the principal Periohages, it was spreed to to divide the Empire, that the King (hould remain as Chief of the whole ; Proland was to be Lieutenant in Egift and Africa, and to have the Rule of the Nations there that were under the Macedons Dominion a Syria and Phenicia were appointed to Lasmedon; Cilicia to Philotas; Lycia, with Pamphylia, and the greater Pingeia, were alligned to Antigonie Caffander was fent into Caria, and Menander into Live die; the les Phrygia, that joyneth unto Hellsfragewas Leonatus Province : Eumenes had Cappadocia and Paphlagonia who was commanded allo to defend that Country to far as Traperunt; and make War with Arbates, who only remained an Enemy to the Empire: Media was under the command of Python, and Thracia to Lafinachus, with other Nations thereabouts, bordering upon the Sea of Postus It was ordained allo, that such as should be the Governours over the Indians, Bastrians, Sagdians, and the other Nations lying upon the Ocean and Red Seas, should, in matter of Justice, use Regal Jurisdiction. It was decreed, that Peraissas should remain with the King, and have the Governance of the Men of War that sollowed him. Some believe that these Provinces were thus distributed by Alexander's Testament, but we have found it alcogniter idle and falls, shough some Authors to affirm it.

OK X. of Alexander the Great. 385. The Empire being thus divided into parts; every one hr well have defended his proportion, if any bounds uld comain mens immoderate defires; for they who de were but Servairs to a King did not long after, let a foccious colour, invade one anothers Kingdoms. ing all of one Nation, and having certain bounds to Dominions allowed to them : But le is hard for n to be committed with that they have in possession, when occasion is proffered them to grasp at more for our first possessions, alwaies appear of no value, when are in hope of greater Acquisitions to come; to that very one of them thought it an easier matter to increase Kingdom, than it was at the first to get it Ausunders dy, in the mean feafon, lay feven days unburied; for iles every man had care for the effablishing of the State their minds were drawn from the performing of the Solemn Office to the Dead. There is no Country of a more involterable heat than Mejopotamia; for the Sun there burns fo hor, that it kills the Beafts that are without covert and confirmes up all things as it were with fire : And to the increase thereof, there are but few Springs of Water; and the Inhabitants use such policy in conceasing of those they have, that Strangers can have no use of as to a long to a series of a series

Notwichstanding this, when Alexanders Friends had the leifure to take care of the dead Body, and came to vifit, they found it without infection, corruption, or change of colour; the same chearfulness of spirit which he had alive, being not yet departed out of his countenance, Then the Egyptians and the Caldeans were commanded to imbalm his Body after their manner; who at the first (as though he had been dive) shewed a fear to put their hands to him, but afterwards making their prayers that it might be lawful for mortal men to touch him, they purged his body, and filled it with sweet Odours, and afterwards laid him upon a Herse of Gold, and fet a Diadem upon his head. It is recorded that he died of Poylon, and that Iolla, Antipaters Son being one of his

Sand Cenedoo eregen

5

his Ministers, had given him it. Mexader oftening scalch fays, That Anaparet affired to the Dignite of a Kin falling nors greatest than your due to a Libratenant; and it rough the aboy of the Killing or had gotten of the Lucid comment, two grown for your, that he claimed all things on the ed as him as his own. It is thought alle, that Grathes we are to kill hims, with those old Souldiers that were d milicah

Et is cornen that there is a Poylon in Matedonia, four in a major called Styger, of fuch force, that it confume Tren and will not be contained in any thing exce the Hoof of a Horic, or Maile; which Poylon was brown by Coffesion, and delivered sorbis Brother lalls, who are comed in its the wine which the King last drank. Now ever their things are reported, the power of them of who the rumoup was foresd, thorry after supprest the infi my thereof: for Assignm became King both of Man-donic and Greece, who afterwards took away by death the Kings Off fpring, all being flain who had any Al-liance or bits, although in the most removes Coulon guinity. Fishing (who shed the Rule, of Egypt) conyears after was removed to Alexandria, where all He pour is given to his Memory and his Name. א ב לפונונים ים והאפן למום כל וחם לב וכן ולפלוני, בחם כבנים נס

minded to indulate their after their contacts who are one first (as connected to the property of the west a tent

wife, they thend teavished in efficie, defraption, for chaire of colour pair are charachers of four which he had alvey being nor you diparted out of his countrmuch Than the Agorisms and the Column word come.

present that to appear be drived for inferent files to could him, they surred his body, and hied in wird fresh Oc donner and referenced shid him upon a Herler or Golds. and for a Diagreen appearing the is recorded that he died of Porton, and that folks, Astronou Son, being one of